FILED

2013 OCT 18 AM 10:22

CLERK U.S. DISTRICT COURT
CENTRAL DIST. OF CALIF.
SANTA ANA

BY _____

Tyler J. Woods, Bar No. 232464
twoods@trialnewport.com
NEWPORT TRIAL GROUP
4100 Newport Place Dr., Suite 800
Newport Beach, CA 92660
Tel: (949) 706-6464
Fax: (949) 706-6469

Attorneys for Plaintiff ECLIPSE IP LLC

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

CENTRAL DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

ECLIPSE IP LLC, Plaintiff, vs. OBEY GIANT LLC, Defendant.	Case No. **SACV13 - 01634 DOC (ANx)** **COMPLAINT FOR PATENT INFRINGEMENT** **JURY TRIAL DEMANDED** Complaint Filed: N/A Trial Date: N/A

BY FAX

COMPLAINT FOR PATENT INFRINGEMENT

Plaintiff Eclipse IP LLC ("Eclipse") complains of defendant Obey Giant LLC ("Defendant") as follows:

THE PARTIES

1. Eclipse is a company organized and existing under the laws of Florida and having a principal place of business address at 115 NW 17th Street, Delray Beach, Florida 33444.

2. Defendant is a company organized and existing under the laws of California.

JURISDICTION AND VENUE

3. This is a suit for patent infringement arising under the patent laws of the United States, Title 35 of the United States Code § 1 *et seq*.

4. This Court has subject matter jurisdiction under 28 U.S.C. §§ 1331 and 1338(a).

5. Venue is proper in this judicial district under 28 U.S.C. §§ 1391(d) and 1400(b).

6. Upon information and belief, Defendant conducts substantial business in this forum, directly or through intermediaries, including: (i) at least a portion of the infringements alleged herein; and (ii) regularly doing or soliciting business, engaging in other persistent courses of conduct and/or deriving substantial revenue from goods and services provided to individuals in Delaware.

THE PATENTS-IN-SUIT

7. On January 25, 2011, United States Patent No. 7,876,239 ("the '239 patent"), entitled "Secure Notification Messaging Systems and Methods Using Authentication Indicia," was duly and lawfully issued by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. A true and correct copy of the '239 patent is attached as Exhibit A.

8. On October 10, 2006, United States Patent No. 7,119,716 ("the '716 patent"), entitled "Response Systems and Methods for Notification Systems for

Modifying Future Notifications," was duly and lawfully issued by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. A true and correct copy of the '716 patent is attached as Exhibit B.

9. On January 25, 2011, United States Patent No. 7,319,414 ("the '414 patent"), entitled "Secure Notification Messaging Systems and Methods Using Authentication Indicia," was duly and lawfully issued by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. A true and correct copy of the '414 patent is attached as Exhibit C.

10. Eclipse is the assignee and owner of the right, title and interest in and to the '239, '716, '414 patents, including the right to assert all causes of action arising under said patents and the right to any remedies for infringement of them.

COUNT I – INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,876,239

11. Eclipse repeats and realleges the allegations of paragraphs 1 through 10 as if fully set forth herein.

12. Without license or authorization and in violation of 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), Defendant has infringed and continues to infringe the '239 patent by making, using, offering for sale and/or selling within this district and elsewhere in the United States, computer-based notification systems and methods which at least provide and/or select, and enable customers to provide and/or select, authentication information for use in connection with online orders from Defendant's website, www.obeyclothing.com, store the authentication information, and provide the authentication information in electronic notification communications to customers in the form of, at least, emails.

13. Eclipse is entitled to recover from Defendant the damages sustained by Eclipse as a result of Defendant's infringement of the '239 patent in an amount subject to proof at trial, which, by law, cannot be less than a reasonable royalty, together with interest and costs as fixed by this Court under 35 U.S.C. § 284.

14. Prior to the filing of this Complaint, Eclipse, by letter dated August 28, 2013, informed Defendant of Defendant's infringement of the '239 patent.

15. Thus, Defendant has been on notice of the '239 patent since at least the date it received Eclipse's letter dated August 28, 2013.

16. Upon information and belief, Defendant has not altered its infringing conduct after receiving Eclipse's letter dated August 28, 2013.

17. Upon information and belief, Defendant's continued infringement despite its knowledge of the '239 patent and the accusations of infringement has been objectively reckless and willful.

COUNT II – INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,119,716

18. Eclipse repeats and realleges the allegations of paragraphs 1 through 17 as if fully set forth herein.

19. Without license or authorization and in violation of 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), Defendant has infringed and continues to infringe the '716 patent by making, using, offering for sale and/or selling within this district and elsewhere in the United States, computer-based notification systems and methods which at least collect customers' contact data, including at least email addresses, via its website, www.obeyclothing.com, store the contact data in computer memory and provide electronic notification communications in the form of, at least, emails to the customers which enable the customers to respond and change the contact data, and modifying the manner in which Defendant implements future communications to such customers.

20. Eclipse is entitled to recover from Defendant the damages sustained by Eclipse as a result of Defendant's infringement of the '716 patent in an amount subject to proof at trial, which, by law, cannot be less than a reasonable royalty, together with interest and costs as fixed by this Court under 35 U.S.C. § 284.

21. Prior to the filing of this Complaint, Eclipse, by letter dated August 28, 2013, informed Defendant of Defendant's infringement of the '716 patent.

22. Prior to the filing of this Complaint, Eclipse, by letter dated August 28, 2013, informed Defendant of Defendant's infringement of the '716 patent.

23. Upon information and belief, Defendant has not altered its infringing conduct after receiving Eclipse's letter dated August 28, 2013.

24. Upon information and belief, Defendant's continued infringement despite its knowledge of the '716 patent and the accusations of infringement has been objectively reckless and willful.

COUNT III – INFRINGEMENT OF U.S. PATENT NO. 7,319,414

25. Eclipse repeats and realleges the allegations of paragraphs 1 through 24 as if fully set forth herein.

26. Without license or authorization and in violation of 35 U.S.C. § 271(a), Defendant has infringed and continues to infringe the '414 patent by making, using, offering for sale and/or selling within this district and elsewhere in the United States, computer-based notification systems and methods which at least provide authentication information in the form of links to the Internet with notifications, including at least emails.

27. Eclipse is entitled to recover from Defendant the damages sustained by Eclipse as a result of Defendant's infringement of the '414 patent in an amount subject to proof at trial, which, by law, cannot be less than a reasonable royalty, together with interest and costs as fixed by this Court under 35 U.S.C. § 284.

28. Prior to the filing of this Complaint, Eclipse, by letter dated August 28, 2013, informed Defendant of Defendant's infringement of the '414 patent.

29. Thus, Defendant has been on notice of the '414 patent since at least the date it received Eclipse's letter dated August 28, 2013.

30. Upon information and belief, Defendant has not altered its infringing conduct after receiving Eclipse's letter dated August 28, 2013.

31. Upon information and belief, Defendant's continued infringement despite its knowledge of the '414 patent and the accusations of infringement has been objectively reckless and willful.

PRAYER FOR RELIEF

WHEREFORE, Plaintiff Eclipse asks this Court to enter judgment against the defendant and against each of the defendant's respective subsidiaries, affiliates, agents,

servants, employees and all persons in active concert or participation with it, granting the following relief:

(a) An award of damages adequate to compensate Eclipse for the infringement that has occurred, together with prejudgment interest from the date infringement of the Eclipse Patents began;

(b) An award to Eclipse of all remedies available under 35 U.S.C. §§ 284 and 285, including enhanced damages up to and including trebling of Eclipse's damages for Aston Martin's willful infringement, and reasonable attorneys' fees and costs; and,

(c) Such other and further relief as this Court or a jury may deem proper and just.

JURY DEMAND

Eclipse demands a trial by jury on all issues so triable pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 38.

Respectfully submitted this 17th day of October, 2013

NEWPORT TRIAL GROUP

By: /Tyler J. Woods/

Tyler J. Woods
Attorney for Plaintiff
ECLIPSE IP LLC

NEWPORT TRIAL GROUP

EXHIBIT A

US007876239B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Horstemeyer

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,876,239 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: *Jan. 25, 2011**

(54) **SECURE NOTIFICATION MESSAGING SYSTEMS AND METHODS USING AUTHENTICATION INDICIA**

(76) Inventor: **Scott A. Horstemeyer**, 3280 Northside Pkwy., Apt. 205, Atlanta, GA (US) 30327

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 449 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **11/924,810**

(22) Filed: **Oct. 26, 2007**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2008/0046280 A1 Feb. 21, 2008

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 10/858,752, filed on Jun. 2, 2004, now Pat. No. 7,319,414, which is a continuation of application No. 10/706,591, filed on Nov. 12, 2003, now Pat. No. 7,119,716.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/473,738, filed on May 28, 2003, provisional application No. 60/473,742, filed on May 28, 2003, provisional application No. 60/473,949, filed on May 28, 2003, provisional application No. 60/486,768, filed on Jul. 11, 2003, provisional application No. 60/498,819, filed on Aug. 29, 2003.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
G08G 1/123 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **340/994**; 340/995.13; 340/928; 340/539.11; 340/502; 340/504; 340/506; 701/200; 701/201; 455/456.1

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 340/994, 340/995.13, 928, 539.11, 502, 504, 506; 701/147, 200, 201; 455/456.1
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,568,161 A 3/1971 Knickel 340/994

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0219859 A2 4/1987

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Moriok, et al., "Advanced Vehicle Monitoring and communication Systems for Bus Transit—Benefits and Economic Feasibility", Final Report—U.S. Department of Transportation, Sep. 1991, Revised Mar. 1993, Dot-T-94-03.

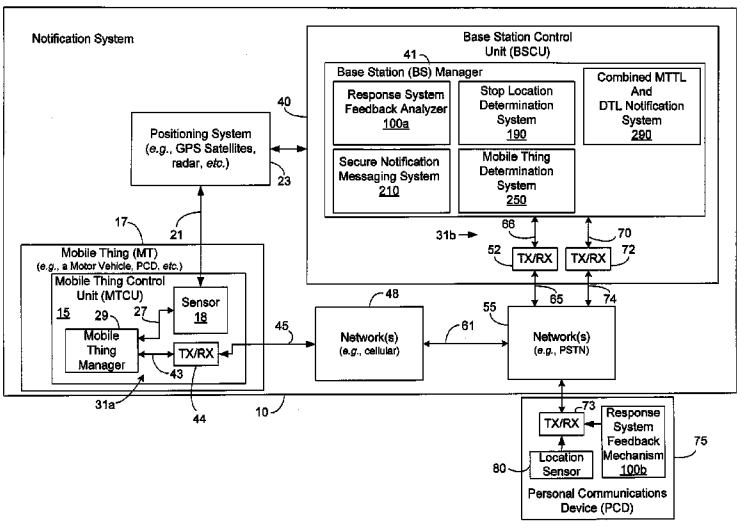
(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Tai T Nguyen
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Thomas, Kayden, Horstemeyer & Risley, LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

Systems and methods are disclosed for notification or messaging systems that give confidence to the notification-receiving party that a notification concerning the travel status of a mobile thing is from a proper authorized source. One representative method, among others, comprises the following steps: monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing; communicating a notification involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the mobile thing to a personal communications device associated with a party; and providing authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification is from an authorized source. A representative system, among others, comprises a computer system that is programmed to perform each of the foregoing steps.

61 Claims, 50 Drawing Sheets



U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,644,883	A	2/1972	Borman et al.	340/23
3,845,289	A	10/1974	French	235/151.2
3,886,515	A	5/1975	Cottin et al.	340/994
3,934,125	A	1/1976	Macano	235/150.2
4,220,946	A	9/1980	Henriot	340/23
4,297,672	A	10/1981	Fruchey et al.	340/23
4,325,057	A	4/1982	Bishop	340/539
4,350,969	A	9/1982	Greer	340/23
4,525,601	A	6/1985	Barnich et al.	379/7 MM
4,585,904	A	4/1986	Mincone et al.	179/7.1 TP
4,713,661	A	12/1987	Boone et al.	340/994
4,791,571	A	12/1988	Takahashi et al.	364/436
4,799,162	A	1/1989	Shinkawa et al.	364/436
4,804,837	A	2/1989	Farley	250/251
4,804,937	A	2/1989	Barbiaux et al.	340/52 F
4,812,843	A	3/1989	Champion, III et al.	340/905
4,813,065	A	3/1989	Segala	379/112
4,857,925	A	8/1989	Brubaker	340/994
4,894,649	A	1/1990	Davis	340/825.44
4,956,777	A	9/1990	Cearley et al.	364/424.02
5,003,584	A	3/1991	Benyacar et al.	379/119
5,006,847	A	4/1991	Rush et al.	340/994
5,014,206	A	5/1991	Scribner et al.	364/449
5,021,780	A	6/1991	Fabiano et al.	340/994
5,048,079	A	9/1991	Harrington et al.	379/112
5,068,656	A	11/1991	Sutherland	340/989
5,097,429	A	3/1992	Wood et al.	364/569
5,103,475	A	4/1992	Shuen	379/115
5,113,185	A	5/1992	Ichikawa	340/995
5,121,326	A	6/1992	Moroto et al.	364/449
5,122,959	A	6/1992	Nathanson et al.	364/436
5,131,020	A	7/1992	Liebesny et al.	379/59
5,144,301	A	9/1992	Jackson et al.	340/994
5,146,491	A	9/1992	Silver et al.	379/114
5,155,689	A	10/1992	Wortham	364/460
5,168,451	A	12/1992	Bolger	364/436
5,179,584	A	1/1993	Tsumura	379/114
5,218,629	A	6/1993	Dumond, Jr. et al.	379/59
5,218,632	A	6/1993	Cool	379/126
5,223,844	A	6/1993	Mansell et al.	342/357
5,243,529	A	9/1993	Kashiwazaki	364/449
5,271,484	A	12/1993	Bahjat et al.	187/29.1
5,299,132	A	3/1994	Wortham	364/460
5,323,456	A	6/1994	Oprea	379/375
5,351,194	A	9/1994	Ross et al.	364/449
5,361,296	A	11/1994	Reyes et al.	379/96
5,381,338	A	1/1995	Wysocki et al.	364/449
5,381,467	A	1/1995	Rosinski et al.	379/121
5,394,332	A	2/1995	Kuwahara et al.	364/449
5,398,190	A	3/1995	Wortham	364/460
5,400,020	A	3/1995	Jones	340/994
5,420,794	A	5/1995	James	364/436
5,428,546	A	6/1995	Shah et al.	364/449
5,432,841	A	7/1995	Rimer	379/59
5,440,489	A	8/1995	Newman	364/426.05
5,444,444	A	8/1995	Ross	340/994
5,446,678	A	8/1995	Saltzstein et al.	364/514
5,448,479	A	9/1995	Kemner et al.	365/424.02
5,461,374	A	10/1995	Lewiner et al.	340/994
5,483,234	A	1/1996	Correel et al.	340/994
5,483,454	A	1/1996	Lewiner et al.	364/443
5,493,295	A	2/1996	Lewiner et al.	340/994
5,493,694	A	2/1996	Vlcek et al.	455/53.1
5,506,893	A	4/1996	Buscher et al.	379/114
5,513,111	A	4/1996	Wortham	364/460
5,515,421	A	5/1996	Sikand et al.	379/67
5,519,621	A	5/1996	Wortham	364/460
5,526,401	A	6/1996	Roach, Jr. et al.	379/59
5,539,810	A	7/1996	Kennedy, III et al.	379/59
5,544,225	A	8/1996	Kennedy, III et al.	379/59
5,546,444	A	8/1996	Roach, Jr. et al.	379/59
5,552,795	A	9/1996	Tayloe et al.	342/357
5,559,871	A	9/1996	Smith	379/115
5,570,100	A	10/1996	Grube et al.	364/446
5,577,101	A	11/1996	Bohm	379/58
5,579,376	A	11/1996	Kennedy, III et al.	379/60
5,587,715	A	12/1996	Lewis	342/357
5,594,650	A	1/1997	Shah et al.	364/449.1
5,594,787	A	1/1997	Ohshima et al.	379/114
5,602,739	A	2/1997	Haagenstad et al.	364/436
5,623,260	A	4/1997	Jones	340/994
5,648,770	A	7/1997	Ross	340/994
5,652,707	A	7/1997	Wortham	364/460
5,657,010	A	8/1997	Jones	340/994
5,668,543	A	9/1997	Jones	340/994
5,673,305	A	9/1997	Ross	379/58
5,680,119	A	10/1997	Magliari et al.	340/904
5,694,322	A	12/1997	Westerlage et al.	364/464
5,694,459	A	12/1997	Backaus et al.	379/427
5,699,275	A	12/1997	Beasley et al.	364/514 R
5,712,908	A	1/1998	Brinkman et al.	379/119
5,715,307	A	2/1998	Zazzera	379/265
5,719,771	A	2/1998	Buck et al.	364/443
5,724,243	A	3/1998	Westerlage et al.	364/446
5,724,584	A	3/1998	Peters et al.	395/671
5,729,597	A	3/1998	Bhusri	379/115
5,732,074	A	3/1998	Spaur et al.	370/313
5,734,981	A	3/1998	Kennedy, III et al.	455/445
5,736,940	A	4/1998	Burgener	340/994
5,739,774	A	4/1998	Olandesi	340/994
5,742,672	A	4/1998	Burk	379/198
5,751,245	A	5/1998	Janky et al.	342/357
5,760,742	A	6/1998	Branch et al.	342/457
5,771,282	A	6/1998	Friedes	379/121
5,771,455	A	6/1998	Kennedy, III et al.	455/456
5,774,825	A	6/1998	Reynolds	364/449.7
5,781,156	A	7/1998	Krasner	342/357
5,784,443	A	7/1998	Chapman et al.	379/119
5,793,853	A	8/1998	Sbisa	379/120
5,796,365	A	8/1998	Lewis	342/357
5,799,073	A	8/1998	Fleischer, III et al.	379/113
5,799,263	A	8/1998	Culbertson	701/117
5,805,680	A	9/1998	Penzias	379/118
5,808,565	A	9/1998	Matta et al.	340/994
RE35,920	E	10/1998	Sorden et al.	342/457
5,835,580	A	11/1998	Frazer	379/115
5,841,847	A	11/1998	Graham et al.	379/114
5,852,659	A	12/1998	Welter, Jr.	379/116
5,864,610	A	1/1999	Ronen	379/127
5,875,238	A	2/1999	Glitho et al.	379/116
5,881,138	A	3/1999	Kearns et al.	379/114
5,910,979	A	6/1999	Goel et al.	379/120
5,912,954	A	6/1999	Whited et al.	379/115
5,915,006	A	6/1999	Jagadish et al.	379/127
5,920,613	A	7/1999	Alcott et al.	379/114
5,922,040	A	7/1999	Prabhakaran	701/117
5,937,044	A	8/1999	Kim	379/121
5,943,320	A	8/1999	Weik et al.	370/259
5,943,406	A	8/1999	Leta et al.	379/120
5,943,657	A	8/1999	Freestone et al.	705/400
5,945,919	A	8/1999	Trask	340/825.491
5,946,379	A	8/1999	Bhusri	379/115
5,950,174	A	9/1999	Brendzel	705/34
5,955,974	A	9/1999	Togawa	340/994
5,956,391	A	9/1999	Melen et al.	379/114
5,982,864	A	11/1999	Jagadish et al.	379/115
5,987,108	A	11/1999	Jagadish et al.	379/114
5,987,377	A	11/1999	Westerlage et al.	701/204
5,991,377	A	11/1999	Malik	379/114
5,991,380	A	11/1999	Bruno et al.	379/115
5,991,381	A	11/1999	Bouanaka et al.	379/115
5,995,602	A	11/1999	Johnson et al.	379/116
6,006,159	A	12/1999	Schmier et al.	701/200
6,094,149	A	7/2000	Wilson	340/904

6,097,317	A	8/2000	Lewiner et al.	340/994
6,111,538	A	8/2000	Schuchman et al.	342/357
6,124,810	A	9/2000	Segal et al.	340/994
6,134,501	A	10/2000	Oumi	701/209
6,137,425	A	10/2000	Oster et al.	340/994
6,144,301	A	11/2000	Frieden	340/572.8
6,178,378	B1	1/2001	Leibold	701/202
6,184,802	B1	2/2001	Lamb	340/994
6,191,708	B1	2/2001	Davidson	340/994
6,212,393	B1	4/2001	Suarez et al.	455/456
6,222,462	B1	4/2001	Hahn	340/904
6,240,362	B1	5/2001	Gaspard, II	701/209
6,253,146	B1	6/2001	Hanson et al.	701/202
6,253,148	B1	6/2001	Decaux et al.	701/204
6,278,936	B1	8/2001	Jones	701/201
6,313,760	B1	11/2001	Jones	340/994
6,317,060	B1	11/2001	Jones	340/994
6,360,101	B1	3/2002	Irvin	445/456
6,363,254	B1	3/2002	Jones et al.	455/456
6,363,323	B1	3/2002	Jones	701/213
6,374,176	B1	4/2002	Schmier et al.	701/200
6,400,956	B1	6/2002	Richton	455/456
6,411,891	B1	6/2002	Jones	701/201
6,415,207	B1	7/2002	Jones	701/1
6,486,801	B1	11/2002	Jones	340/994
6,492,912	B1	12/2002	Jones	
6,510,383	B1	1/2003	Jones	
6,618,668	B1	9/2003	Laird	701/204
6,683,542	B1	1/2004	Jones	340/994
6,700,507	B2	3/2004	Jones	340/994
7,197,537	B2 *	3/2007	Koch	709/206
2002/0016171	A1	2/2002	Doganata et al.	455/456
2002/0049723	A1 *	4/2002	Kurihara et al.	707/1
2002/0069017	A1	6/2002	Schmier et al.	701/213
2002/0082770	A1 *	6/2002	Jones	701/201
2002/0099500	A1	7/2002	Schmier et al.	701/200
2003/0093218	A1	5/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0098802	A1	5/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0146854	A1	8/2003	Jones	340/988
2003/0193412	A1	10/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0193413	A1	10/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0193414	A1	10/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0195696	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0195697	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0195698	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0195699	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0233188	A1	12/2003	Jones	701/200
2003/0233190	A1	12/2003	Jones	701/207

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0805427	A1	11/1997
EP	0889455	A1	1/1999
FR	2 559 930		8/1985
FR	2674355		9/1992
JP	52066175		6/1977
JP	63288400		11/1988
JP	11034872	A	2/1999
WO	WO 90/01236		2/1990
WO	WO 93/13503		7/1993
WO	WO 93/13510	A1	7/1993
WO	WO 9313510	A1	7/1993
WO	WO 94/02922		2/1994
WO	WO 94/27264		11/1994
WO	WO 96/04634		2/1996
WO	WO 96/16386		5/1996
WO	WO 98/07128		2/1998
WO	WO 98/08206		2/1998
WO	WO 98/14926		4/1998
WO	WO 98/40837		9/1998
WO	WO 02/093886	A2	11/2002

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Brynielsson, Thore, Step by Step Development Towards Attractive Public Transport, Chalmers University of Technology, Gotebord, Sweden, Department of Transportation, 1976.

"Public Transporation Information and Management Ssytems", IEE Colloquium, Computing and Control Division, May 25, 1993, pp. 9/1-9/4, 12/1-12/2, 7/1-7/3.

"Vehicle Location and Fleet Management Systems", IEE Colloquium, Computing and Control Division, Jun. 8, 1993.

The 3rd International Conference on Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems (VNIS) Norway, Sep. 2-4, 1992, pp. 312-315.

Preiss, George; Jenson, Lillian; "The Satref and GPS Information Projects", 1992 IEEE—3rd International Conference on Vehcile Navigation Information Systems, pp. 648-655.

"Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings" (p. 253), Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc., Oct. 1991, pp. 789-796.

"1992 Compendium of Technical Papers", Institute of Transportation Engineers—INRAD: A Deminostration of Two-Way Roadway to Vehicle Communication for use in Traffic Operations, Annual Meeting, Washington, D.C. pp. 214-218.

"Paving the Way for GPS in Vehicle Tracking", Showcase World, Dec. 1992.

"Advanced Vehicle Monitoring and Communication Systems for Bus Transit", Federal Transit Administration, Sep. 1991, Revised Mar. 1993.

Koncz, et al., "GIS-Based Transit Information Bolsters Travel Options", GIS World, Jul. 1995, pp. 62-64.

Helleker, Jan, Real-Time Traveller Information—in everyone's pocket?!—a pilot test using hand-portable GSM terminals, IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 49-52.

Burgener, E.C., et al., "A Personal Transit Arrival Time Receiver", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 54-55.

Peng, Zhong-Ren, "A Methodology for Design for a GIS-Based Automatic Transit Traveler Information System", Computer, Environment and Urban Systems, vol. 21, No. 5, pp. 359-372, 1997.

Lessard, Robert, "The Use of Computer for Urban Transit Operations", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 586-590.

Sommerville, Fraser, et al., "Reliable Information in Everyone's Pocket—a Pilot Test", IEEE, vol. 1927, Mar. 1994, pp. 425-428.

"PROMISE—Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Specification of Promise Services, Ver. 7", Telematics Application Programme A2, Transport, Jul. 1, 1996.

"PROMISE—Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Generic Promise System Architecture, Ver. 2", Telematics Application Programme A2, Transport, Sep. 10, 1996.

PROMISE—Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Summary of Promise Public Relation Activities, Ver. 1, Telematics Application Programme A2, Transport, Feb. 12, 1999.

"PROMISE"—A Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Abstract, The Institution of Electrical Engineers, 1997.

Sommerville, Fraser, et al., "The Promise of Increased Patronage", The Institution of Electrical Engineers, 1993, pp. 3/1-3/4.

"Automatic Transit Location System", Washington State Department of Transportation, Final Report, Feb. 1996.

"Advanced Traveler Aid Systems for Public Transportation", Federal Transit Administration, Sep. 1994.

"Advanced Vehicle Monitoring and Communication Systems for Bus Transit: Benefits and Economic Feasibility", U.S. Department of Transportation, Urban Mass Transportation Administration, Sep. 1991.

Leong, Robert, et al., "An Unconventional Approach to Automatic Vehicle Location and Control for Urban Transit", IEEE 1989, pp. 219-223.

"1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings", Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 807-810.

"Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings—P-253, Part 2", Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc., Oct. 1991.
Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems—Conference Record of Papers presented at the 3rd Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference 1992., Reso Hotel, Osio Plaza., pp. 49-52.
Nelson, J. Richard, "Experiences Gained in Implementing an Economical Universal Motorist System", , IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 67-71.
"The Cassiope/Eurobus Approach", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 79-81.
Kihl, Mary, "Advanced Vehicle Location System for Paratransit in Iowa", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 381-384.
Gault, Helen, et al., "Automatic Vehicle Location and Control at OC Transpo", , IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 596-600.
Vehicle navigation & Information System—Conference Record of Papers presented at the First Vehicle Navigation and Information Systems Conference (VNIS '89), Sep. 11-13, 1999, pp. 602-605.
Heti, Gabriel, "Travelguide: Ontario's Route Guidance System Demonstration", , IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. A13-A18.
Jeffery, D.J., et al., "Advanced Traveller Information Systems in the UK: Experience from the Pleiades and Romanse Projects", , IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 309-313.
Sweeney, Lawrence, E., et al., "Travinfo: A Progress Report", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 315-320.
Shimamura, Yta, et al., "Combined Position Detection System for Pedestrian/Train Mode", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 603-606.
Zavoli, Walt, "Customer Location Services", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 613-617.
Tanaka, Yoshimi, et al., "Automatic Traffic Information Provision System Utilizing Facsimile and Telephone (Now Operating in Osaka), 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings", Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 627-632.
McDonald, Mike, et al., "Romanse (Road Management System for Europe) Project", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. A-11-A-14.
Scott III, Robert H., "Computer-Aided Dispatch,", 1998, pp. 46-50.
Moore, Rodney J., "Hold the Phone!", American Demographics, Ithaca, Jan./Feb. 1996, p. 68.
Delong, Jr., Edgar S., "Making 911 even better", Telephony, Dec. 14, 1987, pp. 60-63.
Bruzek, Frank J., "Class Calling Service—A Consumer Service Perspective", Globecom '85 IEEE Global Telecommunications Conference, Dec. 2-5, 1985, vol. 1 of 3, pp. 11.4.1-11.4.4.
Powell, R., et al., "Real Time Passenger Information System for the Romanse Project", Colloouin Digest—IEE, Boston, Sep. 1993, pp. 9/1-9/3.
Huber, Paul, "Public Transport Information Systems in Munich", Intelligent Transport Systems World Congress '95—Second Wold Congress on Intelligent Transport Systems, Yokohama, Japan., Nov. 9-11, 1995, pp. 2362-2366.
Ronez, Nicholas, et al, "GIS-Based Transit Information Bolsters Travel Options", GIS World, vol. 6, part 7, Jun. 1995, pp. 62-64.
Catling, Ian, et al., "TABASCO—Improving Transport Systems in Europe", Pacific Rim TransTech Conference, Jul. 30-Aug. 2, 1995, 995 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Washington State Convention and Trade Center, Seattle, Washington, USA, pp. 503-507.
Dailey, D.J., "Demonstration of an Advance Public Transportation System in the Context of an IVHS Regional Architecture", Proceedings of the First World Congress on Applications of Transport Telematics and Intelligent Vehicle-Highway Systems, Nov. 30-Dec. 3, 1994, Paris, France, pp. 3024-3031.
Hubner, Paul, "Advance Public Transportation Information in Munich", International Conference on Public Transport Electronic Systems, Conference Publication No. 42, Jun. 1996.
Thompson, S.M., et al., "Exploiting Telecommunications to Delivery Real Time Transport Information", Road Transport Information and Control, Apr. 21-23, 1998, pp. 59-63, Conference Publication No. 454 IEE 1998.
Kaminitzer, David, et al., Driver Information Systems: Influencing your Route, IEE Seminar, Mar. 3, 1999, pp. 5/1-5/5.
"Board Cites ATC in Spokane Near Miss", Article in Aviation Week & Space Technology, Mar. 28, 1977, URL: http://www.aviationnow.com.
Shifrin, Carole A., "Gate Assignment Expert System Reduces Delays at United's Hubs", Article in Aviation Week & Space Technology, Jan. 25, 1988.
"United Airlines applies TI's advance technologies to improve gate management at major airports", Article in Business Wire, Inc., Nov. 19, 1987.
Musich, Paula, "Airline Designs Software to move planes, people; Unite Airline's use of Covia Corp.'s Open Systems Manager, Connectivity Section", Article in PC Week, Jun. 7, 1988, vol. 5, No. 23, p. C11.
Stoll, Marilyn, "Systems help Airlines Manage Gate Schedules; Connectivity Supplement", PC Week, Jul. 25, 1988, vol. 5, No. 30, p. C4.
Reddy, Shyamala, "Traveling LAN: United Airlines Networks Its Terminals", Article in The Local Area Network Magazine, Jan. 1990, vol. 5, No. 1, p. 108.
Fisher, Sharon, "Networked Airport Systems help Travelers find their way; United Airlines subsidiary Covia Corp. devices integrated network.", Article in Software Magazine, Mar. 15, 1990, vol. 10, No. 4, p. 31.
Henderson, Danna K., "Automation Takes aim at airports: the power of the networked PC is being unleashed on passenger handling and ramp activities worldwide.", Article in Air Transport Wold, Aug. 1990., vol, 27, No. 8, p. 52.
"United Airlines introduces United Cargo Plug I, a new cargo computer system to serve freight forwarders", Business Wire, Oct. 22, 1990.
Miller, Barry, "Special Report: Airline Equipment, Service Center", Aviation Week & Space Technology, Aug. 25, 1975, p. 51.
Lyon, Mark W., "Cargo Net Debate Splits Industry", Journal of Commerce, Specials, p. 4, Jul. 27, 1992.
Davies, I.L., et al., "Electronics and the Aeroplane", Proceedings of the Institution of Electrical Engineers, Paper No. 7604, delivered before the IEE Electronics Division, Oct. 29, 1975.
"Global Niche", Flight International, Sep. 26, 1990.
"Real-Time Briefings", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Oct. 13, 1986.
Flanagan, Mike, et al., "Amelia Earhart—Mystery Still Clouds Soaring Achievements", Chicago Tribune, Jul. 5, 1987, Final Edition, p. 5, Tempo Woman.
"Official Airline Guides", Airports®, Nov. 20, 1990, Around Airports, vol. 7, No. 47, p. 485.
"Automation System Gains Acceptance", Aviation Week & Space Technology, Nov. 23, 1992, vol. 137, No. 21, p. 97.
Klass, Philip, "French Testing Ground-Derived' MLS", Aviation & Space Technology, Avionics, p. 56, Dec. 15, 1975.
"Forecast Realized for ATC System", Aviation & Space Technology, Mar. 17, 1975, Avionics, p. 168.
Henderson, Danna, et al., "Ionworks: America West Automates New Phoenix Terminal Fully Integrated System to Handle Customer-Service Demands (America West Airlines Inc) (Includes Related Article Automation of passenger Service at Airports)", Airport Transport World, May 1, 1991. vol. 62.
3 Pages from a web site search under http://mit.edu/afs/net.mit/edu/project/attic/usa-today/tech/37, Jun. 12, 2003.
"What's New in passenger Handling Equipment", Air Transport World, vol. 24, p. 62, Sep. 1987.
"Senator Urges Acceleration of Navstar", Aviation & Space Technology, Avionics, p. 153, Oct. 3, 1983.
"AFSC Broadens Joint Program Efforts", Aviation & Space Technology, System Acquisition, p. 83, Jul. 19, 1976.

Herskovitz, Don, "GPS Insurance Antijamming the System; Brief Article", Journal of Electronic Defense, Dec. 1, 2000, No. 12, vol. 23, p. 41.

Hambly, Richard M., et al., "Aircraft Traffic Management on the Airport Surface Using VHF Data Link for CNS", IEEE AES Systems Magazine, Mar. 1995, pp. 9-13.

Berzins, G., et al., "INMARSAT: Worldwide Mobile Satellite Services on Seas, in Air and on Land", Space Technology, vol. 10, No. 4, pp. 231-237, 1990.

Jenney, L.L., et al., "Man as Manager of Automated Resources in an Advanced Air Traffic System", J. Aircraft, vol. 12, No. 12, Dec. 1975.

"Routing & Scheduling System improvements from RTSI; Routing Technology Software, Inc.; Product Announcement", Modern Brewery Age, vol. 43, No. 3, p. 11S, Jan. 20, 1992.

"Data Link Evolved Over Three Decades", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Air Transport Section, May 23, 1977, p. 36.

Klass, Philip J., "American to Install Printers in Cockpits", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Avionics, Jul. 21, 1980, p. 56.

Lefer, Henry, "Computers on a boon to E&M, but at a price", Air Transport World, vol. 23, p. 53, Feb. 1986.

Donaghue, J.A., "Choice of Data Link Systems Expands as New Generation Hits the Market", Air Transport World, vol. 20, p. 58, Apr. 1983.

Klass, Philip J., "Digital Network Could Improve Aircraft Links to Operations, ATC", Aviation Week and Space Technology, International Air Transport Section, vol. 131, No. 21, p. 121, Nov. 20, 1989.

Board Cites ATC in Spokane Near Miss, Article in Aviation Week & Space Technology, Safety Section, Mar. 28, 1977, p. 59.

* cited by examiner

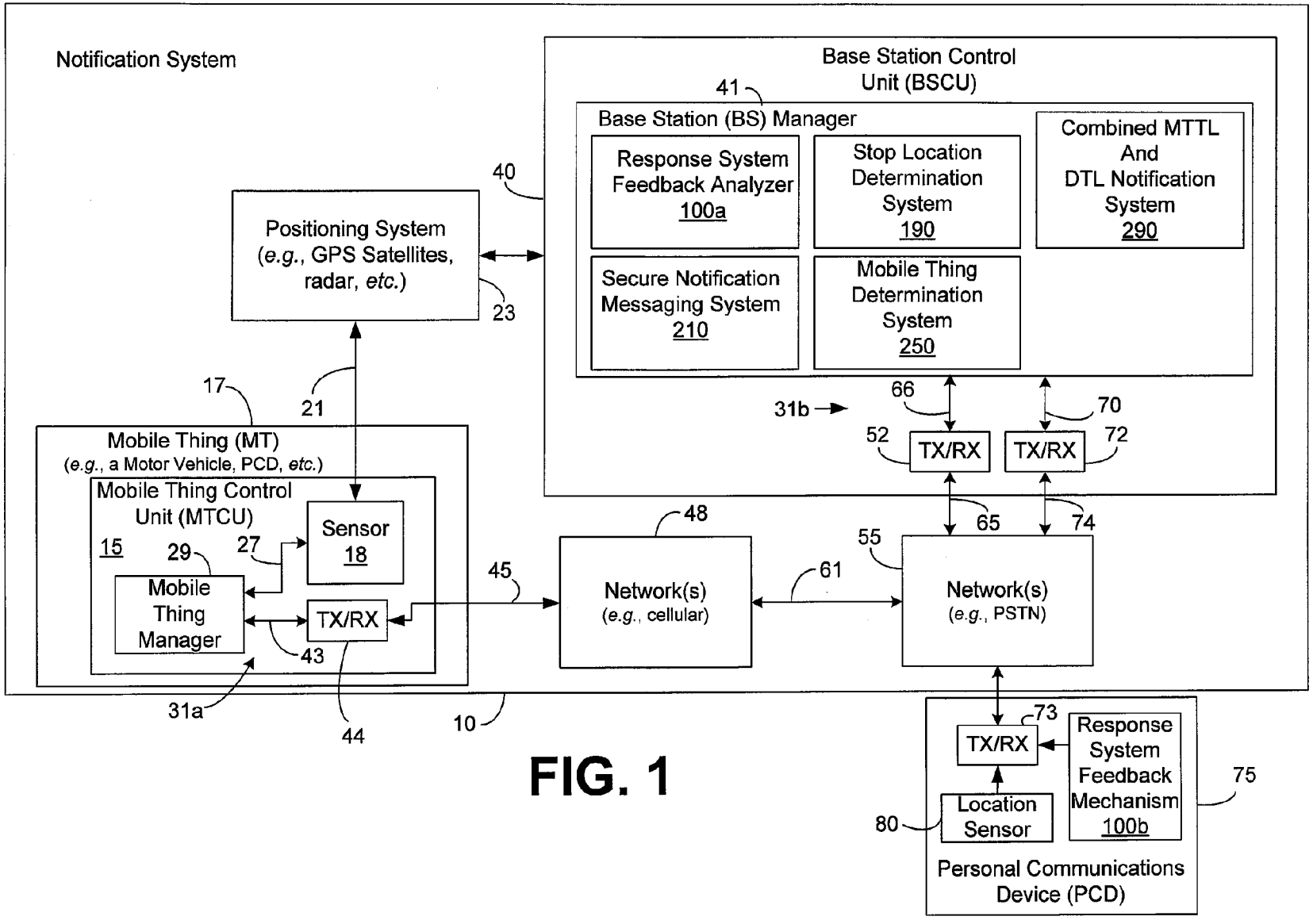

Notification System
Base Station Control Unit (BSCU)
41
Base Station (BS) Manager
Response System Feedback Analyzer 100a
Stop Location Determination System 190
Combined MTTL And DTL Notification System 290
Secure Notification Messaging System 210
Mobile Thing Determination System 250
40
Positioning System (e.g., GPS Satellites, radar, etc.)
23
17
21
Mobile Thing (MT) (e.g., a Motor Vehicle, PCD, etc.)
Mobile Thing Control Unit (MTCU)
15
29
27
Sensor 18
Mobile Thing Manager
TX/RX
43
31a
44
10
45
48
Network(s) (e.g., cellular)
61
55
Network(s) (e.g., PSTN)
31b
66
70
52
TX/RX
TX/RX
72
65
74
73
TX/RX
Response System Feedback Mechanism 100b
75
80
Location Sensor
Personal Communications Device (PCD)

FIG. 1

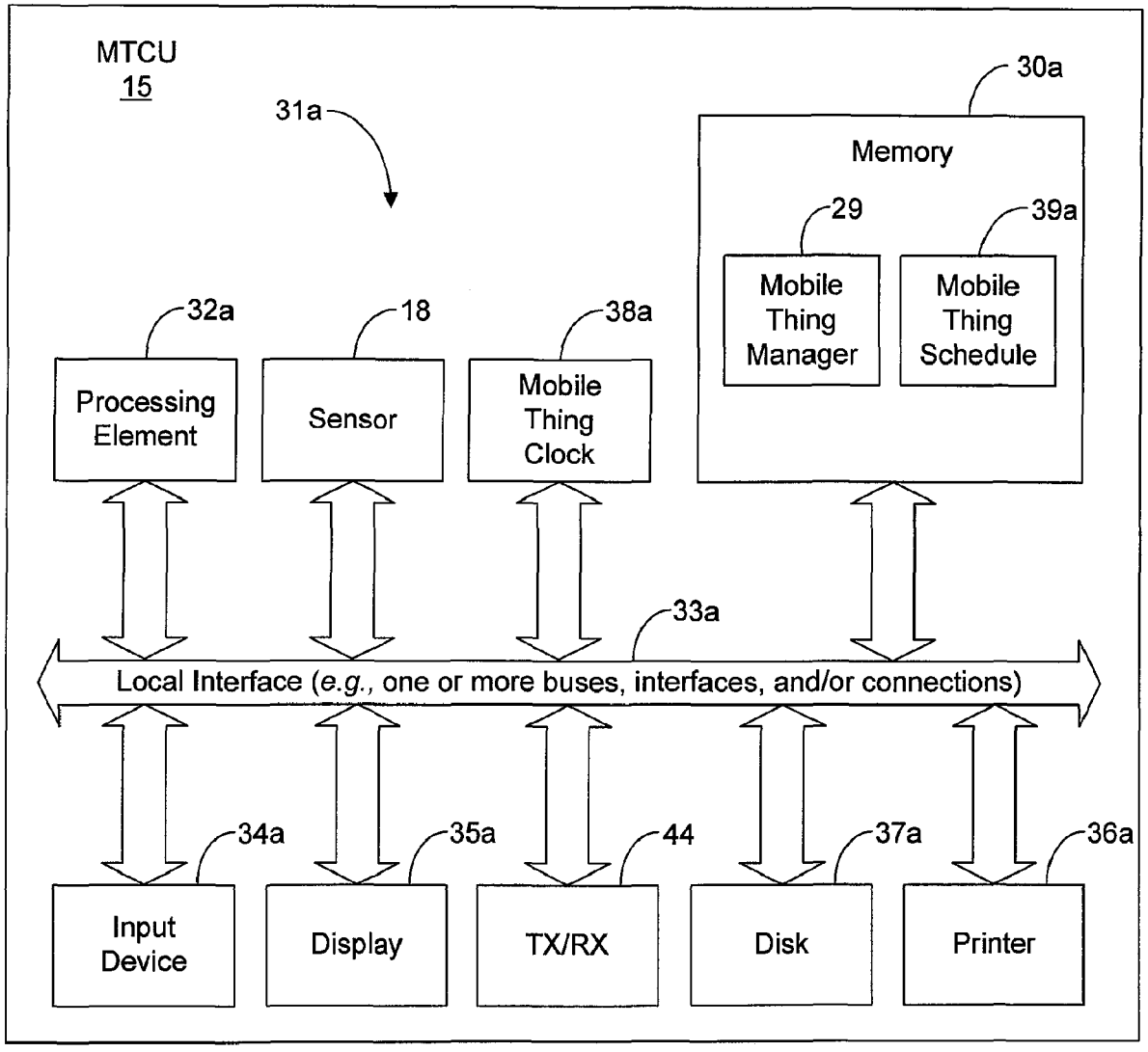

MTCU
15
31a
30a
Memory
29
39a
Mobile Thing Manager
Mobile Thing Schedule
32a
18
38a
Processing Element
Sensor
Mobile Thing Clock
33a
Local Interface (e.g., one or more buses, interfaces, and/or connections)
34a
35a
44
37a
36a
Input Device
Display
TX/RX
Disk
Printer

FIG. 2

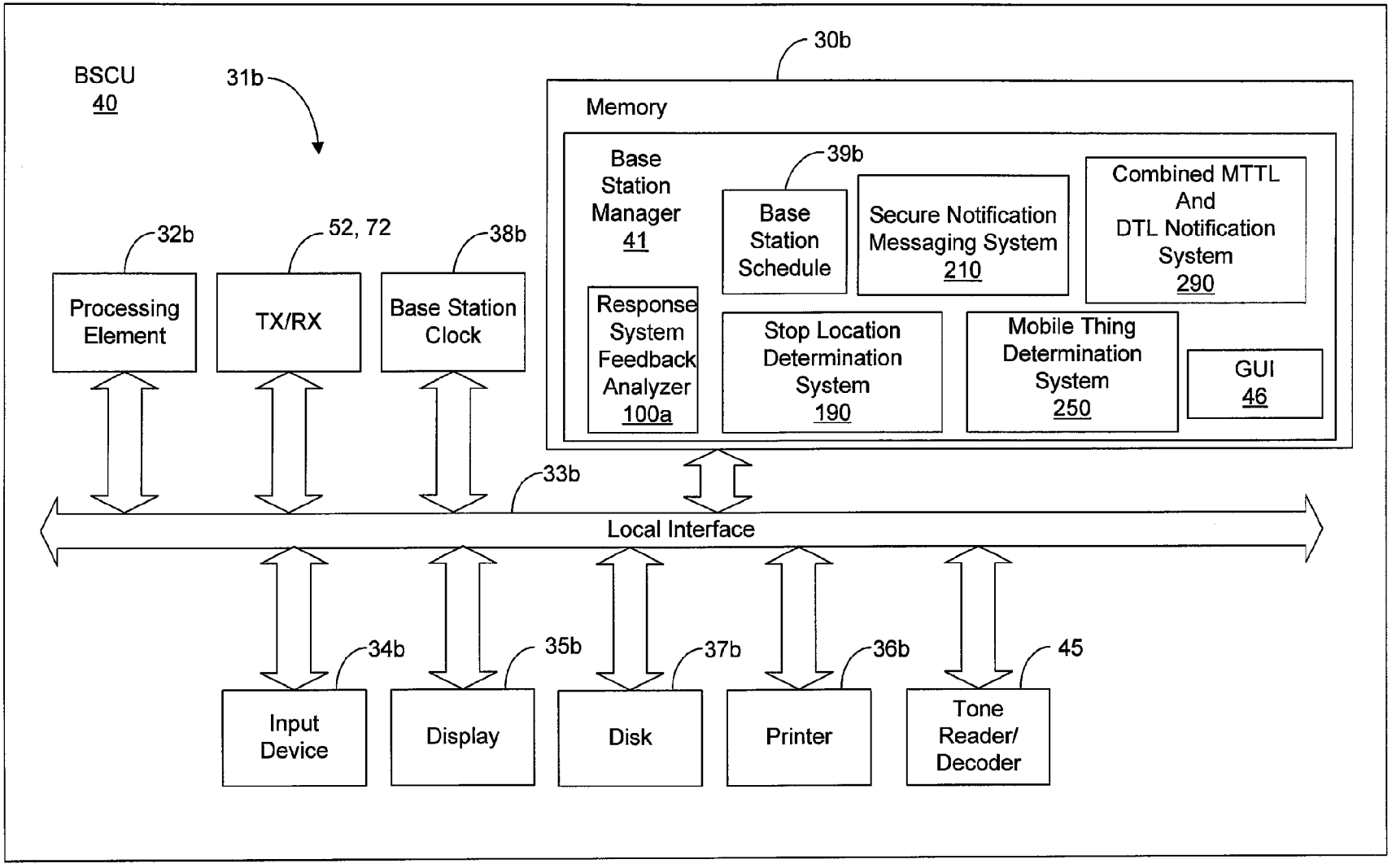

BSCU
40
31b
30b
Memory
Base Station Manager
41
39b
Base Station Schedule
Secure Notification Messaging System
210
Combined MTTL And DTL Notification System
290
Response System Feedback Analyzer
100a
Stop Location Determination System
190
Mobile Thing Determination System
250
GUI
46
32b
52, 72
38b
Processing Element
TX/RX
Base Station Clock
33b
Local Interface
34b
35b
37b
36b
45
Input Device
Display
Disk
Printer
Tone Reader/ Decoder

FIG. 3

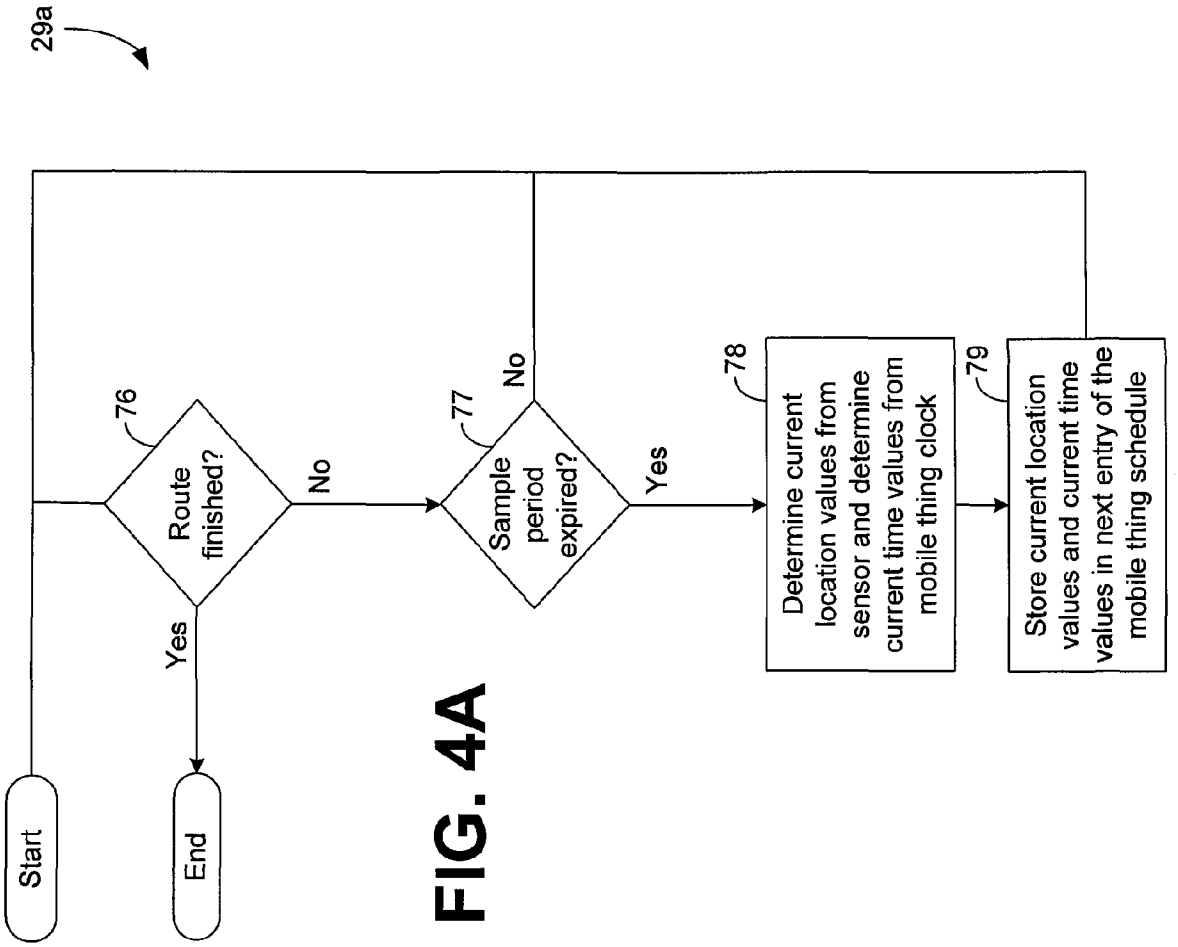

29a
Start
End
Route finished?
76
Yes
No
Sample period expired?
77
No
Yes
Determine current location values from sensor and determine current time values from mobile thing clock
78
Store current location values and current time values in next entry of the mobile thing schedule
79

FIG. 4A

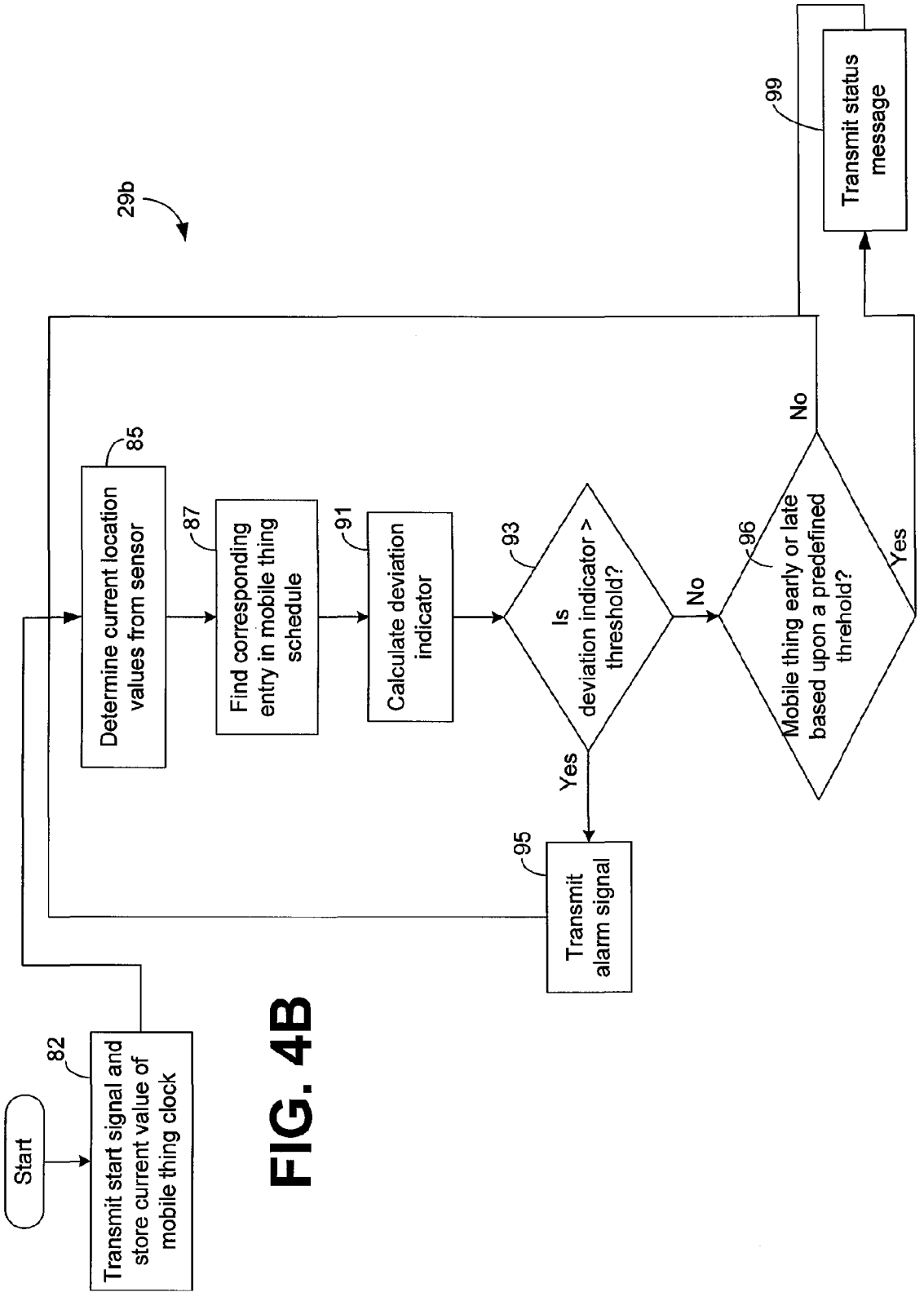

29b
Start
82
Transmit start signal and store current value of mobile thing clock
85
Determine current location values from sensor
87
Find corresponding entry in mobile thing schedule
91
Calculate deviation indicator
93
Is deviation indicator > threshold?
Yes
95
Transmit alarm signal
No
96
Mobile thing early or late based upon a predefined threhold?
Yes
No
99
Transmit status message

FIG. 4B

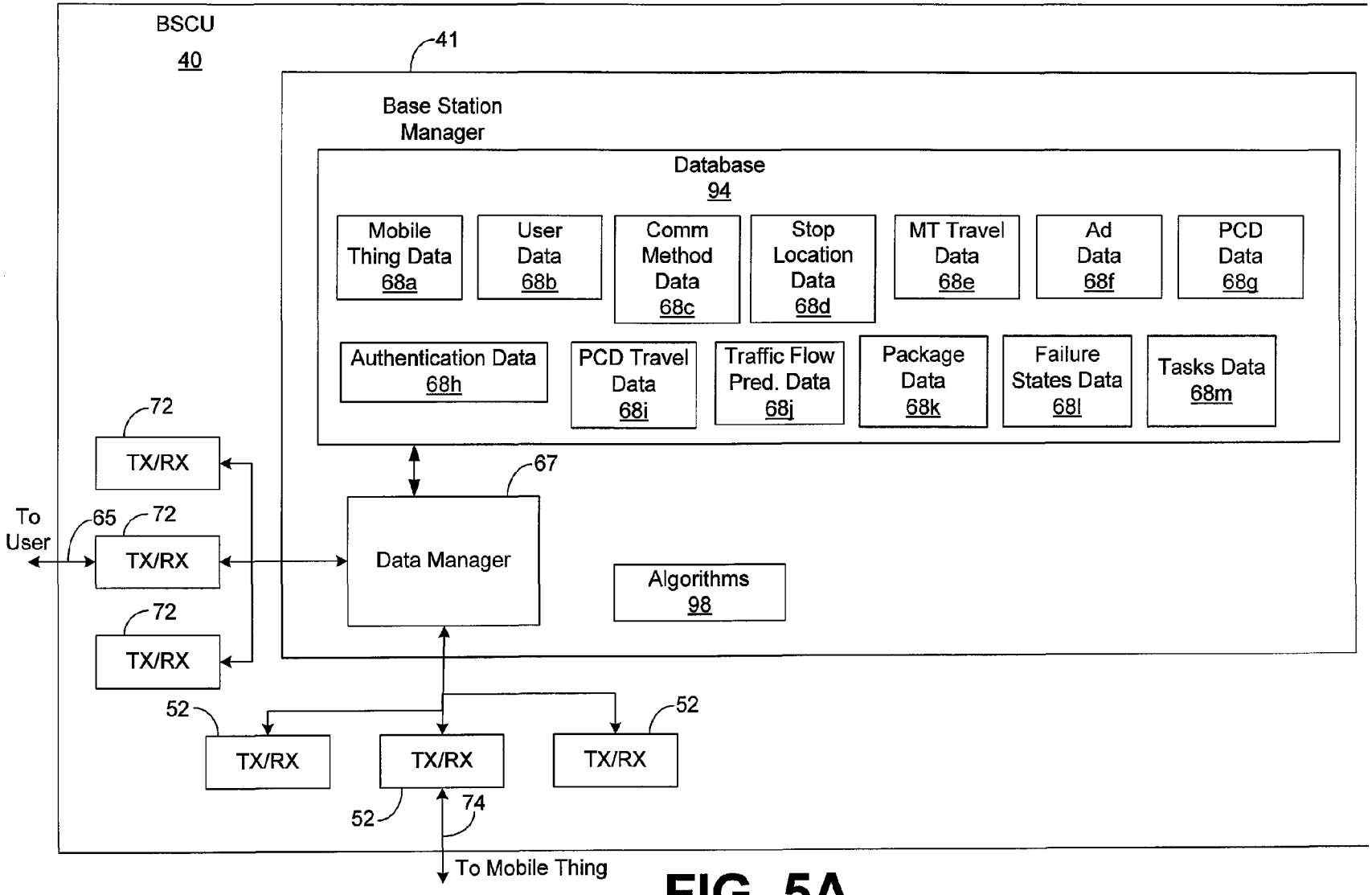
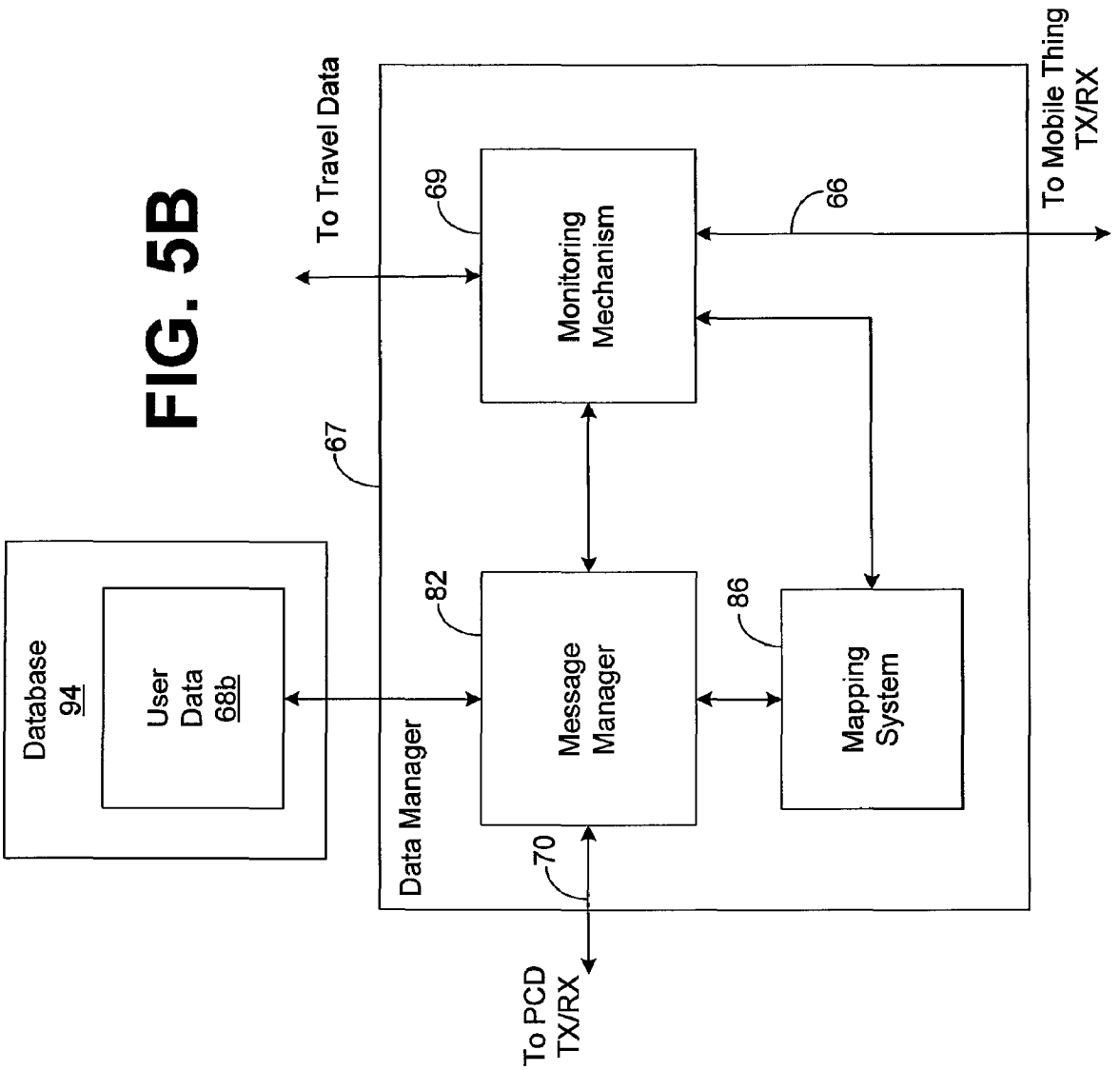

BSCU
40
41
Base Station Manager
Database
94
Mobile Thing Data 68a
User Data 68b
Comm Method Data 68c
Stop Location Data 68d
MT Travel Data 68e
Ad Data 68f
PCD Data 68g
Authentication Data 68h
PCD Travel Data 68i
Traffic Flow Pred. Data 68j
Package Data 68k
Failure States Data 68l
Tasks Data 68m
72
TX/RX
67
Data Manager
To User
65
72
TX/RX
Algorithms 98
72
TX/RX
52
52
TX/RX
TX/RX
TX/RX
52
74
To Mobile Thing

FIG. 5A

FIG. 5B


To Travel Data
To Mobile Thing TX/RX
69
66
Monitoring Mechanism
67
Database 94
User Data 68b
82
86
Message Manager
Mapping System
Data Manager
70
To PCD TX/RX

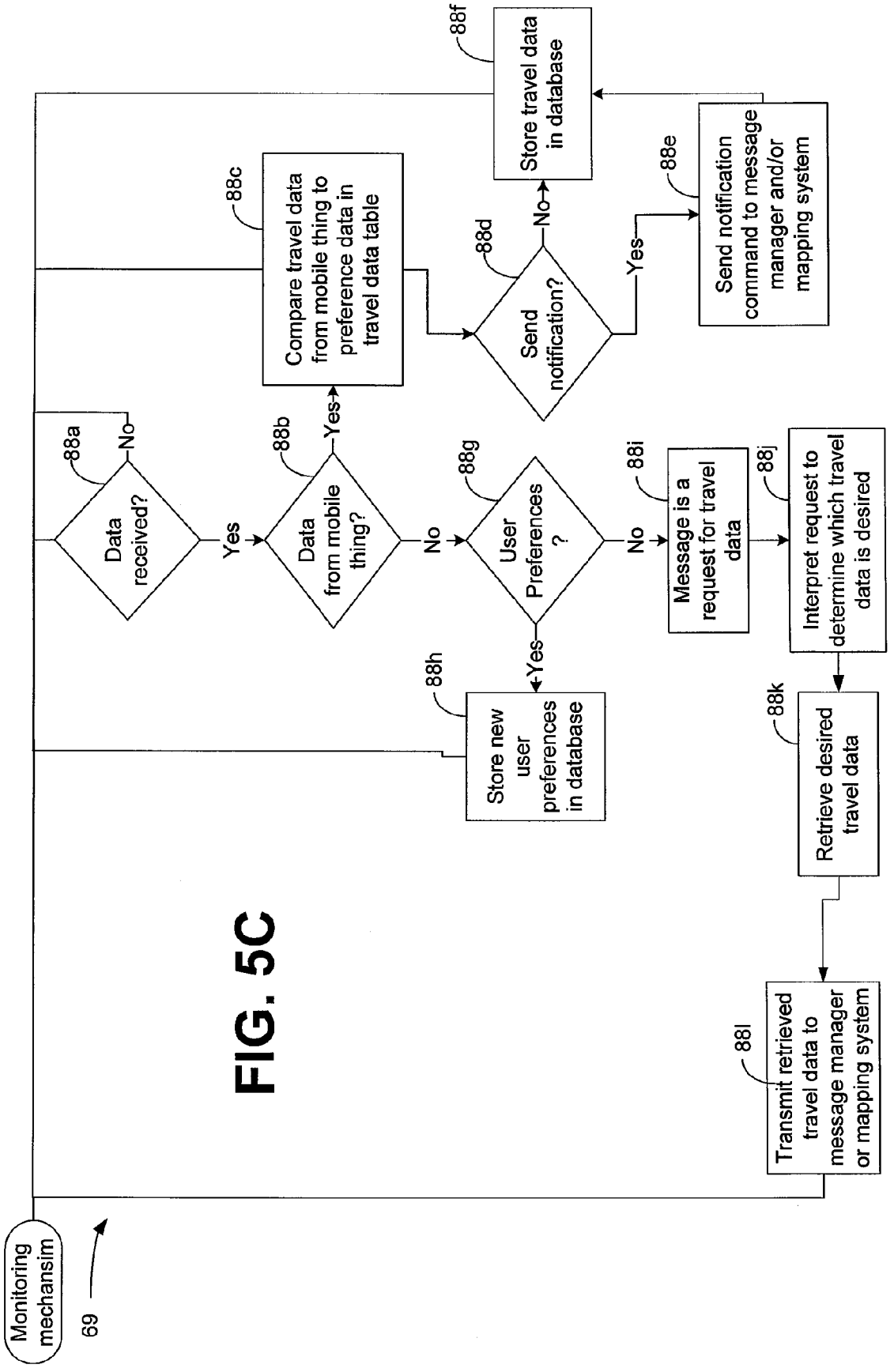

Monitoring mechansim
69
Data received?
88a
No
Yes
Data from mobile thing?
88b
Yes
No
Compare travel data from mobile thing to preference data in travel data table
88c
Send notification?
88d
No
Yes
Store travel data in database
88f
Send notification command to message manager and/or mapping system
88e
User Preferences ?
88g
Yes
No
Store new user preferences in database
88h
Message is a request for travel data
88i
Interpret request to determine which travel data is desired
88j
Retrieve desired travel data
88k
Transmit retrieved travel data to message manager or mapping system
88l

FIG. 5C

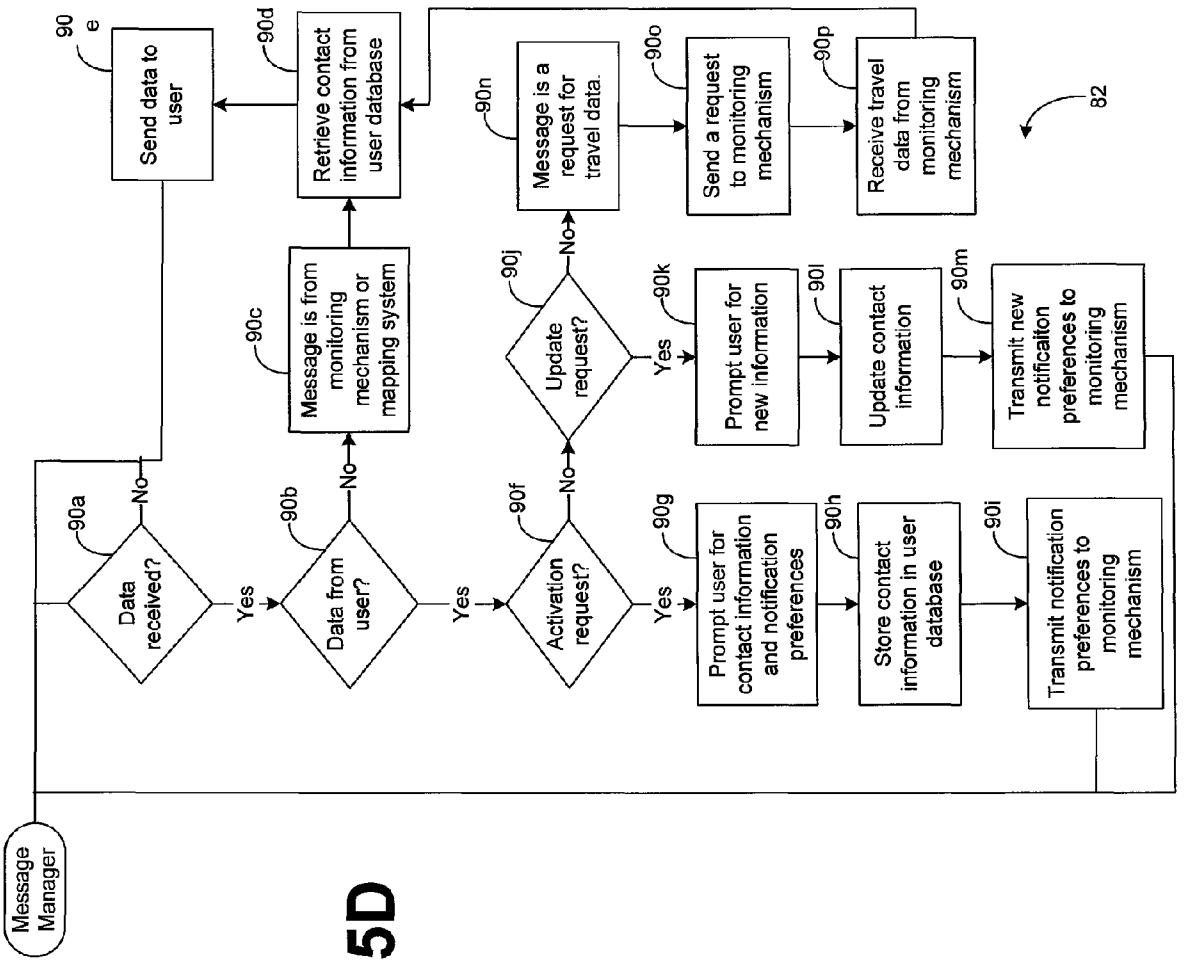

Message Manager
90a
Data received?
No
Yes
90b
Data from user?
No
Yes
90c
Message is from monitoring mechanism or mapping system
90d
Retrieve contact information from user database
90 e
Send data to user
90f
Activation request?
No
Yes
90g
Prompt user for contact information and notification preferences
90h
Store contact information in user database
90i
Transmit notification preferences to monitoring mechanism
90j
Update request?
No
Yes
90k
Prompt user for new information
90l
Update contact information
90m
Transmit new notificaiton preferences to monitoring mechanism
90n
Message is a request for travel data.
90o
Send a request to monitoring mechanism
90p
Receive travel data from monitoring mechanism
82

FIG. 5D

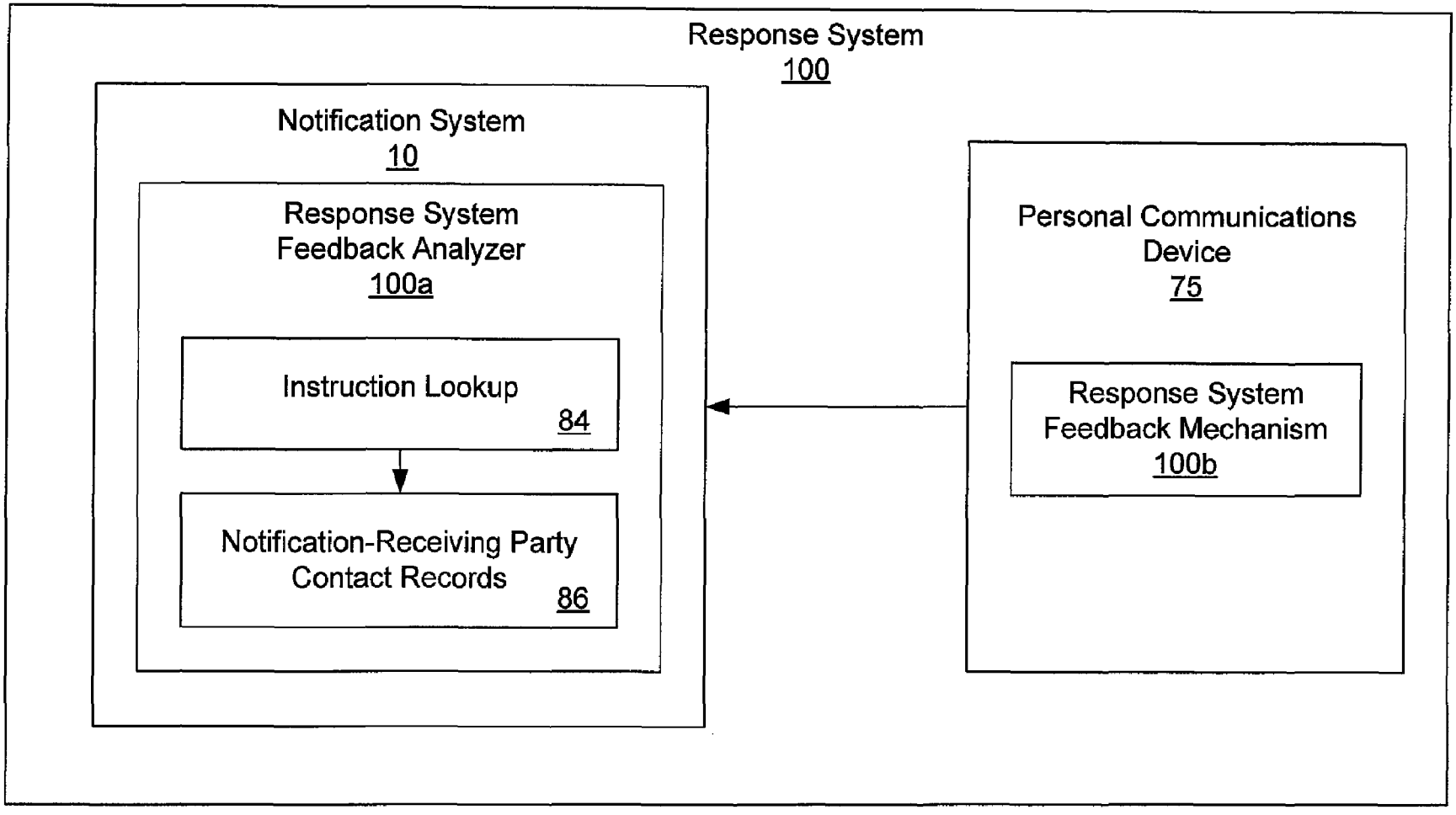

Response System
100
Notification System
10
Response System
Feedback Analyzer
100a
Instruction Lookup
84
Notification-Receiving Party
Contact Records
86
Personal Communications
Device
75
Response System
Feedback Mechanism
100b

FIG. 6

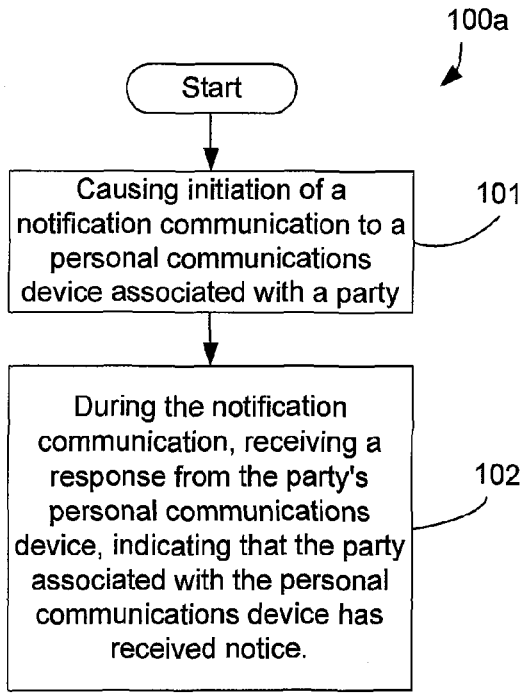


FIG. 7A

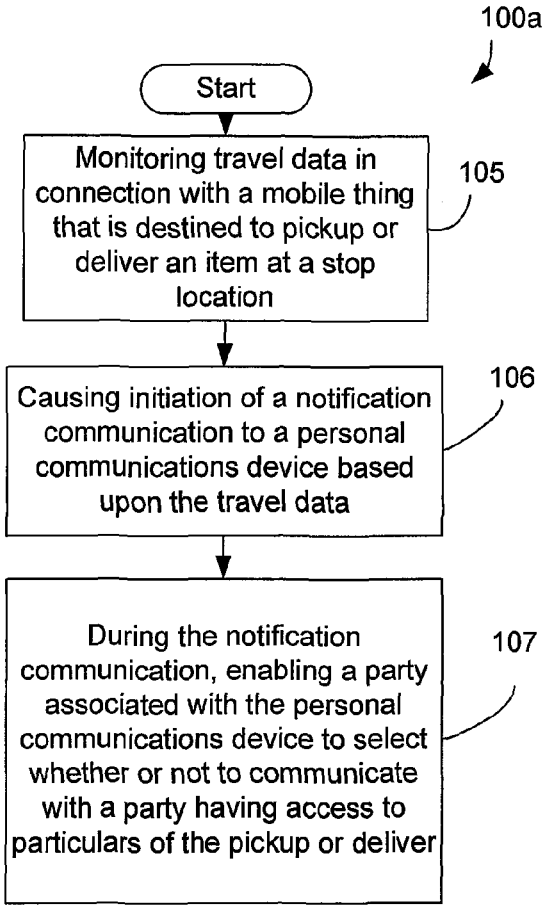


FIG. 7B

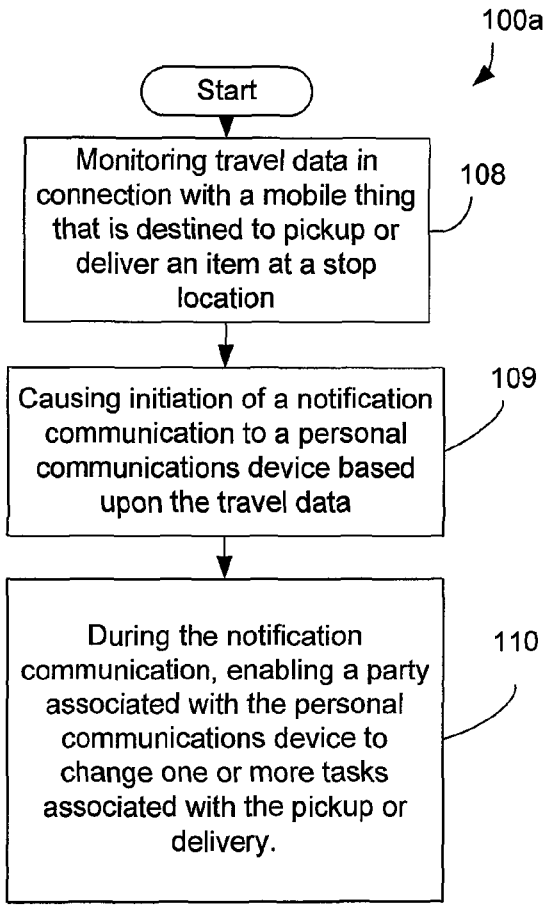


FIG. 7C

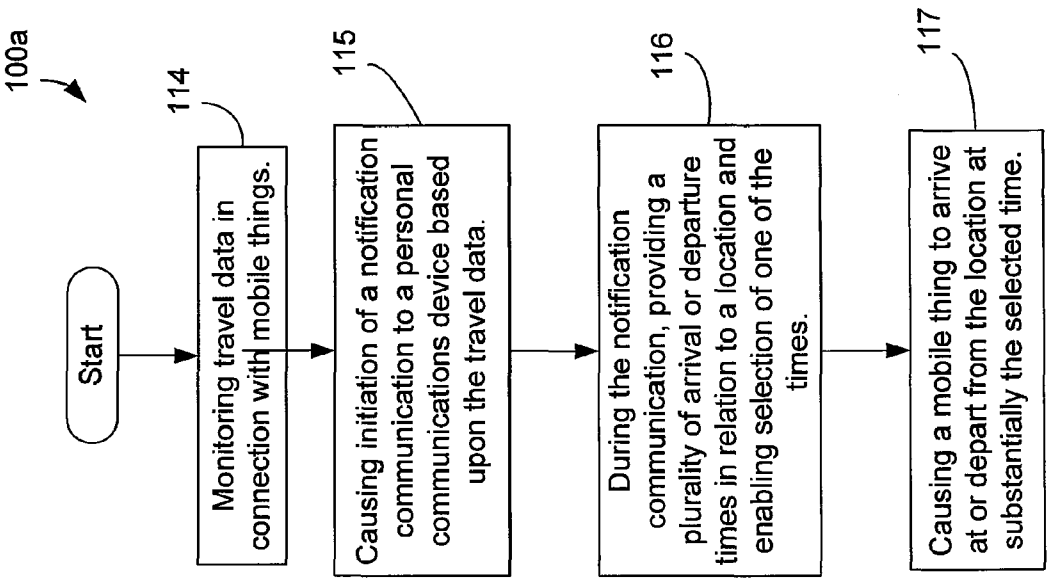

100a
Start
114
Monitoring travel data in connection with mobile things.
115
Causing initiation of a notification communication to a personal communications device based upon the travel data.
116
During the notification communication, providing a plurality of arrival or departure times in relation to a location and enabling selection of one of the times.
117
Causing a mobile thing to arrive at or depart from the location at substantially the selected time.

FIG. 7D

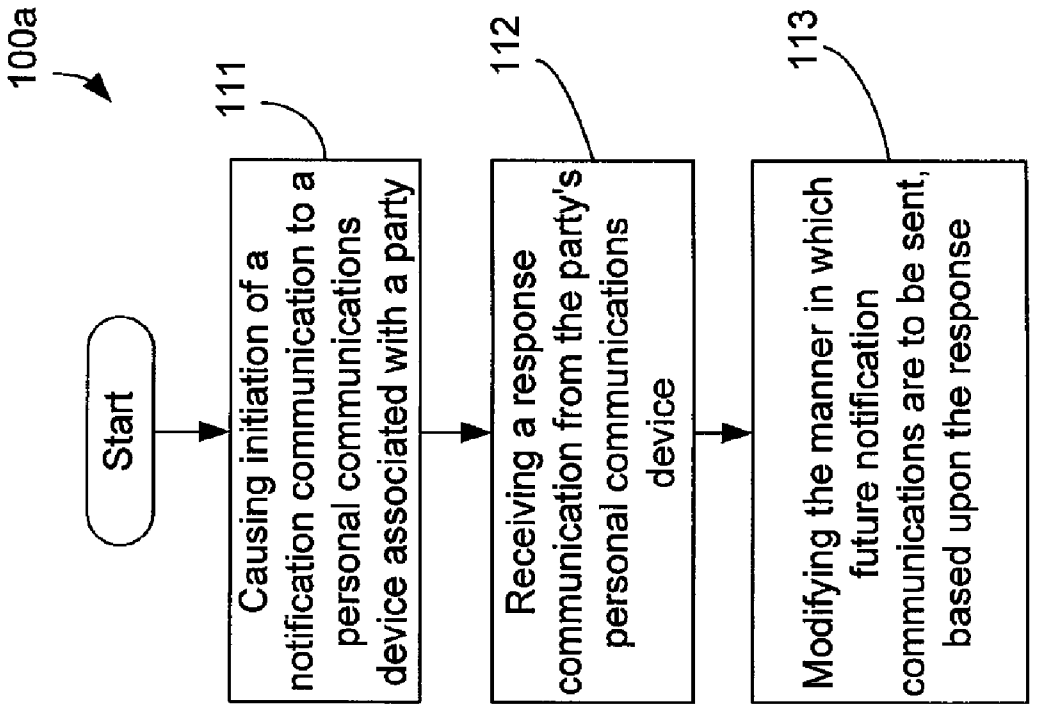

100a
Start
111
Causing initiation of a notification communication to a personal communications device associated with a party
112
Receiving a response communication from the party's personal communications device
113
Modifying the manner in which future notification communications are to be sent, based upon the response

FIG. 8

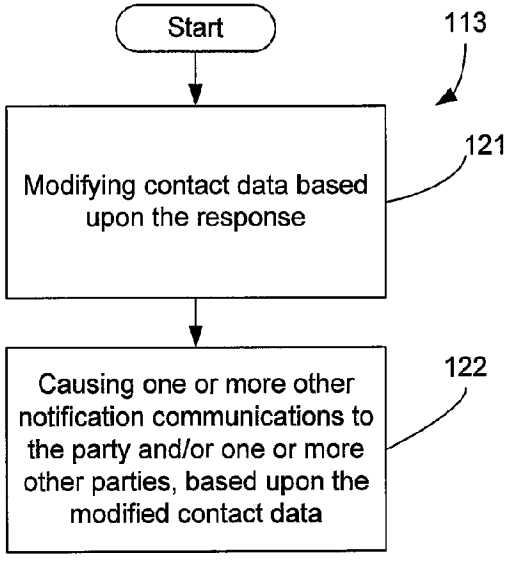


FIG. 9A

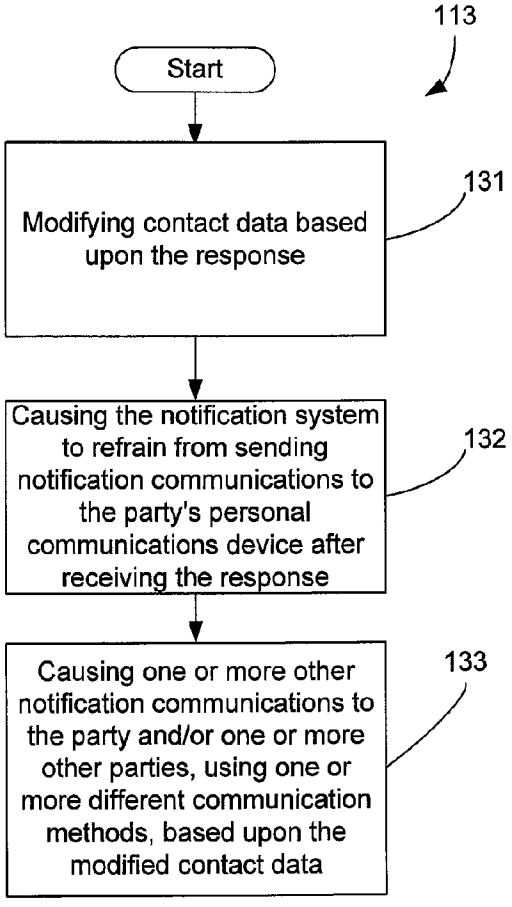


FIG. 9B

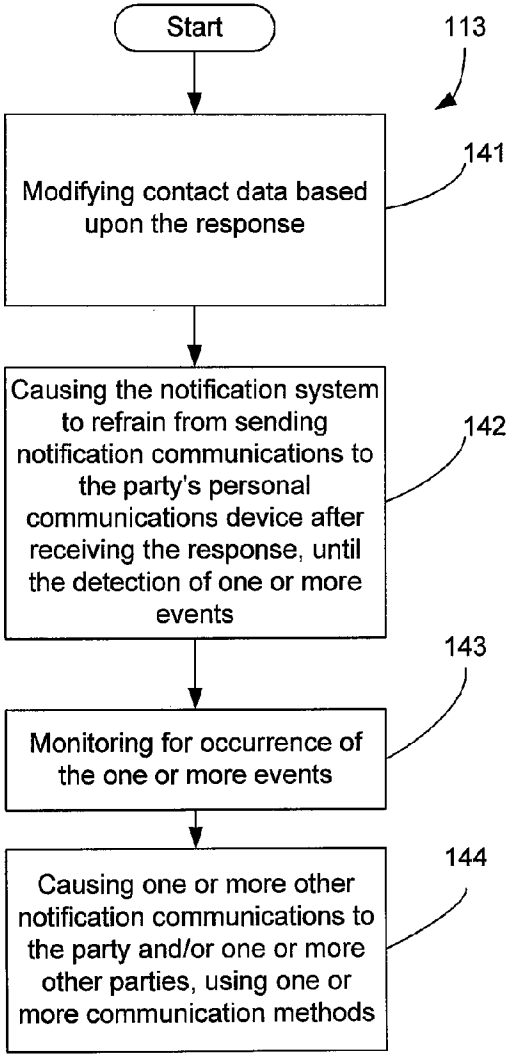


FIG. 9C

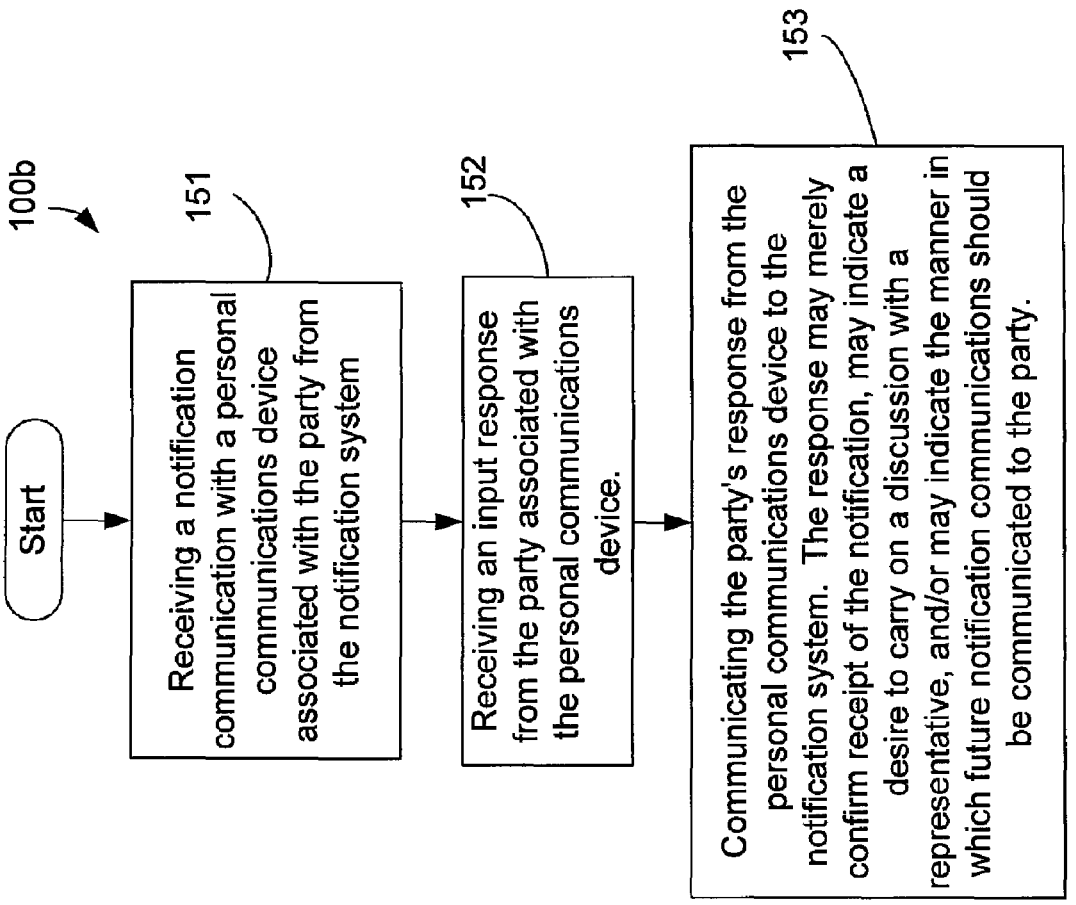

100b
Start
151
Receiving a notification communication with a personal communications device associated with the party from the notification system
152
Receiving an input response from the party associated with the personal communications device.
153
Communicating the party's response from the personal communications device to the notification system. The response may merely confirm receipt of the notification, may indicate a desire to carry on a discussion with a representative, and/or may indicate the manner in which future notification communications should be communicated to the party.

FIG. 10

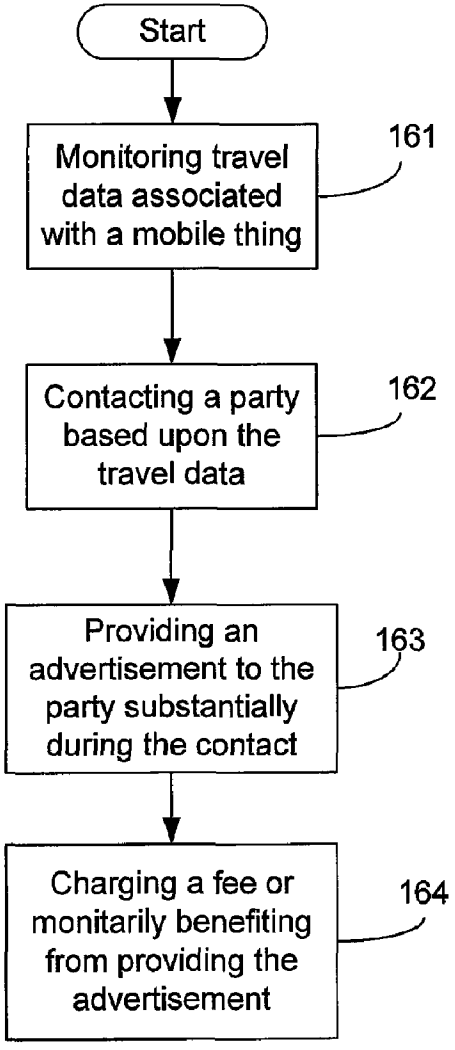

Start
Monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing
161
Contacting a party based upon the travel data
162
Providing an advertisement to the party substantially during the contact
163
Charging a fee or monitarily benefiting from providing the advertisement
164

FIG. 11

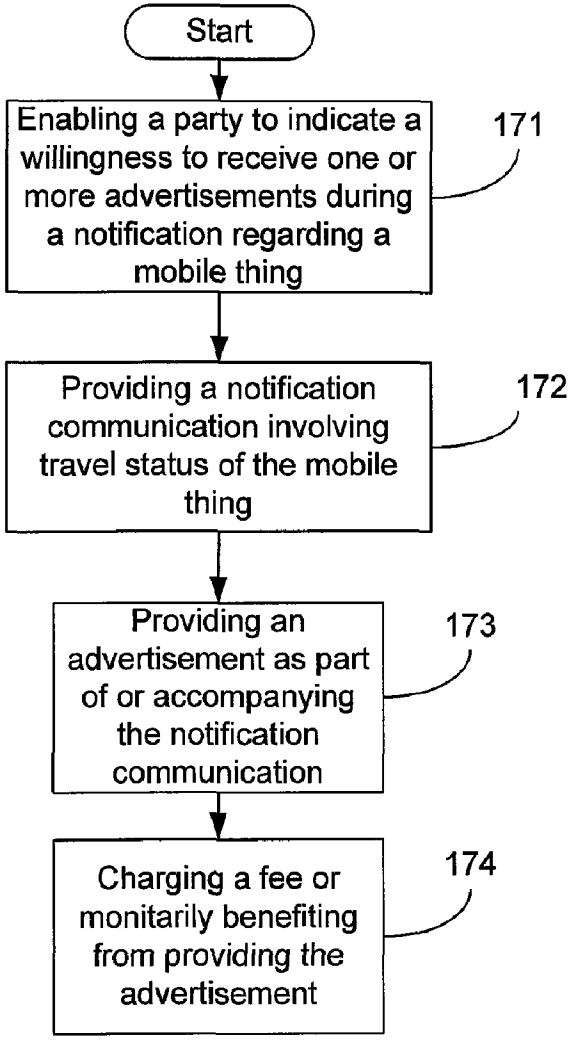

Start
Enabling a party to indicate a willingness to receive one or more advertisements during a notification regarding a mobile thing
171
Providing a notification communication involving travel status of the mobile thing
172
Providing an advertisement as part of or accompanying the notification communication
173
Charging a fee or monitarily benefiting from providing the advertisement
174

FIG. 12

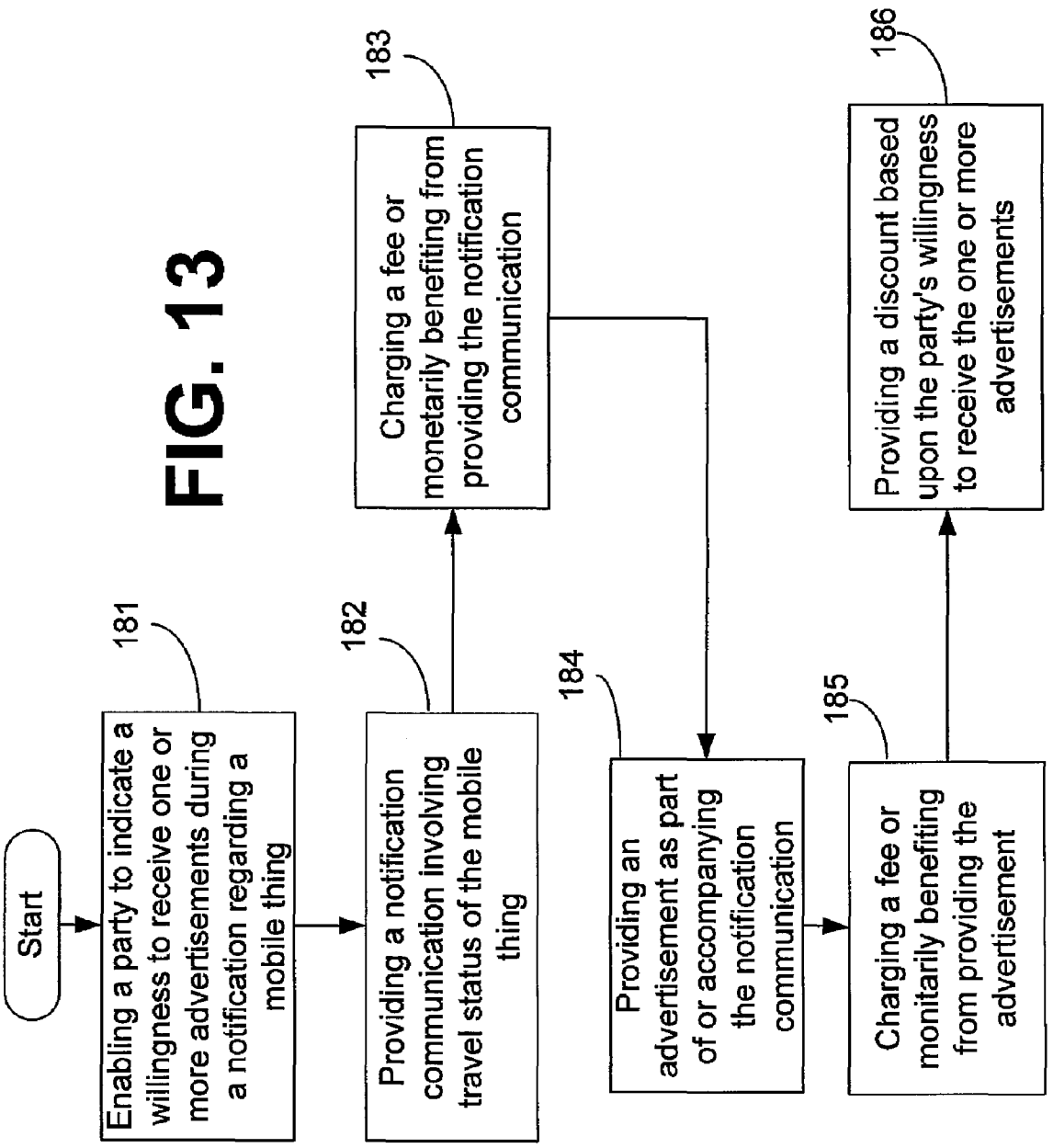

Start
Enabling a party to indicate a willingness to receive one or more advertisements during a notification regarding a mobile thing
181
Providing a notification communication involving travel status of the mobile thing
182
Charging a fee or monetarily benefiting from providing the notification communication
183
Providing an advertisement as part of or accompanying the notification communication
184
Charging a fee or monitarily benefiting from providing the advertisement
185
Providing a discount based upon the party's willingness to receive the one or more advertisements
186

FIG. 13

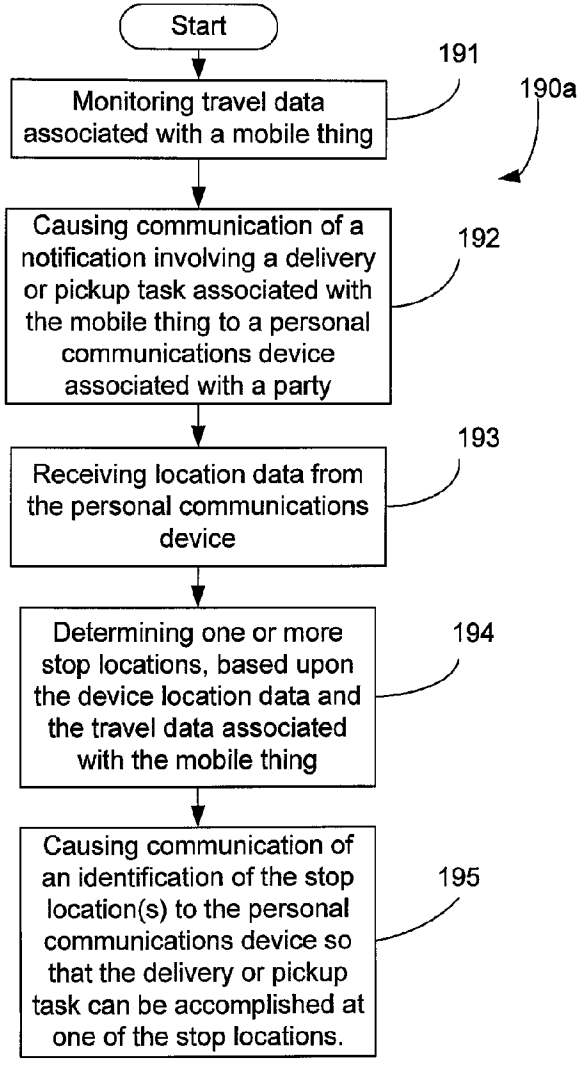


FIG. 14A

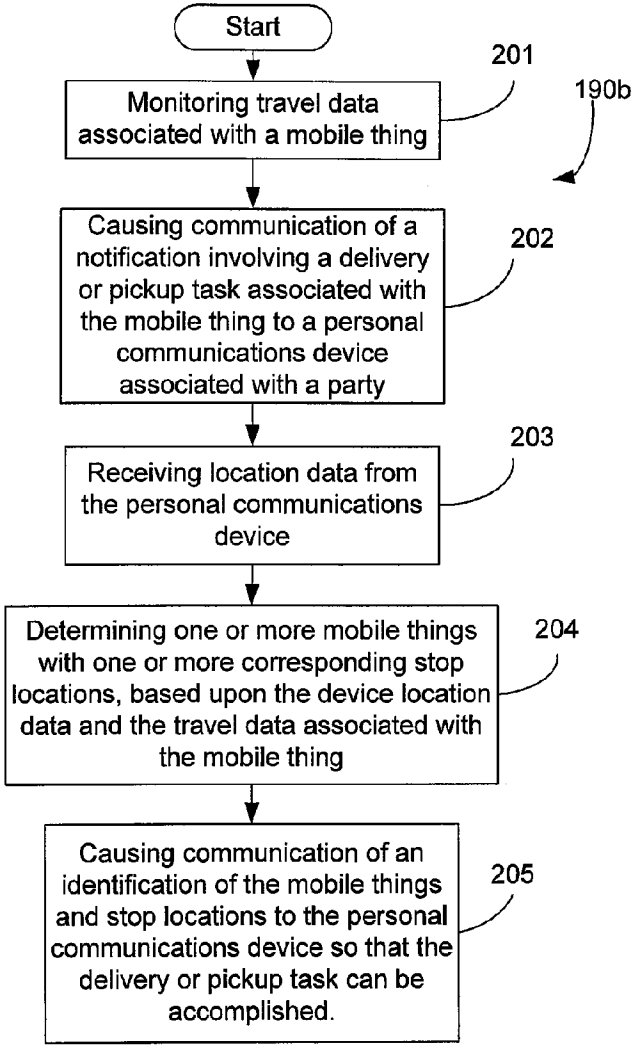


FIG. 14B

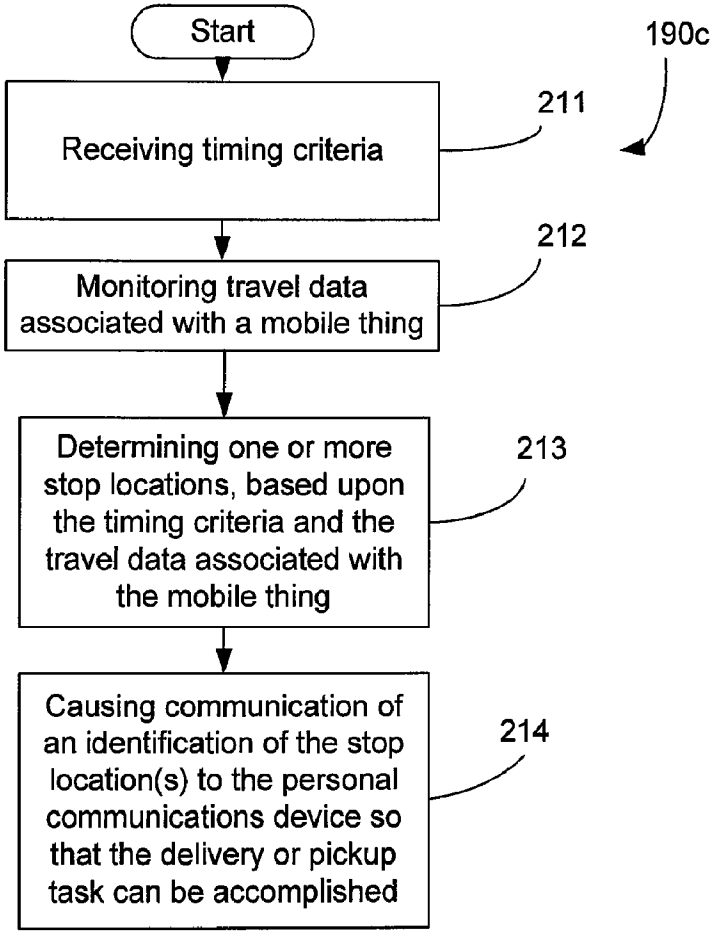


FIG. 15A

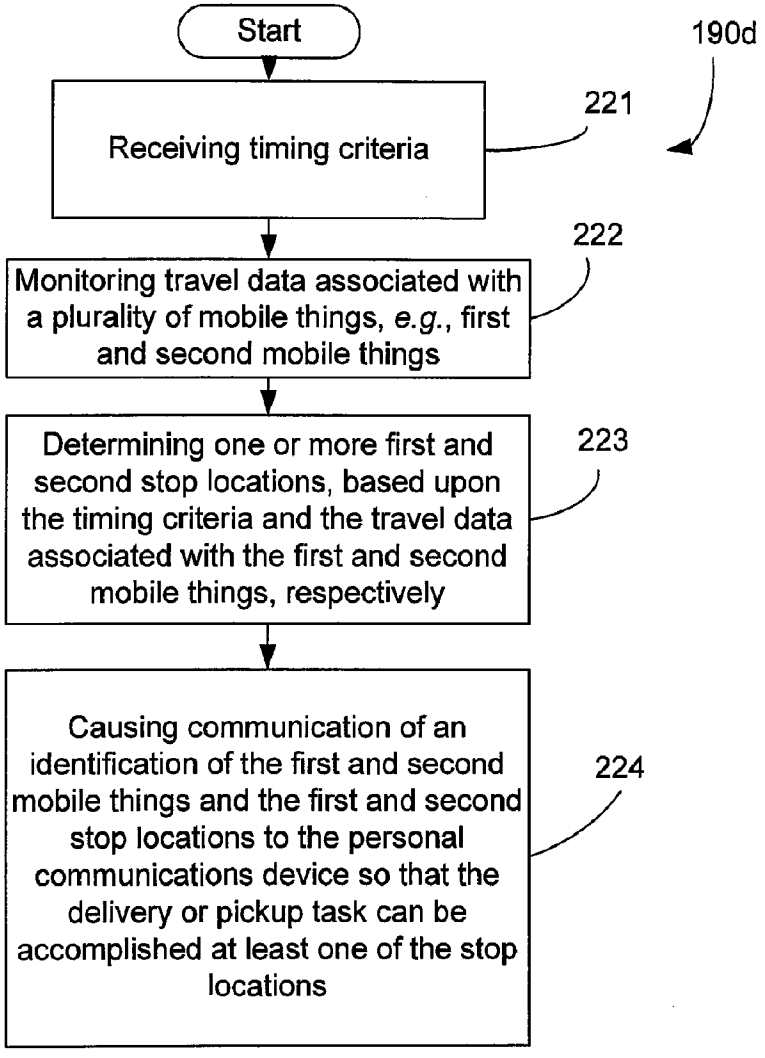


FIG. 15B

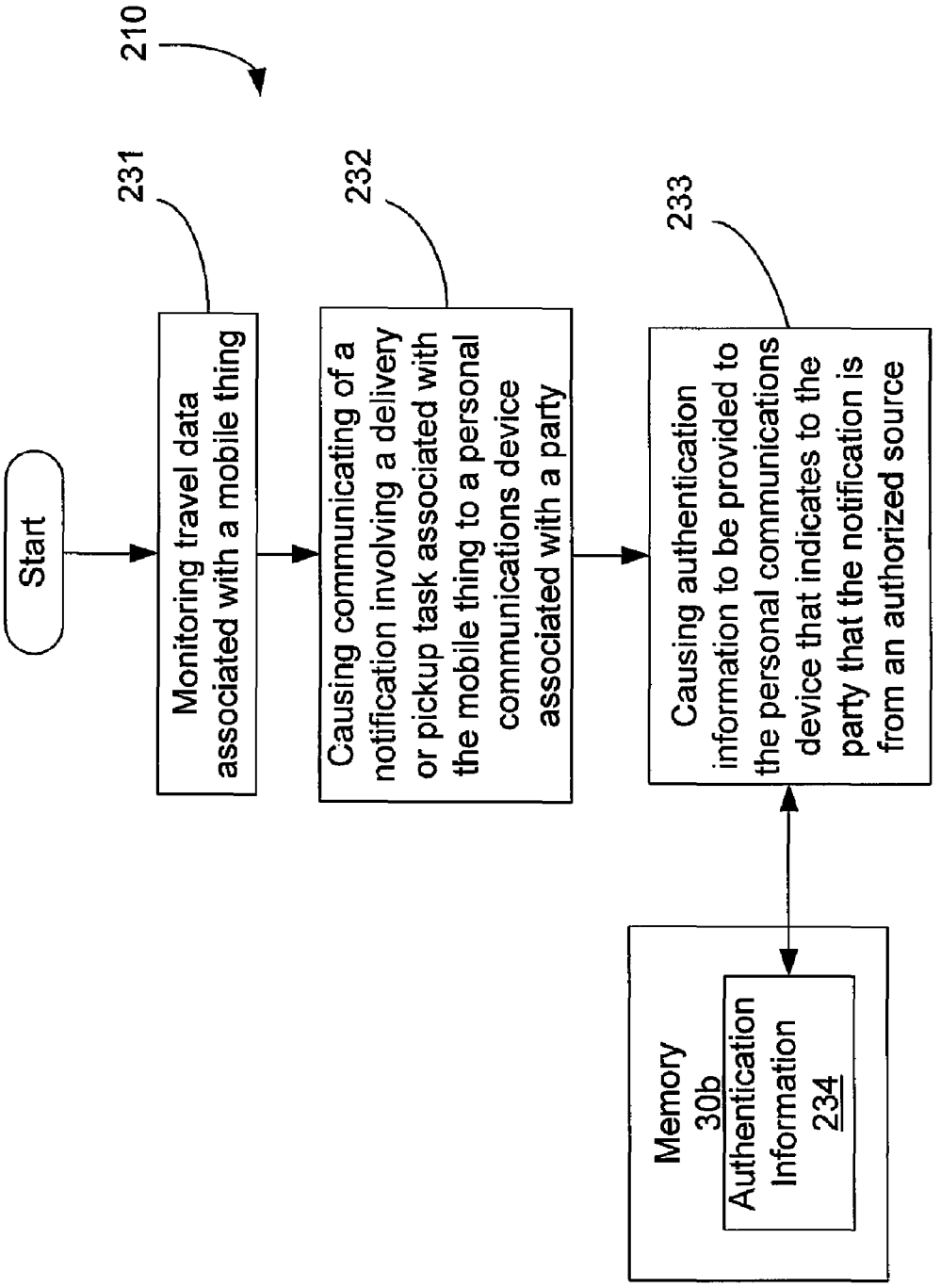

210
231
232
233
Start
Monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing
Causing communicating of a notification involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the mobile thing to a personal communications device associated with a party
Causing authentication information to be provided to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification is from an authorized source
Memory 30b
Authentication Information 234

FIG. 16

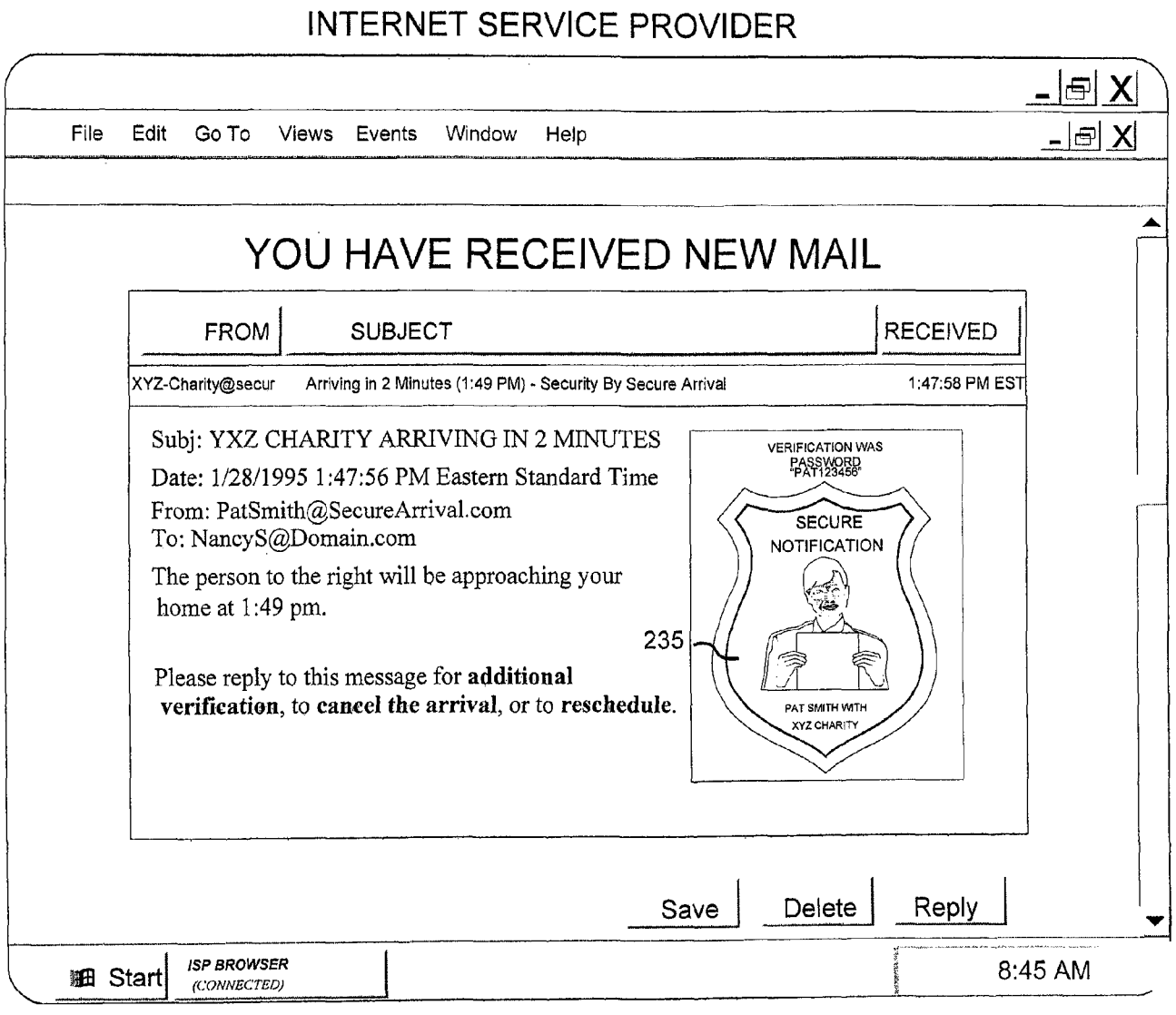

INTERNET SERVICE PROVIDER
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
YOU HAVE RECEIVED NEW MAIL
FROM
SUBJECT
RECEIVED
XYZ-Charity@secur
Arriving in 2 Minutes (1:49 PM) - Security By Secure Arrival
1:47:58 PM EST
Subj: YXZ CHARITY ARRIVING IN 2 MINUTES
Date: 1/28/1995 1:47:56 PM Eastern Standard Time
From: PatSmith@SecureArrival.com
To: NancyS@Domain.com
The person to the right will be approaching your home at 1:49 pm.
Please reply to this message for additional verification, to cancel the arrival, or to reschedule.
235
VERIFICATION WAS PASSWORD "PAT123456"
SECURE NOTIFICATION
PAT SMITH WITH XYZ CHARITY
Save
Delete
Reply
Start
ISP BROWSER (CONNECTED)
8:45 AM

FIG 16A

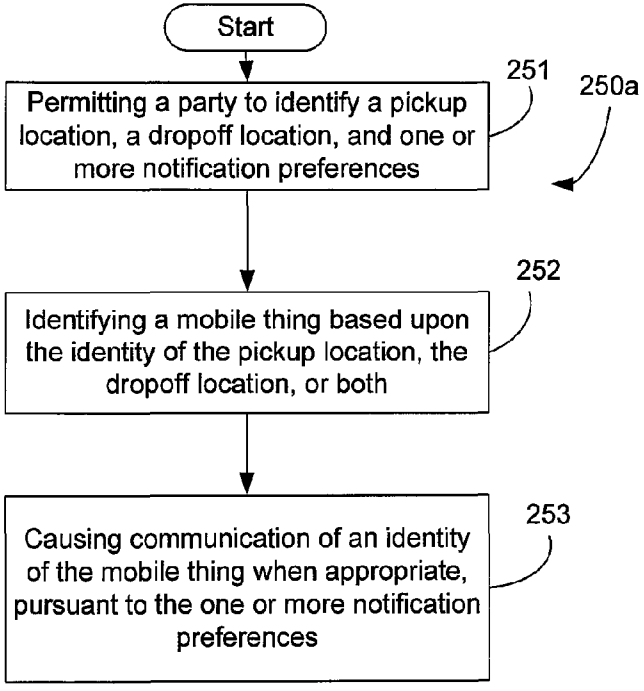


FIG. 17A

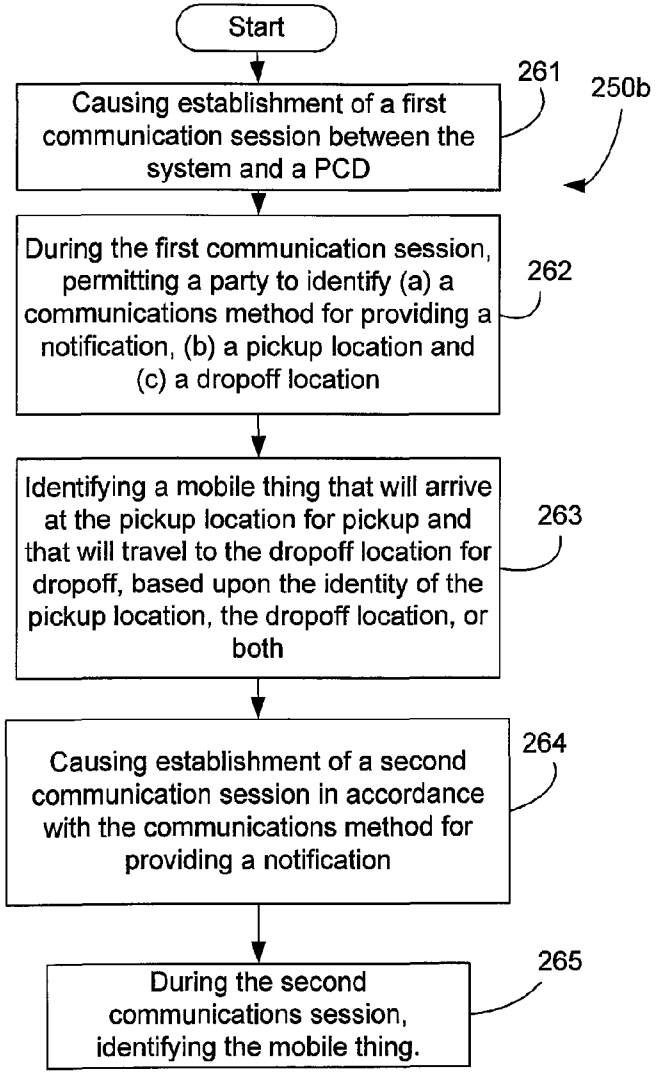


FIG. 17B

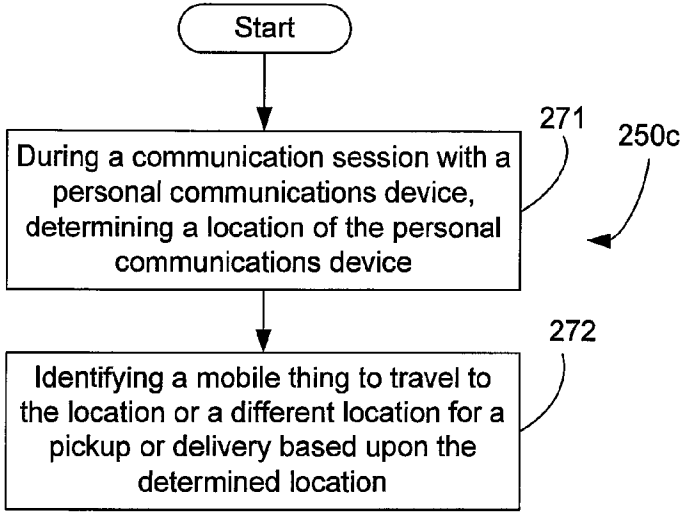


FIG. 17C

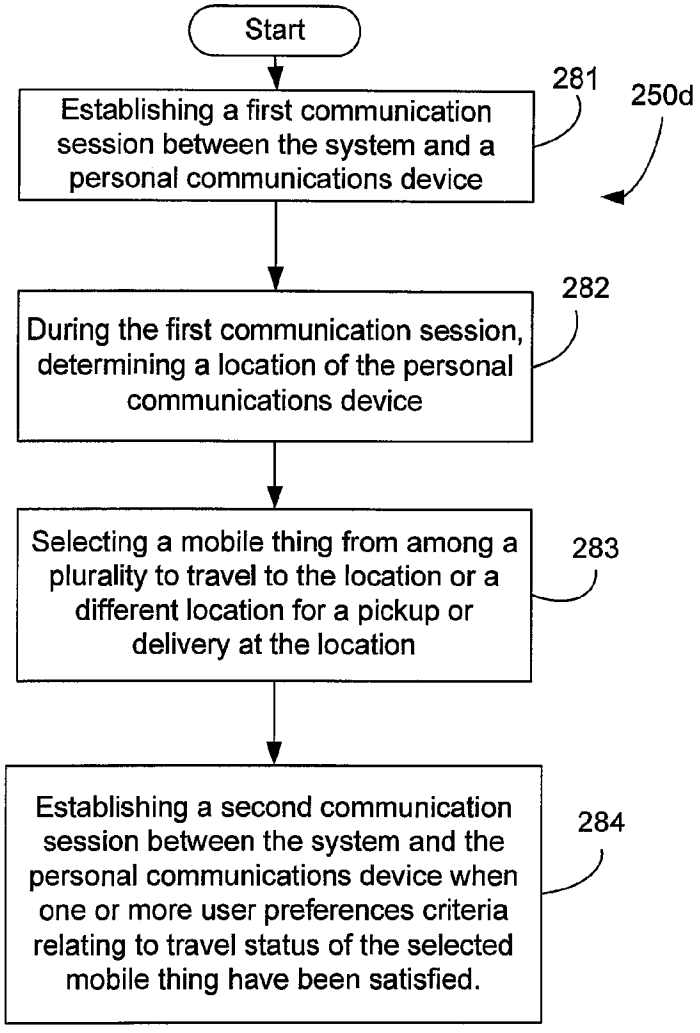


FIG. 17D

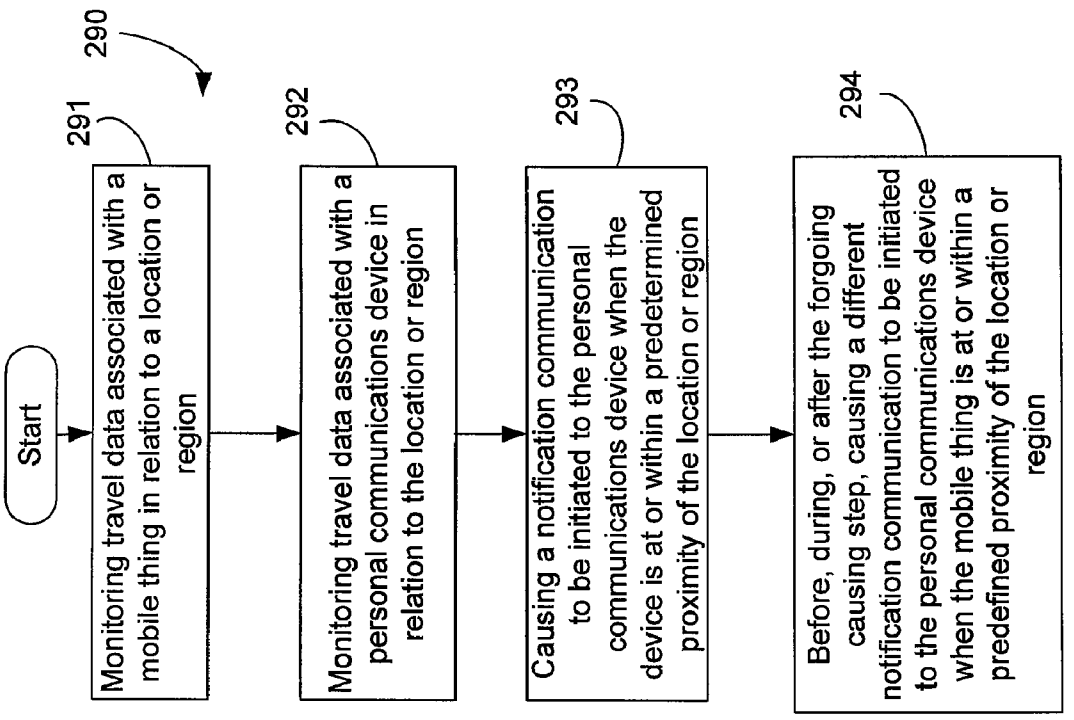

290
Start
291
Monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing in relation to a location or region
292
Monitoring travel data associated with a personal communications device in relation to the location or region
293
Causing a notification communication to be initiated to the personal communications device when the device is at or within a predetermined proximity of the location or region
294
Before, during, or after the forgoing causing step, causing a different notification communication to be initiated to the personal communications device when the mobile thing is at or within a predefined proximity of the location or region

FIG. 18

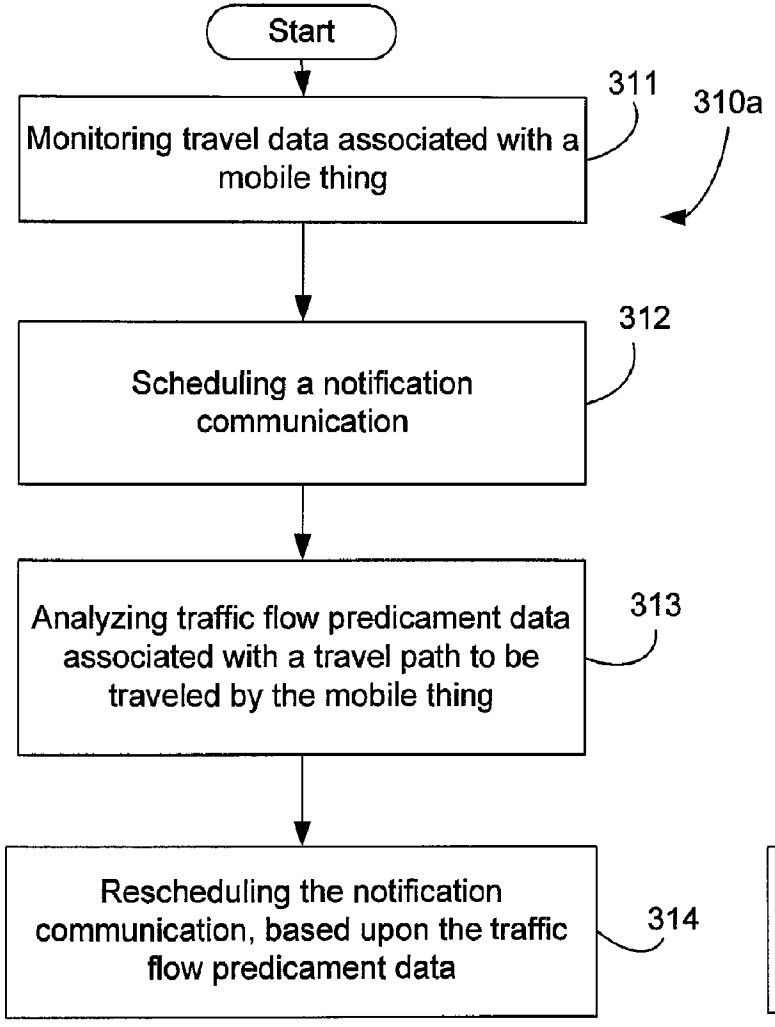


FIG. 19A

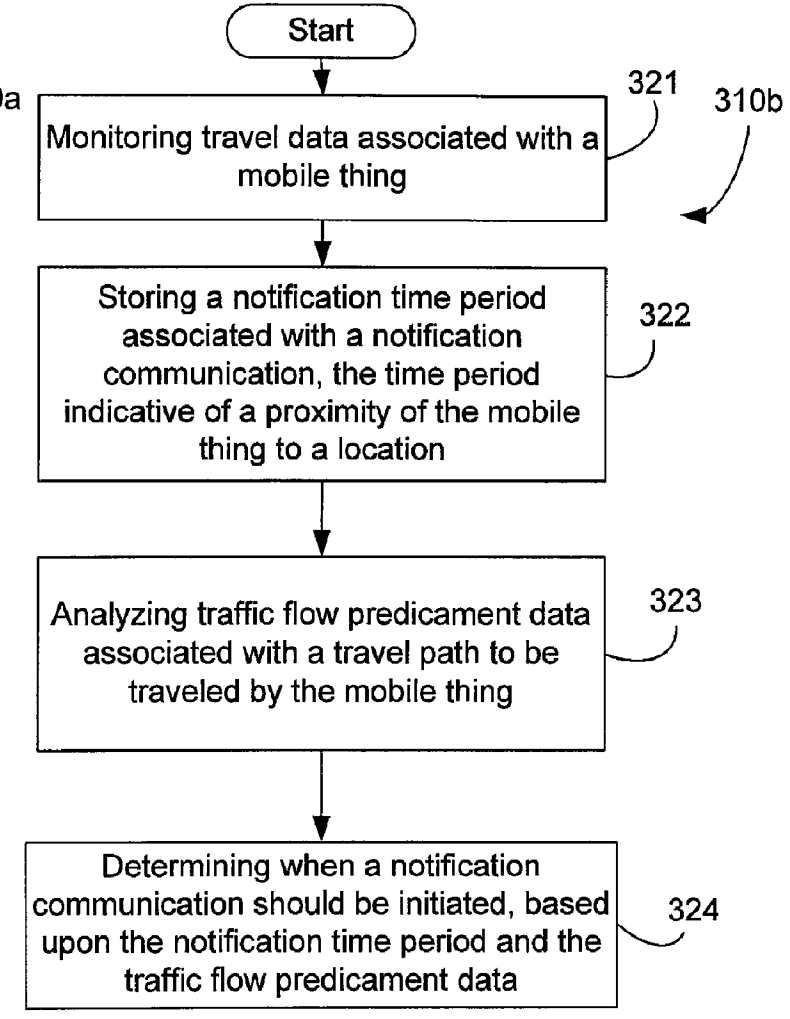


FIG. 19B

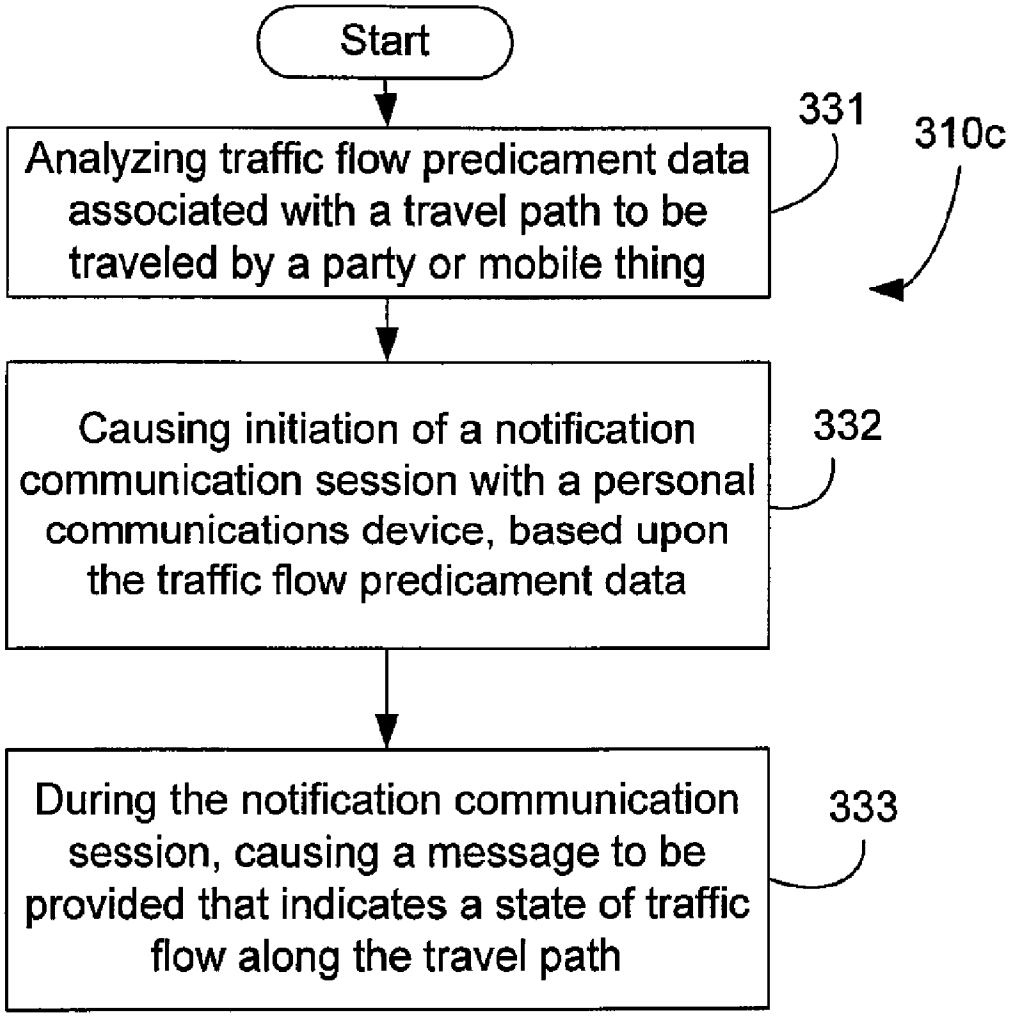

Start
Analyzing traffic flow predicament data associated with a travel path to be traveled by a party or mobile thing
331
310c
Causing initiation of a notification communication session with a personal communications device, based upon the traffic flow predicament data
332
During the notification communication session, causing a message to be provided that indicates a state of traffic flow along the travel path
333

FIG. 19C

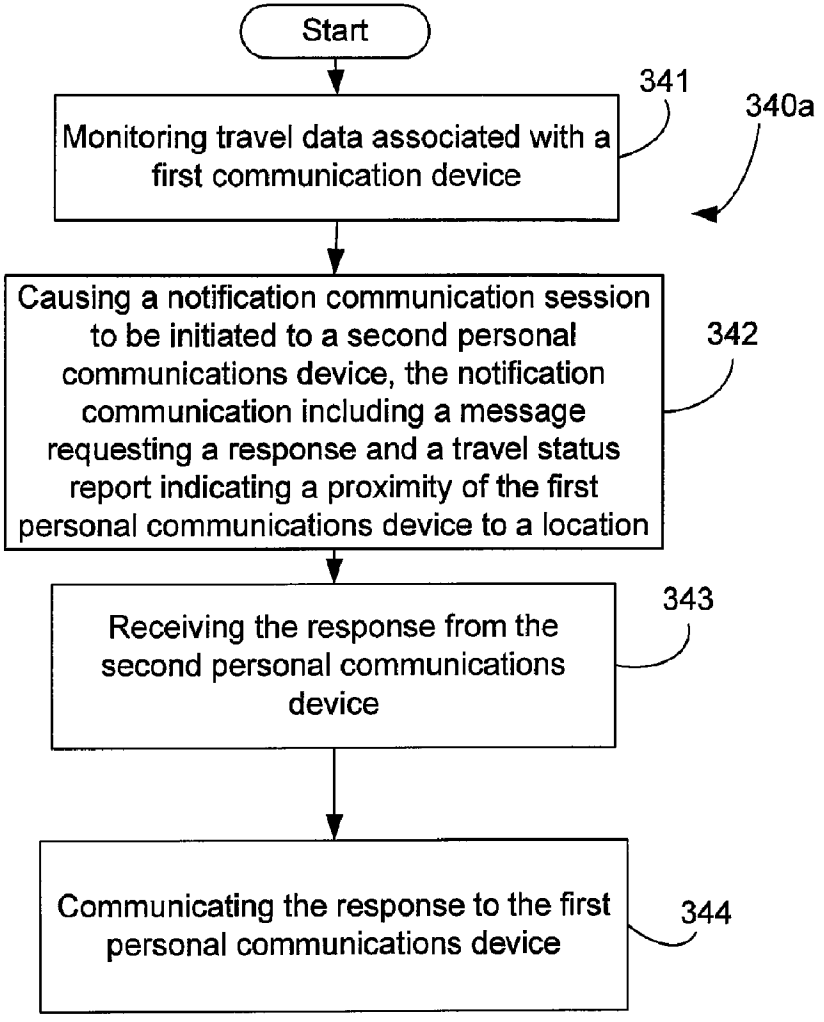


FIG. 20A

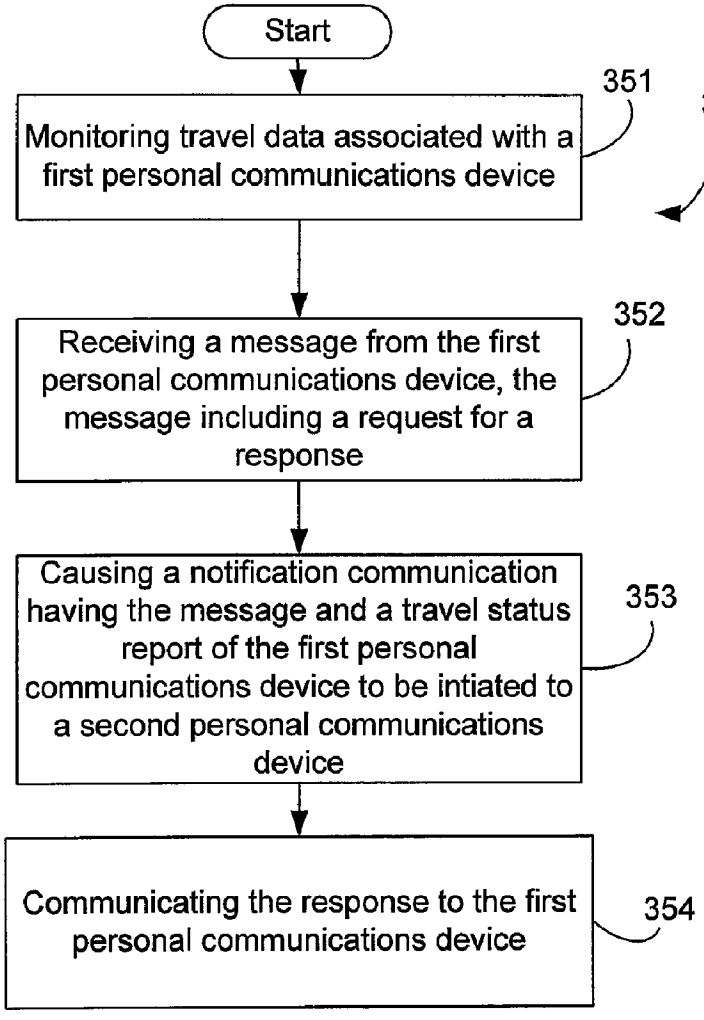


FIG. 20B

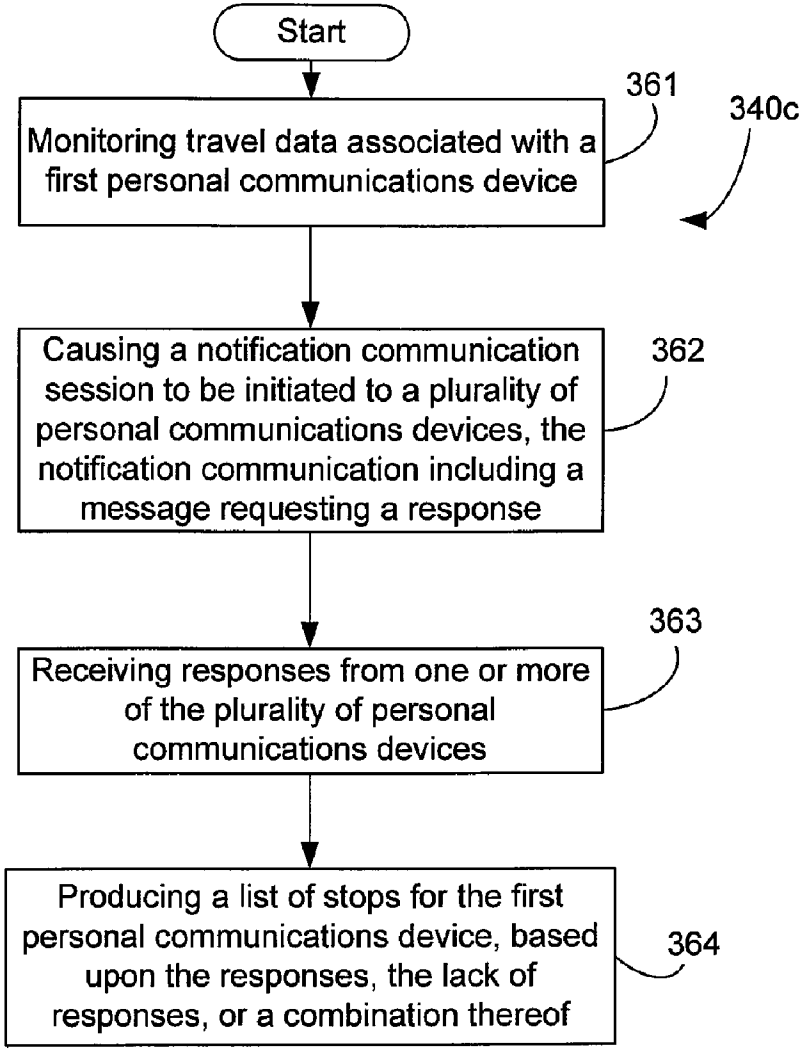

Start
Monitoring travel data associated with a first personal communications device
361
340c
Causing a notification communication session to be initiated to a plurality of personal communications devices, the notification communication including a message requesting a response
362
Receiving responses from one or more of the plurality of personal communications devices
363
Producing a list of stops for the first personal communications device, based upon the responses, the lack of responses, or a combination thereof
364

FIG. 20C

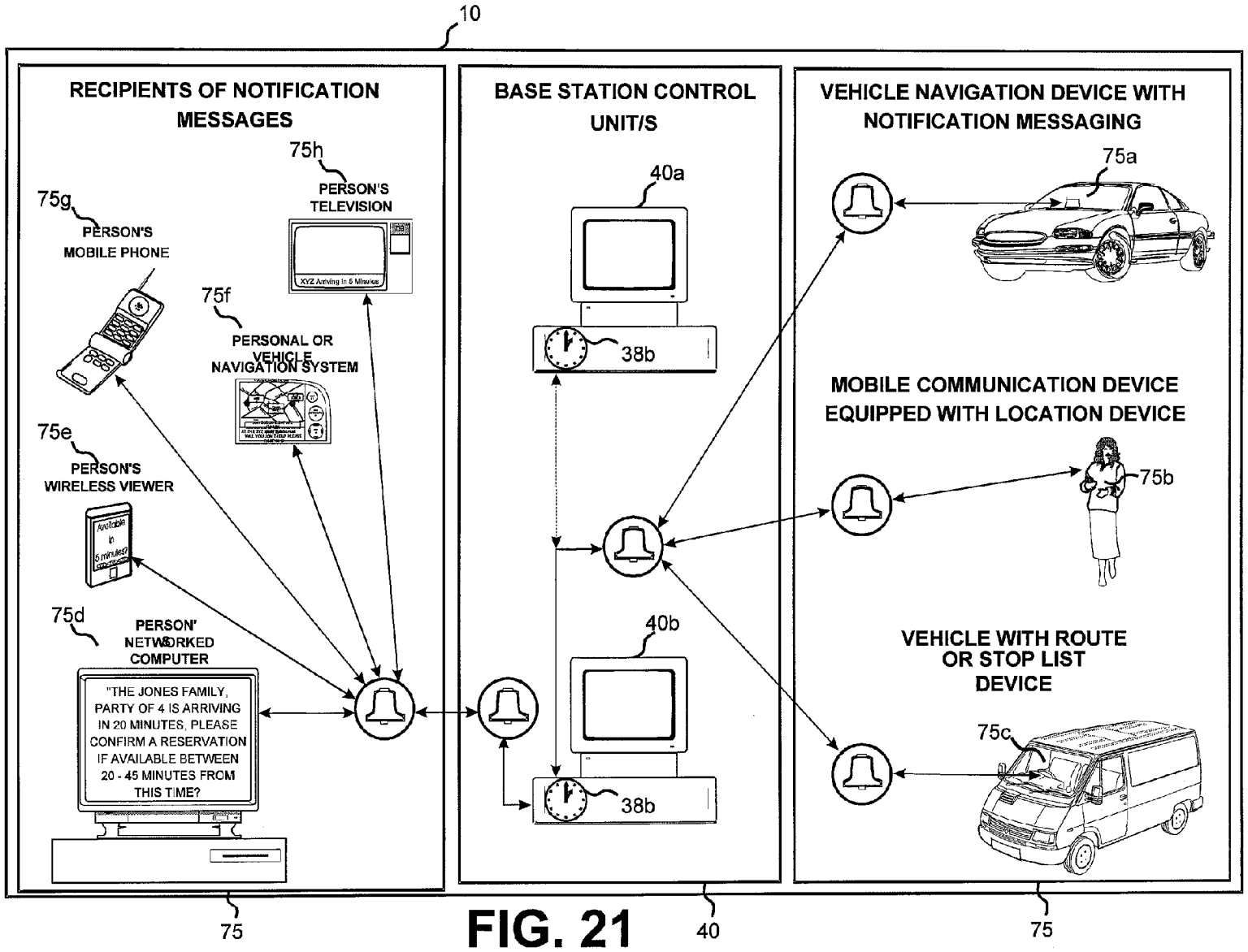

10
RECIPIENTS OF NOTIFICATION MESSAGES
75h
PERSON'S TELEVISION
XYZ Arriving In 5 Minutes
75g
PERSON'S MOBILE PHONE
75f
PERSONAL OR VEHICLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
75e
PERSON'S WIRELESS VIEWER
Available in 5 minutes?
75d
PERSON' NETWORKED COMPUTER
"THE JONES FAMILY, PARTY OF 4 IS ARRIVING IN 20 MINUTES, PLEASE CONFIRM A RESERVATION IF AVAILABLE BETWEEN 20 - 45 MINUTES FROM THIS TIME?
75
BASE STATION CONTROL UNIT/S
40a
38b
40b
38b
40
VEHICLE NAVIGATION DEVICE WITH NOTIFICATION MESSAGING
75a
MOBILE COMMUNICATION DEVICE EQUIPPED WITH LOCATION DEVICE
75b
VEHICLE WITH ROUTE OR STOP LIST DEVICE
75c
75

FIG. 21

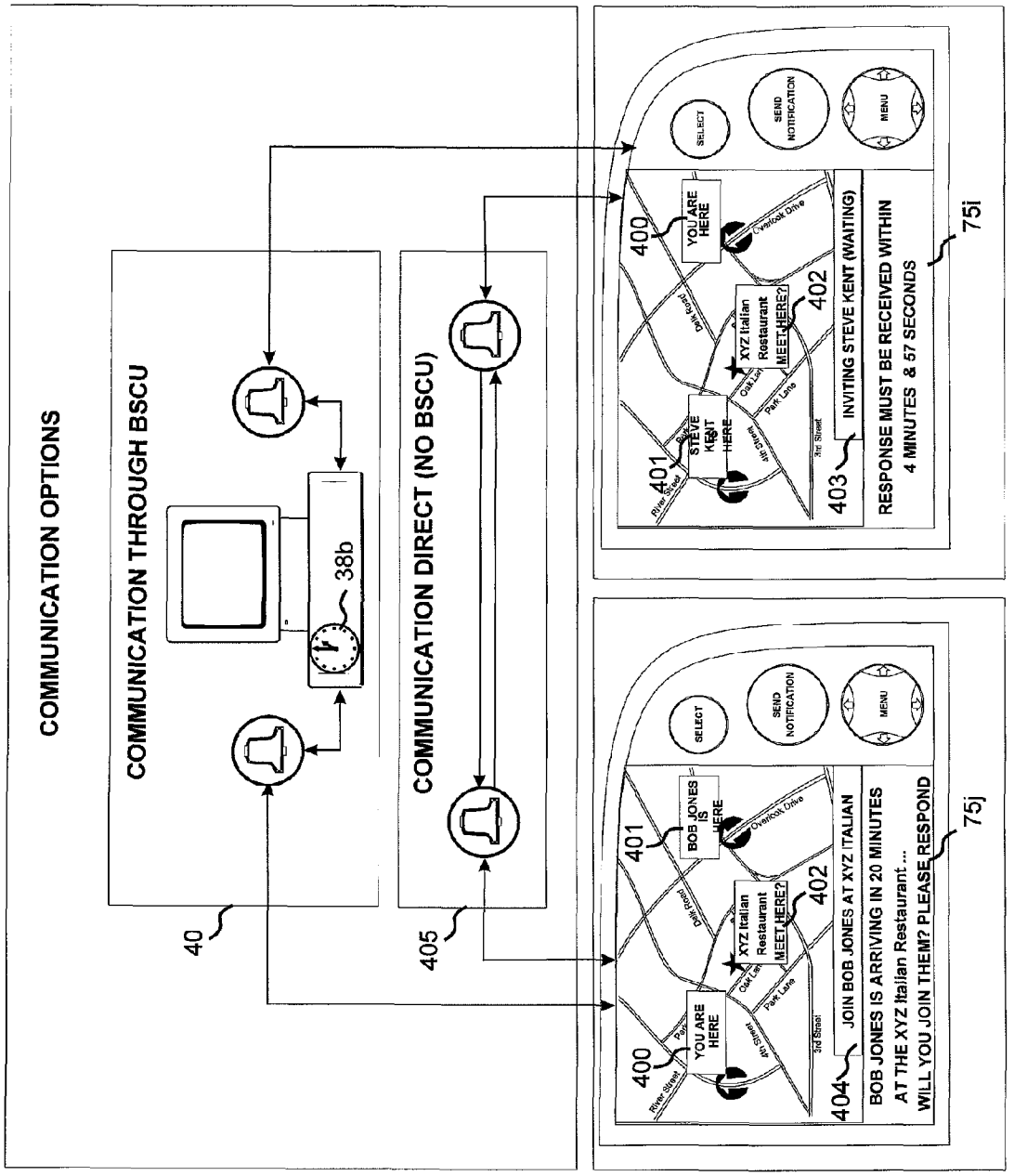

COMMUNICATION OPTIONS
COMMUNICATION THROUGH BSCU
38b
40
COMMUNICATION DIRECT (NO BSCU)
405
400
YOU ARE HERE
401
STEVE KENT HERE
402
XYZ Italian Restaurant MEET HERE?
403
INVITING STEVE KENT (WAITING)
RESPONSE MUST BE RECEIVED WITHIN 4 MINUTES & 57 SECONDS
75i
SELECT
SEND NOTIFICATION
MENU
400
YOU ARE HERE
401
BOB JONES IS HERE
402
XYZ Italian Restaurant MEET HERE?
404
JOIN BOB JONES AT XYZ ITALIAN
BOB JONES IS ARRIVING IN 20 MINUTES AT THE XYZ Italian Restaurant ...
WILL YOU JOIN THEM? PLEASE RESPOND
75j

FIG. 22

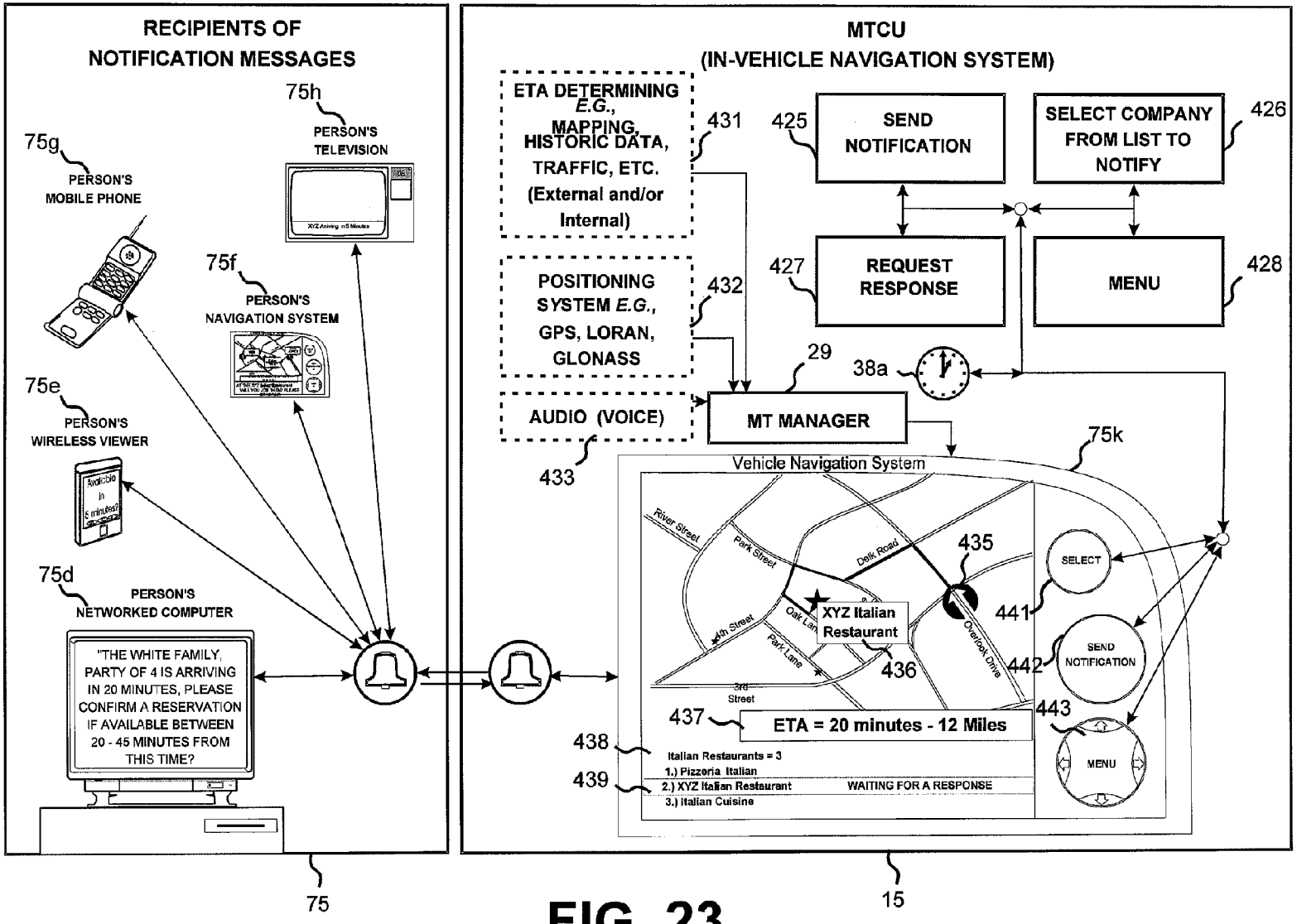

RECIPIENTS OF NOTIFICATION MESSAGES
75h
PERSON'S TELEVISION
75g
PERSON'S MOBILE PHONE
75f
PERSON'S NAVIGATION SYSTEM
75e
PERSON'S WIRELESS VIEWER
75d
PERSON'S NETWORKED COMPUTER
"THE WHITE FAMILY, PARTY OF 4 IS ARRIVING IN 20 MINUTES, PLEASE CONFIRM A RESERVATION IF AVAILABLE BETWEEN 20 - 45 MINUTES FROM THIS TIME?
75
MTCU (IN-VEHICLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM)
ETA DETERMINING E.G., MAPPING, HISTORIC DATA, TRAFFIC, ETC. (External and/or Internal)
431
425
SEND NOTIFICATION
SELECT COMPANY FROM LIST TO NOTIFY
426
POSITIONING SYSTEM E.G., GPS, LORAN, GLONASS
432
427
REQUEST RESPONSE
MENU
428
29
38a
AUDIO (VOICE)
MT MANAGER
433
75k
Vehicle Navigation System
River Street
Park Street
Delk Road
435
SELECT
441
XYZ Italian Restaurant
436
SEND NOTIFICATION
442
Overlook Drive
Oak Lane
Park Lane
4th Street
3rd Street
437
ETA = 20 minutes - 12 Miles
443
MENU
438
Italian Restaurants = 3
1.) Pizzeria Italian
439
2.) XYZ Italian Restaurant
WAITING FOR A RESPONSE
3.) Italian Cuisine
15

FIG. 23

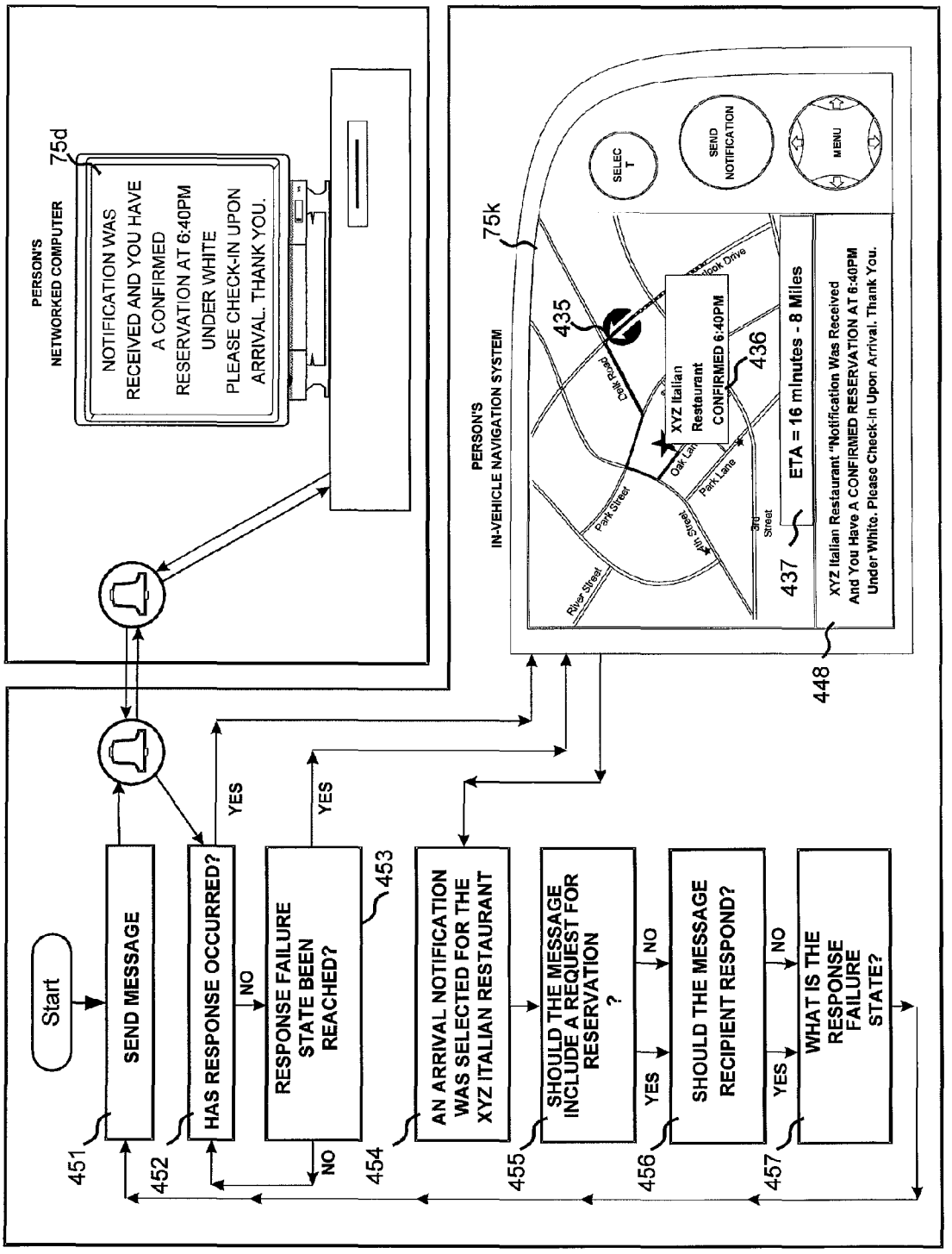

Start
SEND MESSAGE
HAS RESPONSE OCCURRED?
YES
NO
RESPONSE FAILURE STATE BEEN REACHED?
YES
NO
AN ARRIVAL NOTIFICATION WAS SELECTED FOR THE XYZ ITALIAN RESTAURANT
SHOULD THE MESSAGE INCLUDE A REQUEST FOR RESERVATION ?
YES
NO
SHOULD THE MESSAGE RECIPIENT RESPOND?
YES
NO
WHAT IS THE RESPONSE FAILURE STATE?
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
PERSON'S NETWORKED COMPUTER
75d
NOTIFICATION WAS RECEIVED AND YOU HAVE A CONFIRMED RESERVATION AT 6:40PM UNDER WHITE PLEASE CHECK-IN UPON ARRIVAL. THANK YOU.
PERSON'S IN-VEHICLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
75k
SELECT
SEND NOTIFICATION
MENU
435
436
437
448
XYZ Italian Restaurant
CONFIRMED 6:40PM
ETA = 16 minutes - 8 Miles
XYZ Italian Restaurant "Notification Was Received And You Have A CONFIRMED RESERVATION AT 6:40PM Under White. Please Check-in Upon Arrival. Thank You.
Park Street
Park Lane
3rd Street
River Street

FIG. 24

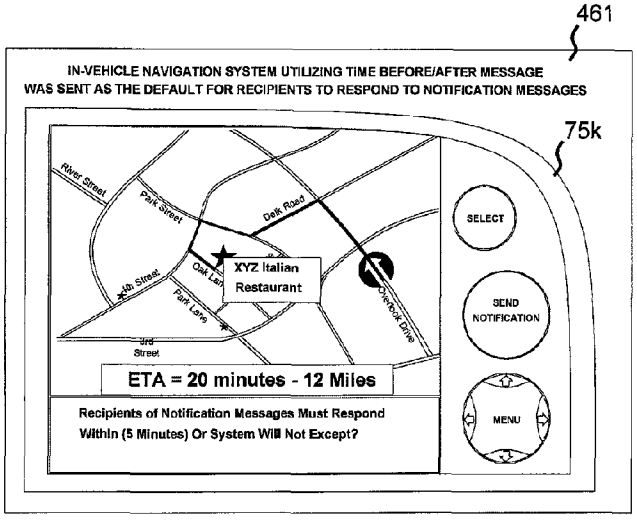


FIG. 25A

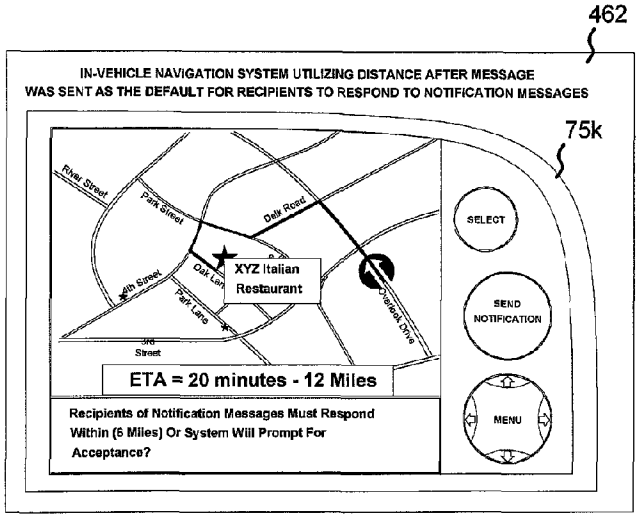


FIG. 25B

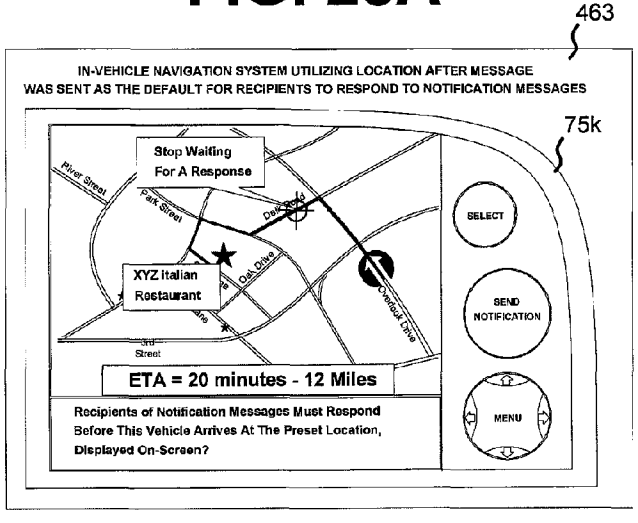


FIG. 25C

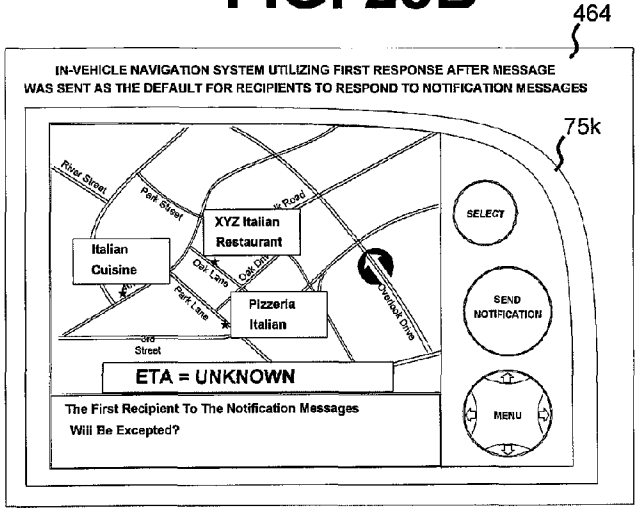


FIG. 25D

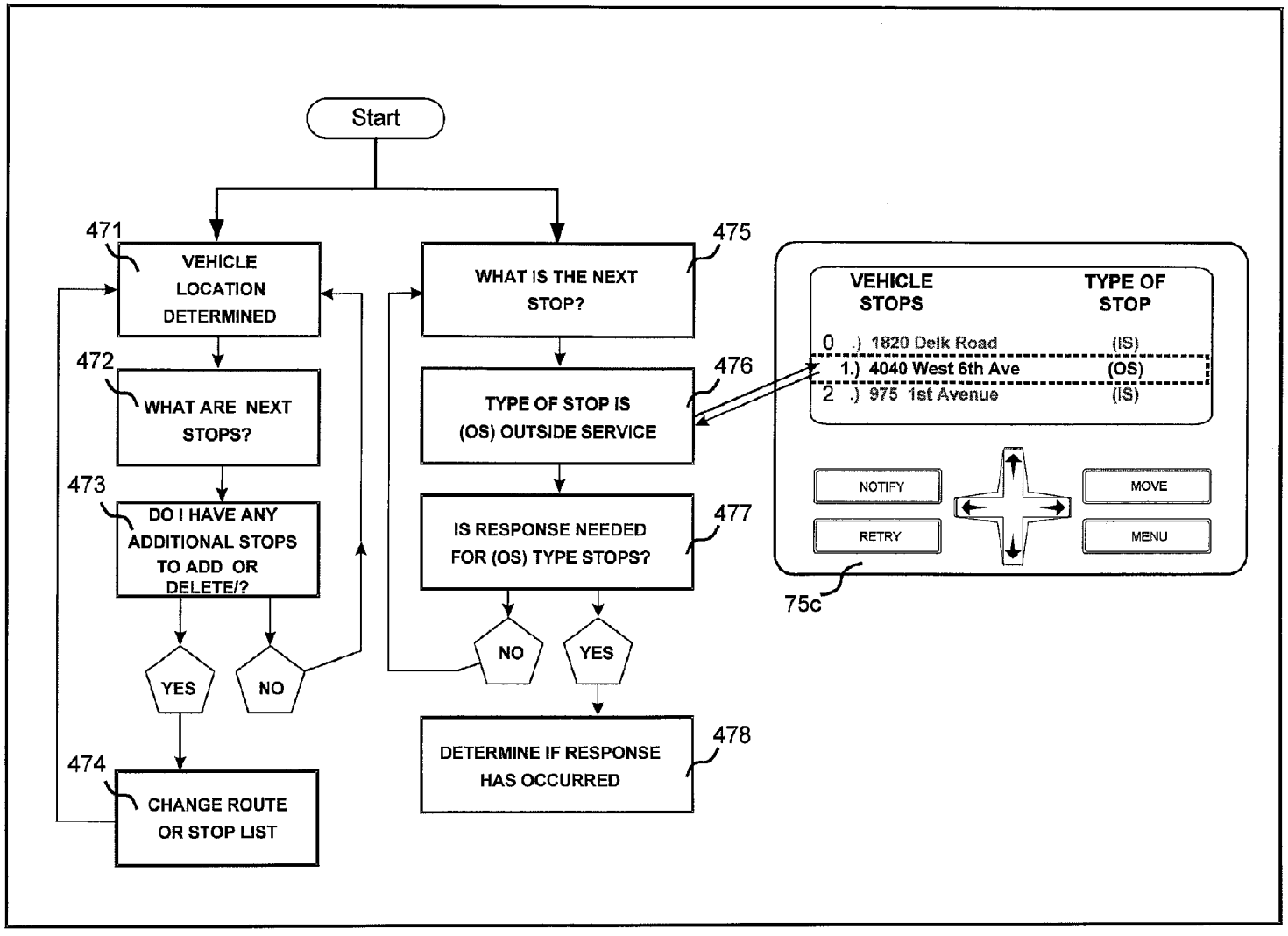

Start
471
VEHICLE LOCATION DETERMINED
472
WHAT ARE NEXT STOPS?
473
DO I HAVE ANY ADDITIONAL STOPS TO ADD OR DELETE/?
YES
NO
474
CHANGE ROUTE OR STOP LIST
475
WHAT IS THE NEXT STOP?
476
TYPE OF STOP IS (OS) OUTSIDE SERVICE
477
IS RESPONSE NEEDED FOR (OS) TYPE STOPS?
NO
YES
478
DETERMINE IF RESPONSE HAS OCCURRED
VEHICLE STOPS
TYPE OF STOP
0 .) 1820 Delk Road (IS)
1.) 4040 West 6th Ave (OS)
2 .) 975 1st Avenue (IS)
NOTIFY
MOVE
RETRY
MENU
75c

FIG. 26

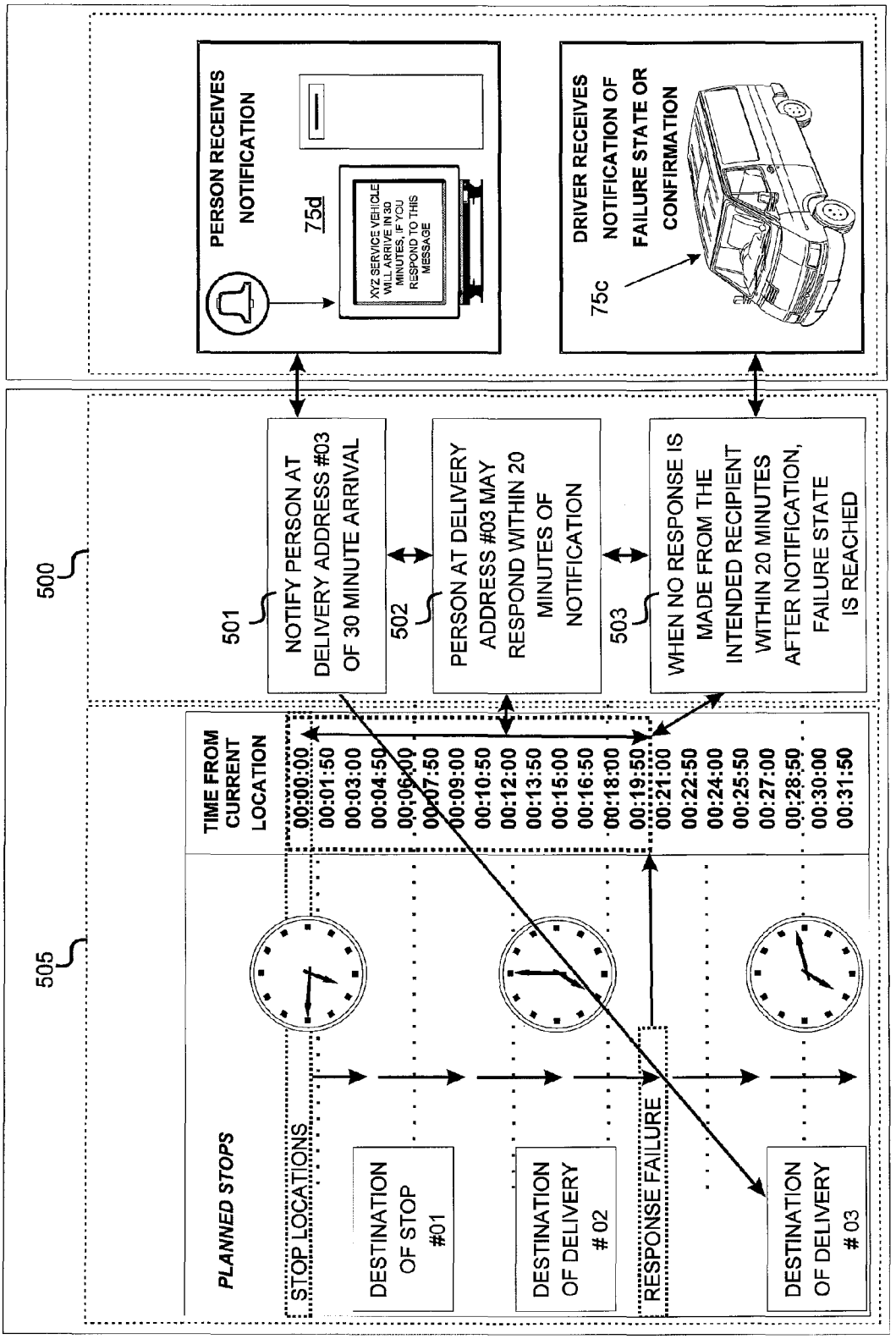

505
500
PLANNED STOPS
STOP LOCATIONS
TIME FROM CURRENT LOCATION
00:00:00
00:01:50
00:03:00
00:04:50
00:06:00
00:07:50
00:09:00
00:10:50
00:12:00
00:13:50
00:15:00
00:16:50
00:18:00
00:19:50
00:21:00
00:22:50
00:24:00
00:25:50
00:27:00
00:28:50
00:30:00
00:31:50
DESTINATION OF STOP #01
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 02
RESPONSE FAILURE
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 03
501
NOTIFY PERSON AT DELIVERY ADDRESS #03 OF 30 MINUTE ARRIVAL
502
PERSON AT DELIVERY ADDRESS #03 MAY RESPOND WITHIN 20 MINUTES OF NOTIFICATION
503
WHEN NO RESPONSE IS MADE FROM THE INTENDED RECIPIENT WITHIN 20 MINUTES AFTER NOTIFICATION, FAILURE STATE IS REACHED
PERSON RECEIVES NOTIFICATION
75d
XYZ SERVICE VEHICLE WILL ARRIVE IN 30 MINUTES, IF YOU RESPOND TO THIS MESSAGE
DRIVER RECEIVES NOTIFICATION OF FAILURE STATE OR CONFIRMATION
75c

FIG. 27

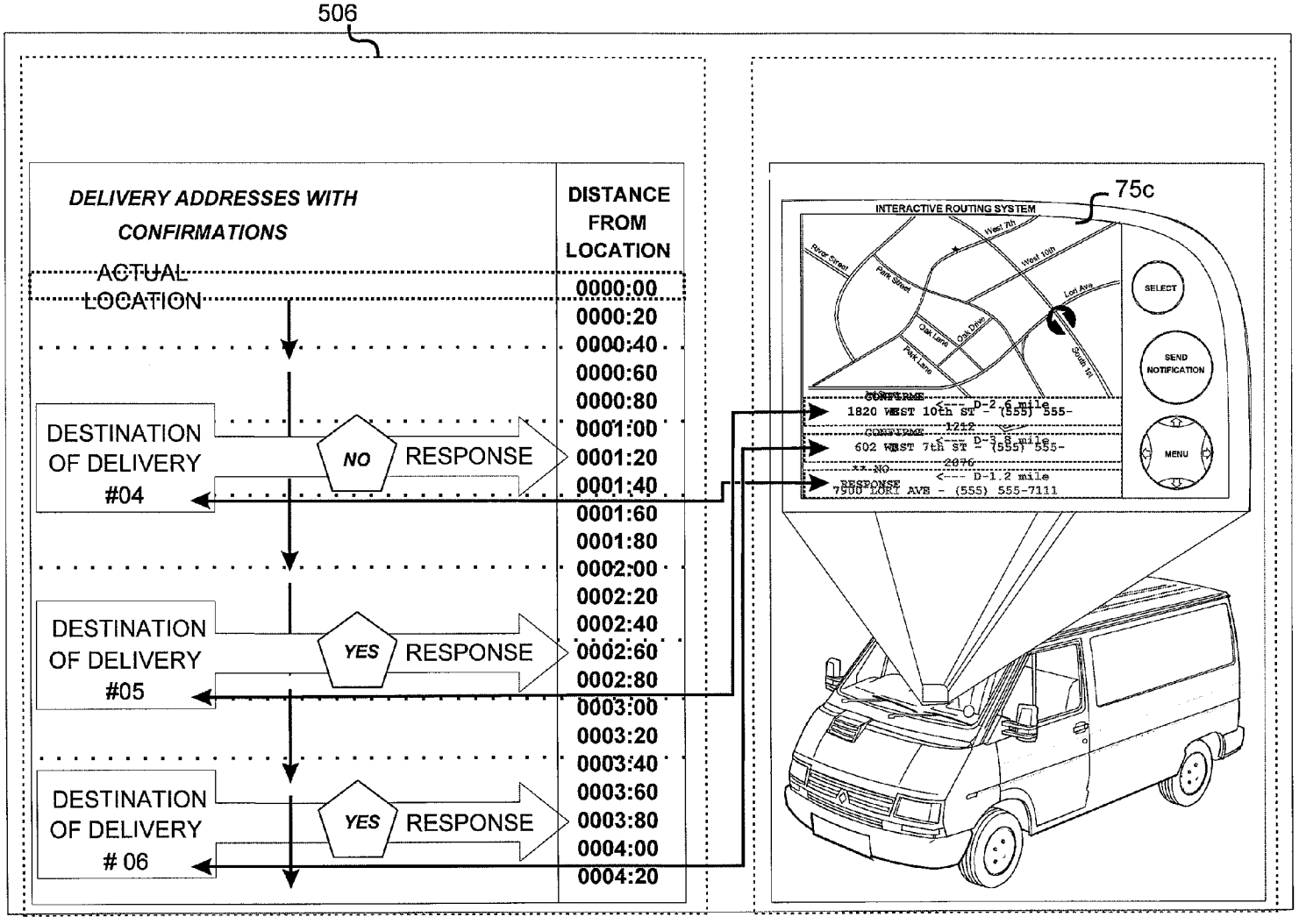

506
DELIVERY ADDRESSES WITH CONFIRMATIONS
DISTANCE FROM LOCATION
ACTUAL LOCATION
0000:00
0000:20
0000:40
0000:60
0000:80
0001:00
0001:20
0001:40
0001:60
0001:80
0002:00
0002:20
0002:40
0002:60
0002:80
0003:00
0003:20
0003:40
0003:60
0003:80
0004:00
0004:20
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY #04
NO
RESPONSE
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY #05
YES
RESPONSE
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 06
YES
RESPONSE
75c
INTERACTIVE ROUTING SYSTEM
SELECT
SEND NOTIFICATION
MENU
1820 WEST 10th ST - (555) 555-1212
602 WEST 7th ST - (555) 555-2076
7500 LORT AVE - (555) 555-7111

FIG. 28

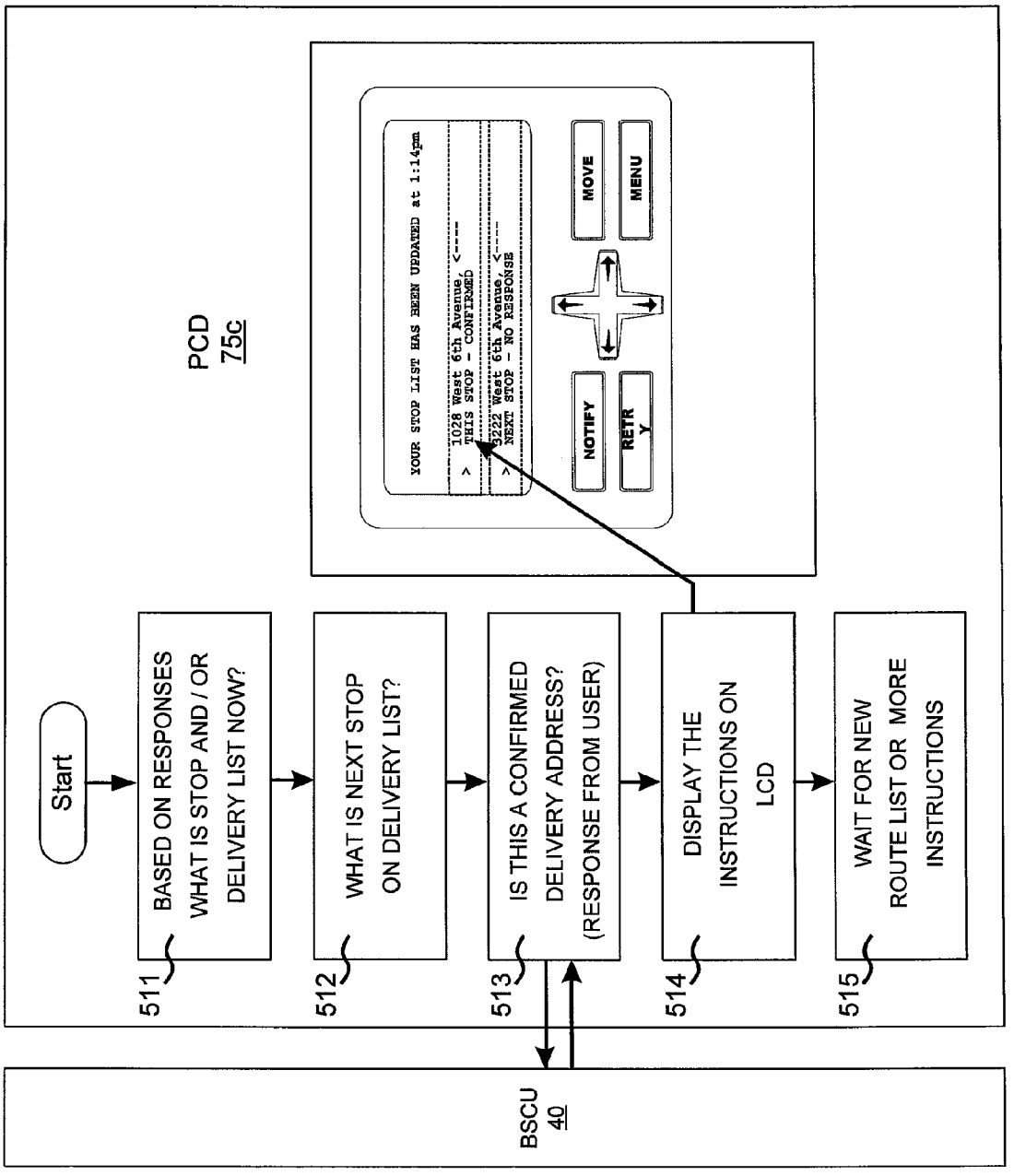

Start
BASED ON RESPONSES WHAT IS STOP AND / OR DELIVERY LIST NOW?
WHAT IS NEXT STOP ON DELIVERY LIST?
IS THIS A CONFIRMED DELIVERY ADDRESS? (RESPONSE FROM USER)
DISPLAY THE INSTRUCTIONS ON LCD
WAIT FOR NEW ROUTE LIST OR MORE INSTRUCTIONS
511
512
513
514
515
PCD
75c
BSCU
40
YOUR STOP LIST HAS BEEN UPDATED at 1:14pm
1028 West 6th Avenue, <----
THIS STOP - CONFIRMED
5222 West 6th Avenue, <----
NEXT STOP - NO RESPONSE
MOVE
MENU
NOTIFY
RETR Y

FIG. 29

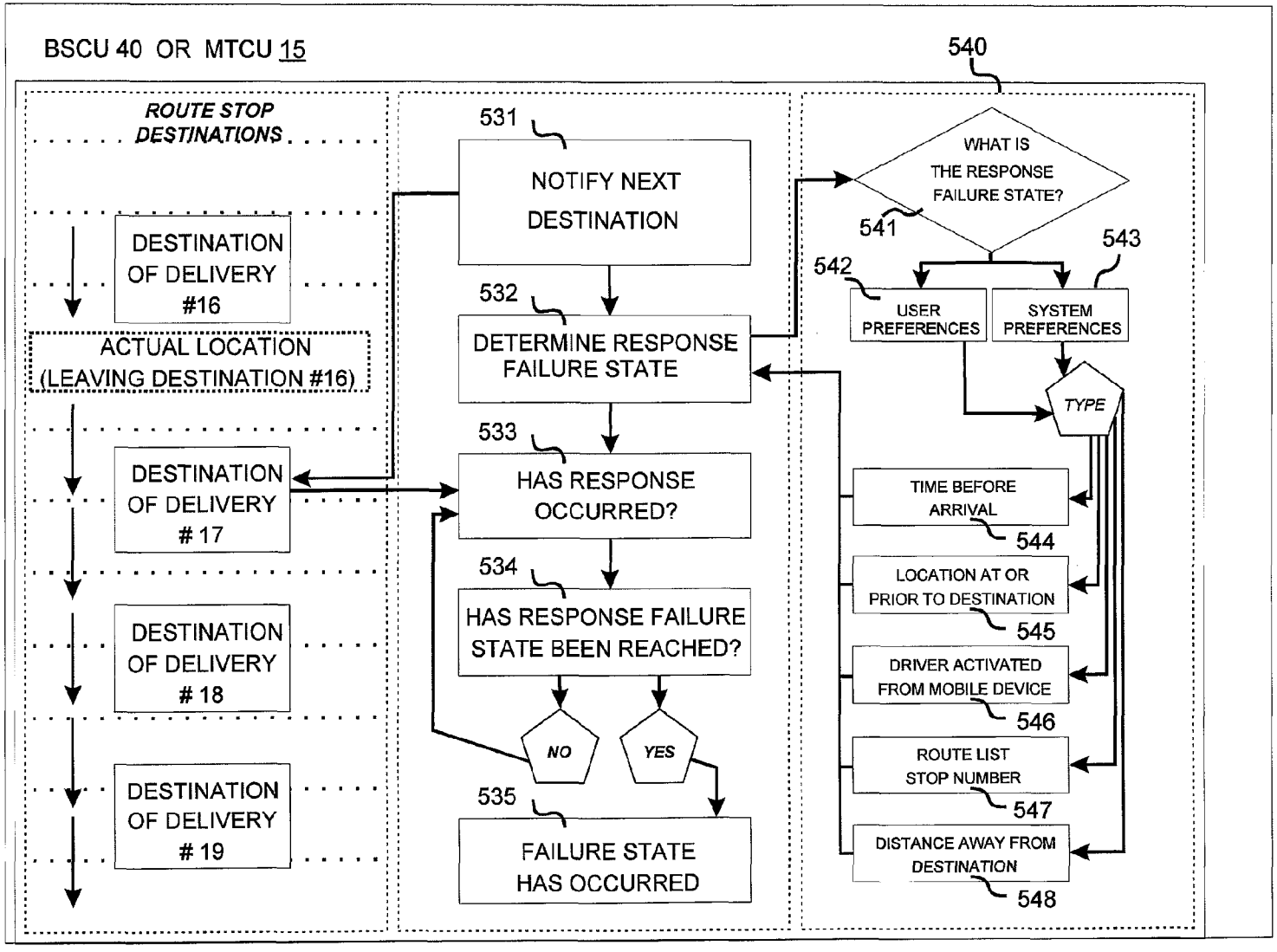

BSCU 40 OR MTCU 15
ROUTE STOP DESTINATIONS
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY #16
ACTUAL LOCATION (LEAVING DESTINATION #16)
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 17
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 18
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 19
531
NOTIFY NEXT DESTINATION
532
DETERMINE RESPONSE FAILURE STATE
533
HAS RESPONSE OCCURRED?
534
HAS RESPONSE FAILURE STATE BEEN REACHED?
NO
YES
535
FAILURE STATE HAS OCCURRED
540
WHAT IS THE RESPONSE FAILURE STATE?
541
542
543
USER PREFERENCES
SYSTEM PREFERENCES
TYPE
TIME BEFORE ARRIVAL
544
LOCATION AT OR PRIOR TO DESTINATION
545
DRIVER ACTIVATED FROM MOBILE DEVICE
546
ROUTE LIST STOP NUMBER
547
DISTANCE AWAY FROM DESTINATION
548

FIG. 30

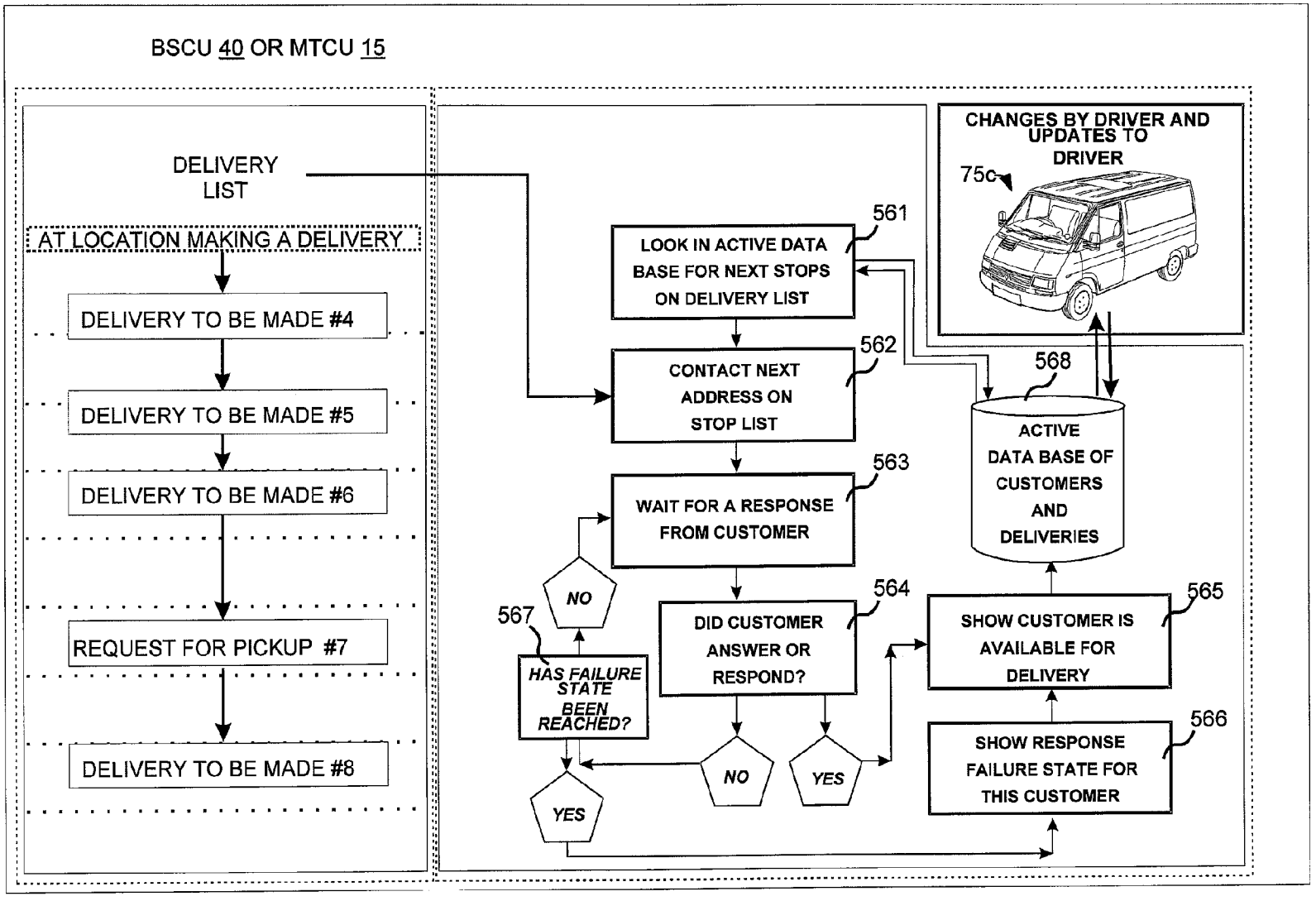

BSCU 40 OR MTCU 15
DELIVERY LIST
AT LOCATION MAKING A DELIVERY
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #4
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #5
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #6
REQUEST FOR PICKUP #7
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #8
CHANGES BY DRIVER AND UPDATES TO DRIVER
75c
561
LOOK IN ACTIVE DATA BASE FOR NEXT STOPS ON DELIVERY LIST
562
CONTACT NEXT ADDRESS ON STOP LIST
563
WAIT FOR A RESPONSE FROM CUSTOMER
564
DID CUSTOMER ANSWER OR RESPOND?
NO
YES
567
HAS FAILURE STATE BEEN REACHED?
NO
YES
568
ACTIVE DATA BASE OF CUSTOMERS AND DELIVERIES
565
SHOW CUSTOMER IS AVAILABLE FOR DELIVERY
566
SHOW RESPONSE FAILURE STATE FOR THIS CUSTOMER

FIG. 31

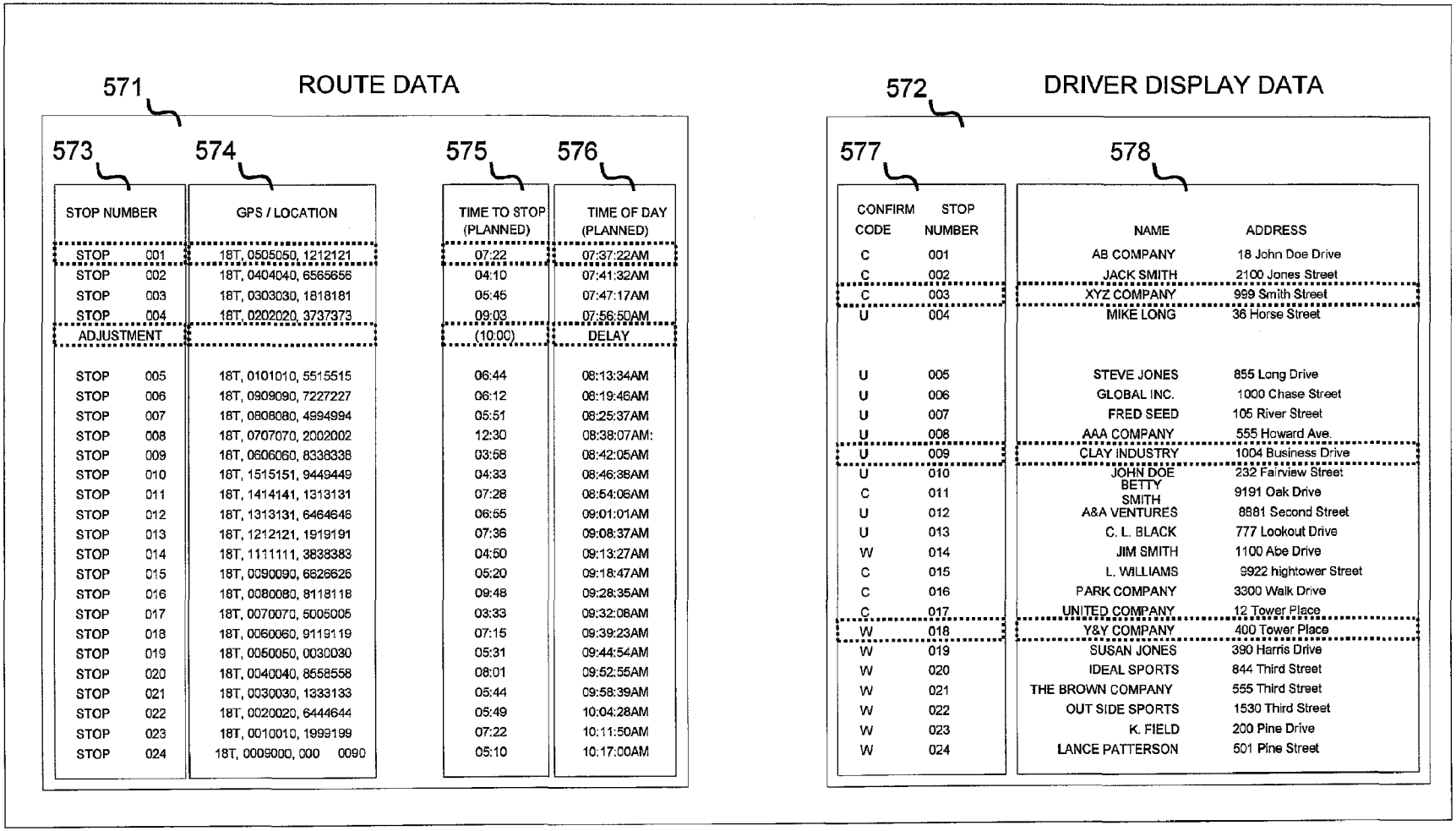

571
ROUTE DATA
573
574
575
576
STOP NUMBER
GPS / LOCATION
TIME TO STOP (PLANNED)
TIME OF DAY (PLANNED)
STOP 001 18T, 0505050, 1212121 07:22 07:37:22AM
STOP 002 18T, 0404040, 6565656 04:10 07:41:32AM
STOP 003 18T, 0303030, 1818181 05:45 07:47:17AM
STOP 004 18T, 0202020, 3737373 09:03 07:56:50AM
ADJUSTMENT (10:00) DELAY
STOP 005 18T, 0101010, 5515515 06:44 08:13:34AM
STOP 006 18T, 0909090, 7227227 06:12 08:19:46AM
STOP 007 18T, 0808080, 4994994 05:51 08:25:37AM
STOP 008 18T, 0707070, 2002002 12:30 08:38:07AM:
STOP 009 18T, 0606060, 8338338 03:58 08:42:05AM
STOP 010 18T, 1515151, 9449449 04:33 08:46:38AM
STOP 011 18T, 1414141, 1313131 07:28 08:54:06AM
STOP 012 18T, 1313131, 6464646 06:55 09:01:01AM
STOP 013 18T, 1212121, 1919191 07:36 09:08:37AM
STOP 014 18T, 1111111, 3838383 04:50 09:13:27AM
STOP 015 18T, 0090090, 6626626 05:20 09:18:47AM
STOP 016 18T, 0080080, 8118118 09:48 09:28:35AM
STOP 017 18T, 0070070, 5005005 03:33 09:32:08AM
STOP 018 18T, 0060060, 9119119 07:15 09:39:23AM
STOP 019 18T, 0050050, 0030030 05:31 09:44:54AM
STOP 020 18T, 0040040, 8558558 08:01 09:52:55AM
STOP 021 18T, 0030030, 1333133 05:44 09:58:39AM
STOP 022 18T, 0020020, 6444644 05:49 10:04:28AM
STOP 023 18T, 0010010, 1999199 07:22 10:11:50AM
STOP 024 18T, 0009000, 000 0090 05:10 10:17:00AM
572
DRIVER DISPLAY DATA
577
578
CONFIRM CODE
STOP NUMBER
NAME
ADDRESS
C 001 AB COMPANY 18 John Doe Drive
C 002 JACK SMITH 2100 Jones Street
C 003 XYZ COMPANY 999 Smith Street
U 004 MIKE LONG 36 Horse Street
U 005 STEVE JONES 855 Long Drive
U 006 GLOBAL INC. 1000 Chase Street
U 007 FRED SEED 105 River Street
U 008 AAA COMPANY 555 Howard Ave.
U 009 CLAY INDUSTRY 1004 Business Drive
U 010 JOHN DOE 232 Fairview Street
C 011 BETTY SMITH 9191 Oak Drive
U 012 A&A VENTURES 8881 Second Street
U 013 C. L. BLACK 777 Lookout Drive
W 014 JIM SMITH 1100 Abe Drive
C 015 L. WILLIAMS 9922 hightower Street
C 016 PARK COMPANY 3300 Walk Drive
C 017 UNITED COMPANY 12 Tower Place
W 018 Y&Y COMPANY 400 Tower Place
W 019 SUSAN JONES 390 Harris Drive
W 020 IDEAL SPORTS 844 Third Street
W 021 THE BROWN COMPANY 555 Third Street
W 022 OUT SIDE SPORTS 1530 Third Street
W 023 K. FIELD 200 Pine Drive
W 024 LANCE PATTERSON 501 Pine Street

FIG.32

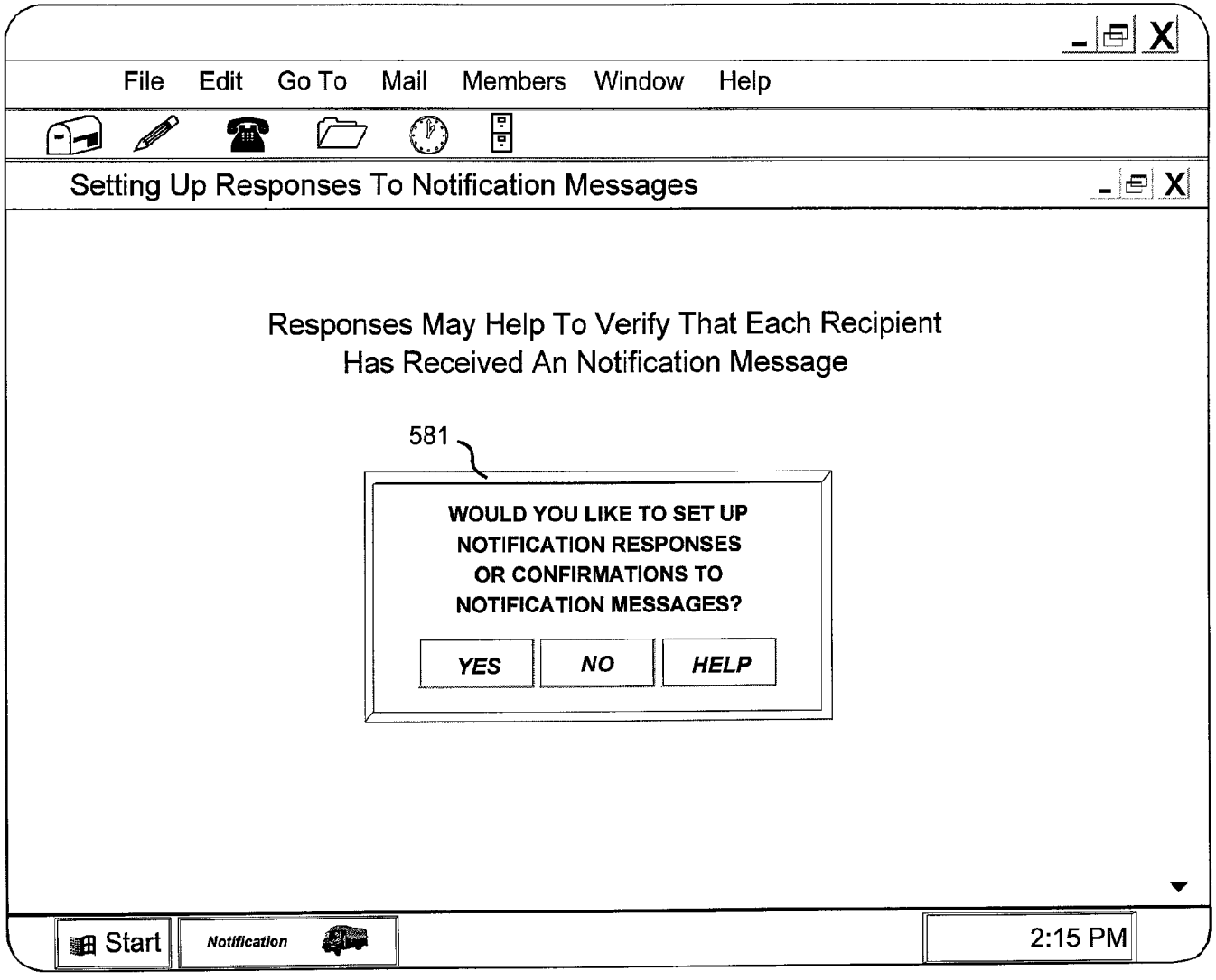

File Edit Go To Mail Members Window Help
Setting Up Responses To Notification Messages
Responses May Help To Verify That Each Recipient Has Received An Notification Message
581
WOULD YOU LIKE TO SET UP NOTIFICATION RESPONSES OR CONFIRMATIONS TO NOTIFICATION MESSAGES?
YES
NO
HELP
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 33

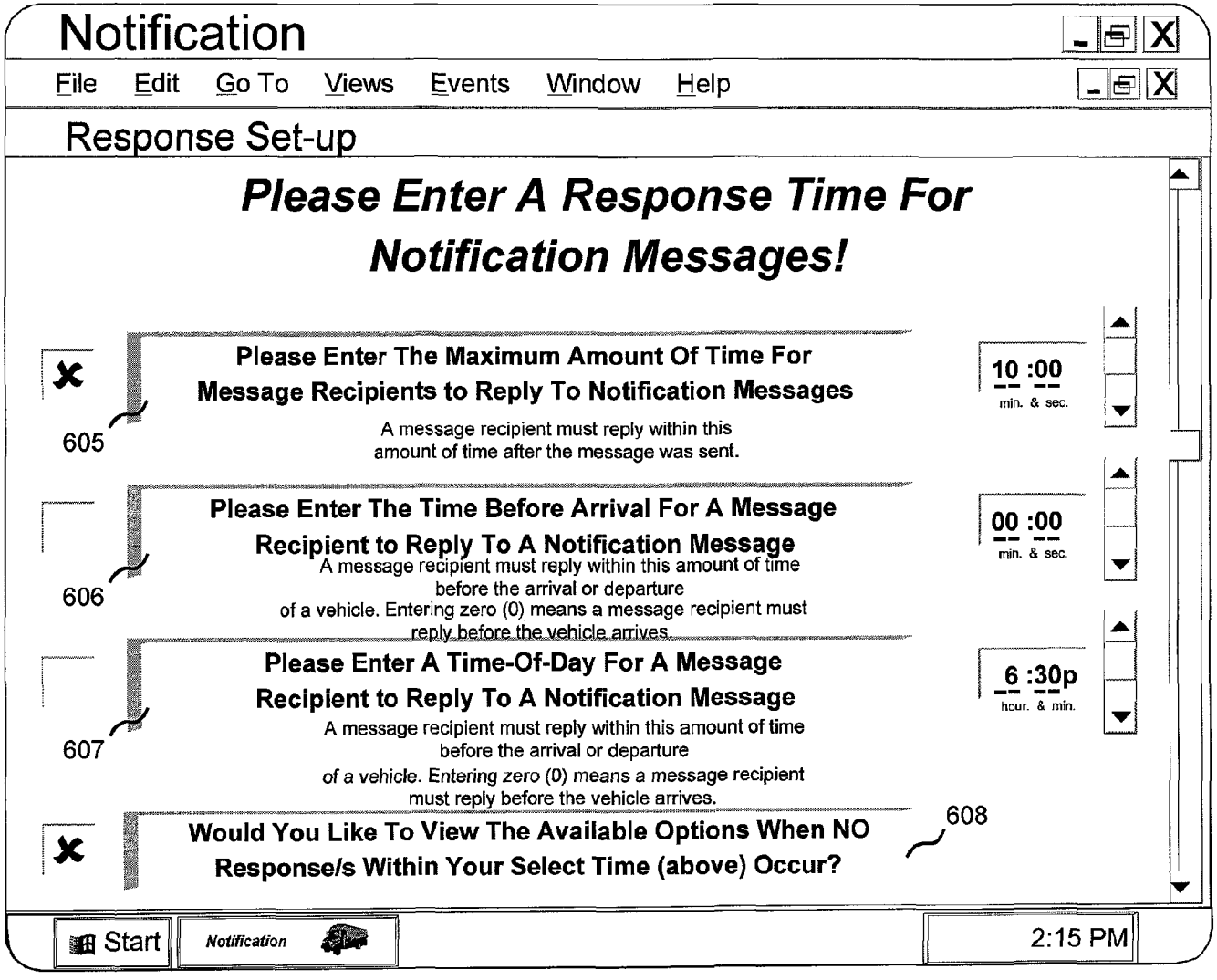

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Response Set-up
Please Enter A Response Time For Notification Messages!
Please Enter The Maximum Amount Of Time For Message Recipients to Reply To Notification Messages
A message recipient must reply within this amount of time after the message was sent.
10 :00
min. & sec.
605
Please Enter The Time Before Arrival For A Message Recipient to Reply To A Notification Message
A message recipient must reply within this amount of time before the arrival or departure of a vehicle. Entering zero (0) means a message recipient must reply before the vehicle arrives.
00 :00
min. & sec.
606
Please Enter A Time-Of-Day For A Message Recipient to Reply To A Notification Message
A message recipient must reply within this amount of time before the arrival or departure of a vehicle. Entering zero (0) means a message recipient must reply before the vehicle arrives.
6 :30p
hour. & min.
607
Would You Like To View The Available Options When NO Response/s Within Your Select Time (above) Occur?
608
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 34

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Response Set-up
Please Enter A Prior Stop Number Before The Arrival, That A User Must Respond To A Notification Message!
Please Enter The Number Of Stops Before The Destination
03
Stops before arrival
608
A message recipient must reply before the number of stops before arrival is reached.
WOULD YOU LIKE THIS STOP TO BE THE ARRIVAL OR DEPARTURE?
Arrival
Departure
HELP
609
Would You Like To View The Available Options When NO Response/s Within Your Select Stops (above) Occur?
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 35

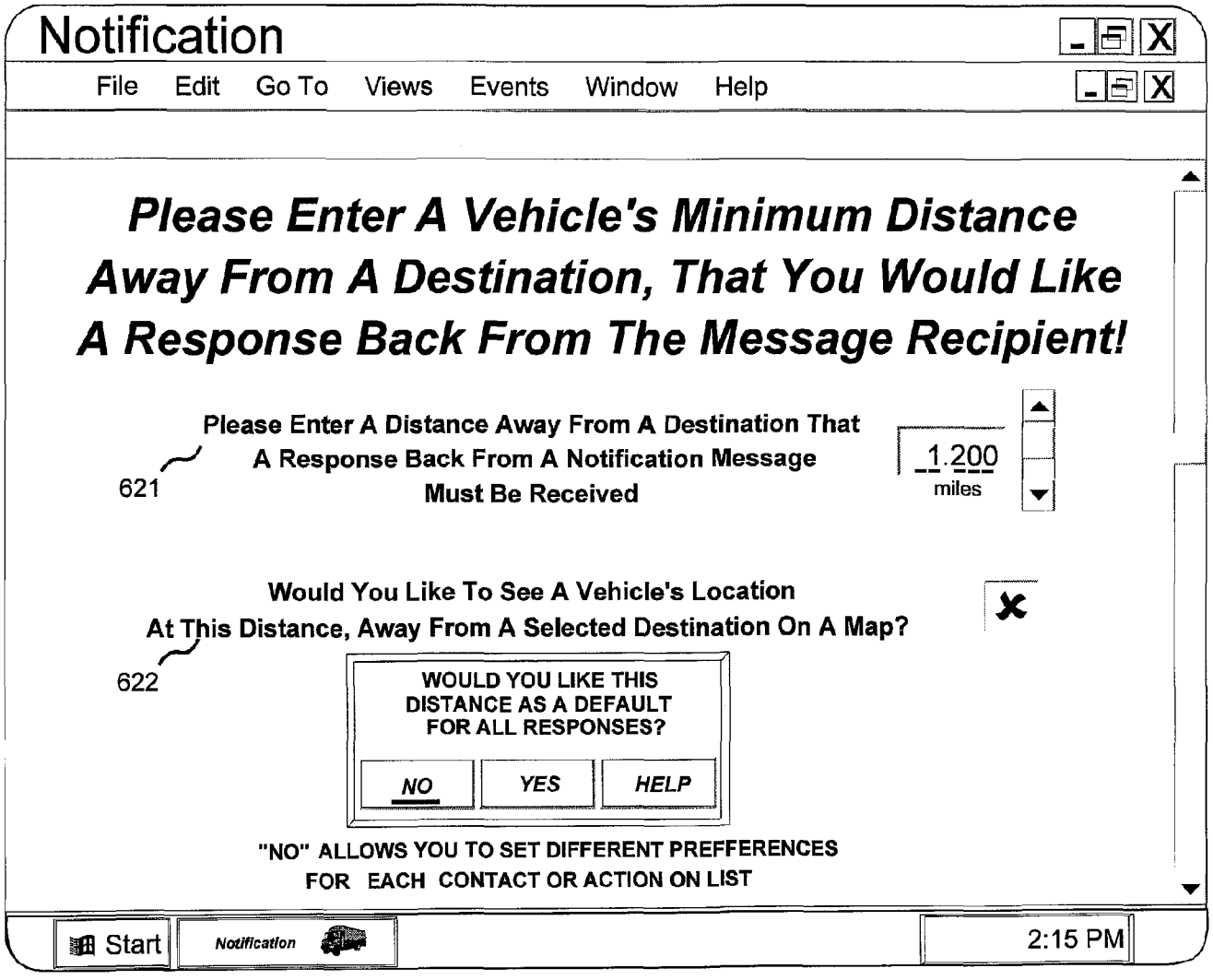

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Please Enter A Vehicle's Minimum Distance Away From A Destination, That You Would Like A Response Back From The Message Recipient!
Please Enter A Distance Away From A Destination That A Response Back From A Notification Message Must Be Received
621
1,200
miles
Would You Like To See A Vehicle's Location At This Distance, Away From A Selected Destination On A Map?
622
WOULD YOU LIKE THIS DISTANCE AS A DEFAULT FOR ALL RESPONSES?
NO
YES
HELP
"NO" ALLOWS YOU TO SET DIFFERENT PREFFERENCES FOR EACH CONTACT OR ACTION ON LIST
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 36

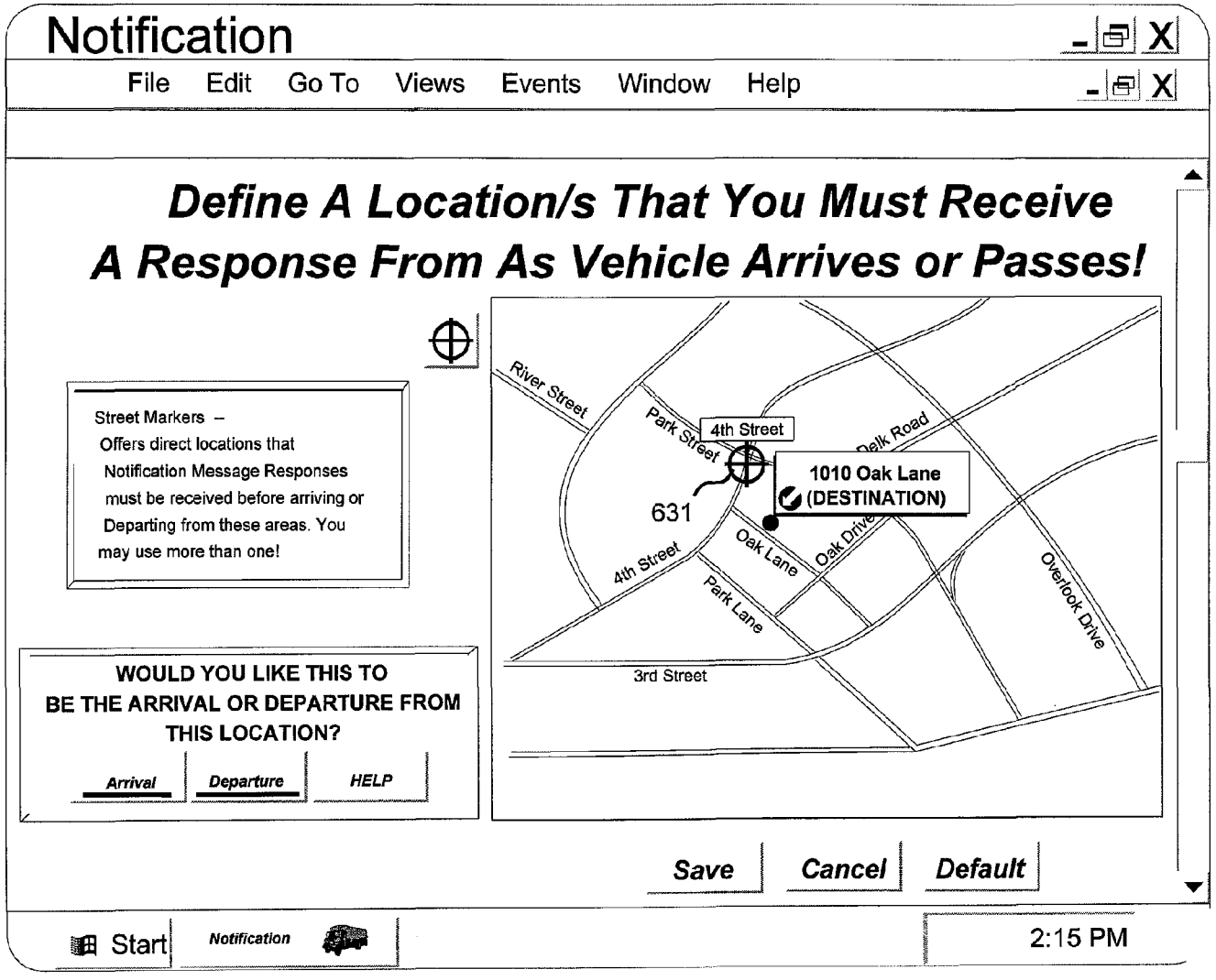

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Define A Location/s That You Must Receive
A Response From As Vehicle Arrives or Passes!
Street Markers –
Offers direct locations that
Notification Message Responses
must be received before arriving or
Departing from these areas. You
may use more than one!
WOULD YOU LIKE THIS TO
BE THE ARRIVAL OR DEPARTURE FROM
THIS LOCATION?
Arrival
Departure
HELP
River Street
Park Street
4th Street
1010 Oak Lane
(DESTINATION)
631
4th Street
Oak Lane
Oak Drive
Park Lane
3rd Street
Overlook Drive
Save
Cancel
Default
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 37

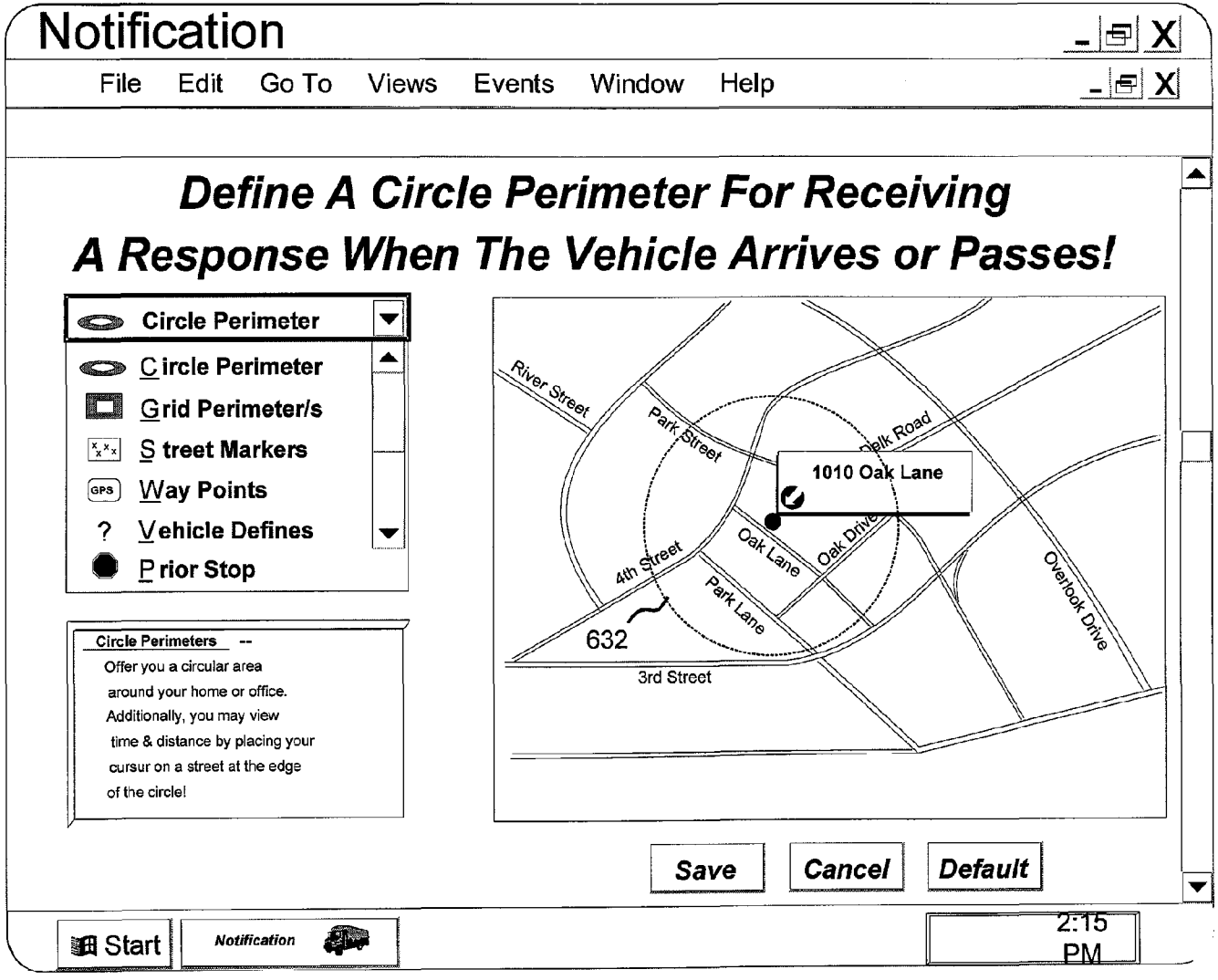

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Define A Circle Perimeter For Receiving
A Response When The Vehicle Arrives or Passes!
Circle Perimeter
Circle Perimeter
Grid Perimeter/s
Street Markers
Way Points
Vehicle Defines
Prior Stop
Circle Perimeters --
Offer you a circular area
around your home or office.
Additionally, you may view
time & distance by placing your
cursur on a street at the edge
of the circle!
River Street
Park Street
Oak Road
1010 Oak Lane
Oak Lane
Oak Drive
4th Street
Park Lane
Overlook Drive
632
3rd Street
Save
Cancel
Default
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 38

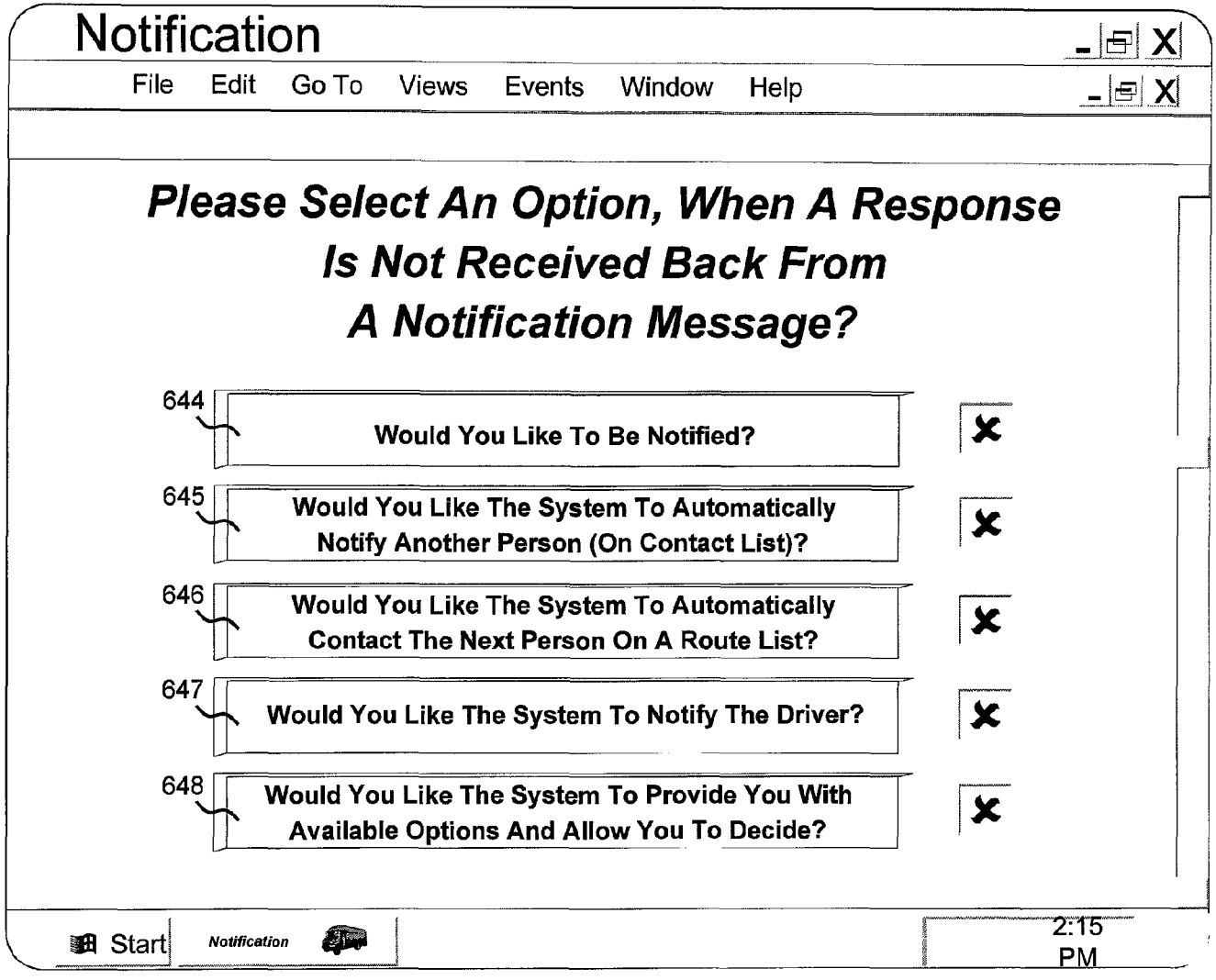

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Please Select An Option, When A Response Is Not Received Back From A Notification Message?
644
Would You Like To Be Notified?
645
Would You Like The System To Automatically Notify Another Person (On Contact List)?
646
Would You Like The System To Automatically Contact The Next Person On A Route List?
647
Would You Like The System To Notify The Driver?
648
Would You Like The System To Provide You With Available Options And Allow You To Decide?
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 39

INTERNET SERVICE PROVIDER
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
YOU HAVE RECEIVED NEW MAIL
650
FROM
SUBJECT
RECEIVED
ANS PROVIDER
You Have A Delivery - Please Provide The Time You Will Be Available? 8:45am 01/31/97
Save
Delete
Reply
Start
ISP BROWSER (CONNECTED)
8:45 AM

FIG. 40

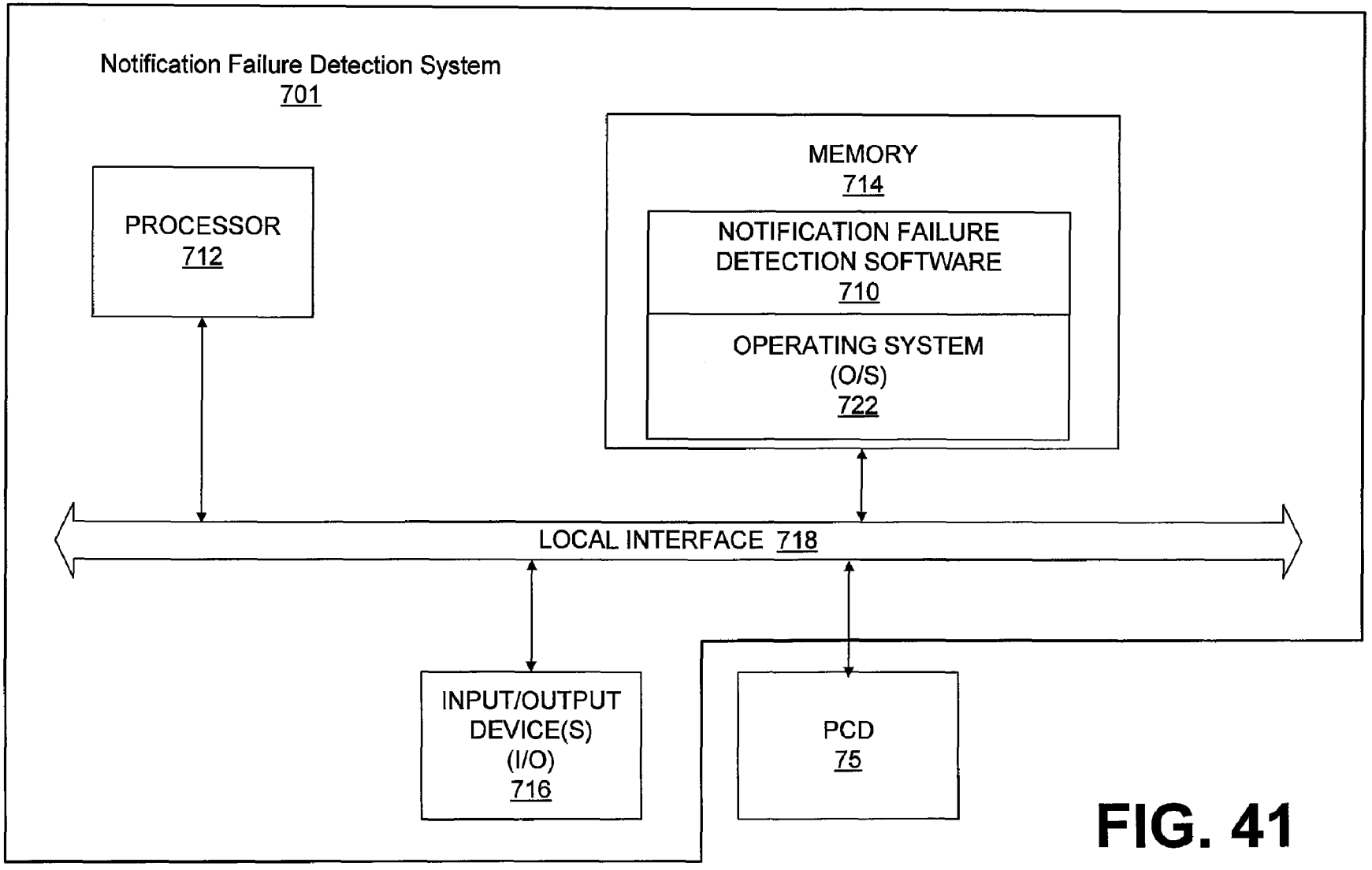

Notification Failure Detection System
701
PROCESSOR
712
MEMORY
714
NOTIFICATION FAILURE
DETECTION SOFTWARE
710
OPERATING SYSTEM
(O/S)
722
LOCAL INTERFACE 718
INPUT/OUTPUT
DEVICE(S)
(I/O)
716
PCD
75

FIG. 41

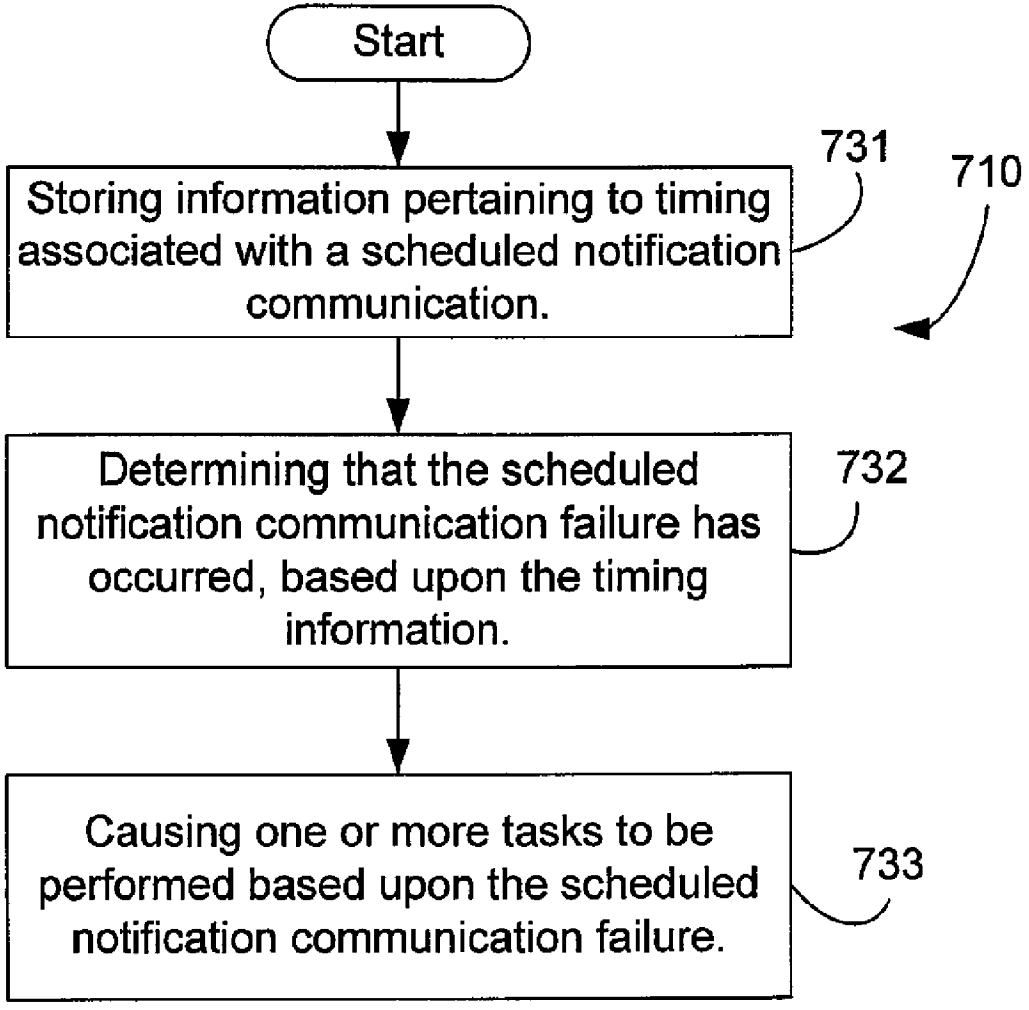

Start
Storing information pertaining to timing associated with a scheduled notification communication.
731
710
Determining that the scheduled notification communication failure has occurred, based upon the timing information.
732
Causing one or more tasks to be performed based upon the scheduled notification communication failure.
733

FIG. 42

SECURE NOTIFICATION MESSAGING SYSTEMS AND METHODS USING AUTHENTICATION INDICIA

CLAIM OF PRIORITY

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 10/858,752, filed Jun. 2, 2004, now Pat. No. 7,319,414, which is a continuation of application Ser. No. 10/706,591, filed Nov. 12, 2003, now Pat. No. 7,119,716, which claims priority to the following provisional applications: Ser. No. 60/473,738, filed May 28, 2003; Ser. No. 60/473,742, filed May 28, 2003; Ser. No. 60/473,949, filed May 28, 2003; Ser. No. 60/486,768, filed Jul. 11, 2003; and Ser. No. 60/498,819, filed Aug. 29, 2003. All of the foregoing applications are incorporated by reference in their entirety.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

The present invention generally relates to data communications, information, and messaging systems and, more particularly, to systems and methods that notify a party of travel status associated with one or more mobile things (MTs).

2. Related Art

For at least the purposes of allowing better preparation and scheduling, for example, with respect to pickups or deliveries, it would be desirable to know, with substantial accuracy, the expected arrival or departure time of a mobile vehicle or thing (for example but not limited to, a bus, automobile, truck, train, ship, plane, aircraft, etc.) with respect to a location.

For example, consider a commercial bus service. A person intending to catch a bus or intending to pick up a friend or relative at the commercial bus station usually calls the bus station to find out the approximate arrival time (information which is oftentimes unavailable or unreliable) and/or arrives at the bus station prior to the scheduled arrival or departure time of the bus, hoping that the bus is not significantly delayed. With knowledge of accurate arrival or departure information, adjustments can be made to one's schedule to avoid having to wait extended periods for a vehicle.

Another example involves school children that ride school buses. The arrival times of school buses at scheduled stops can be significantly affected by many factors, such as maintenance problems, rush hour traffic, congested urban/suburban conditions, and adverse weather. As a result, school children typically wait at bus stops for long periods of time, oftentimes in adverse weather conditions, on unlit street corners, or in hazardous conditions near busy or secluded streets. An advance notification system that would inform the students of the school bus's proximity would be desirable so that students can avoid having to wait for the school bus at the bus stop for extended time periods.

Yet another example involves the commercial overnight package industry, wherein packages are delivered or picked up many times on a tight schedule. Customers oftentimes wait on delivery or pickup of important time-critical packages, not knowing precisely when the delivery or pickup will occur. A notification system that can inform a customer of the precise arrival or departure time of a delivery vehicle with respect to a location would be desirable in order to improve customer service and to allow the customer to better schedule a delivery or pickup of an item.

Still another example involves the airline industry. It is desirable to notify airline workers, such as those who unload baggage from airplanes, when an airplane is about to land or has landed. A notification system can be employed to track the airplane travel status and to send notifications to these workers, when appropriate.

To date, notification systems have been developed to address the foregoing needs and some are known in the art. Mr. M. Kelly Jones, a prolific inventor in this field, obtained numerous patents that describe examples of such notification systems, some of which are as follows: U.S. Pat. No. 5,400,020; U.S. Pat. No. 5,444,444; U.S. Pat. No. 5,623,260; U.S. Pat. No. 5,647,010; U.S. Pat. No. 5,648,770; U.S. Pat. No. 5,657,010; U.S. Pat. No. 5,668,543; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,400,020; U.S. Pat. No. 6,278,936; U.S. Pat. No. 6,317,060; U.S. Pat. No. 6,363,323; U.S. Pat. No. 6,363,254; U.S. Pat. No. 6,411,891; U.S. Pat. No. 6,415,207; U.S. Pat. No. 6,492,912; U.S. Pat. No. 6,510,383; and U.S. Pat. No. 6,618,668.

A nonexhaustive list of other examples of notification systems is as follows: U.S. Pat. No. 6,006,159 (for a public bus transit system); U.S. Pat. No. 6,374,176 (for a public bus transit system); application Ser. No. 09/163,535, filed on Sep. 30, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,602,739 (for a public transit system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,736,940 (tracking system for buses; notice of impending arrival is described); U.S. Pat. No. 5,808,565 (GPS triggered automatic enunciator for public transportation vehicles that notifies of a stop based upon the location of the vehicle); U.S. Pat. No. 5,955,974 (apparatus carried by a user to notify of arrival so user does not miss stop); U.S. Pat. No. 5,987,377 (dispatch system that determines expected time of arrival and indicates to dispatcher when a vehicle will be late); U.S. Pat. No. 6,124,810 (vehicle apparatus determines when vehicle has arrived or departed from a planned or unplanned stop and communicates such information to a central facility); U.S. Pat. No. 6,137,425 (waiting time prediction system for a public transit system); U.S. Pat. No. 6,178,378 (a vehicle navigation system where a start call, such as by telephone, is made); and U.S. Pat. No. 6,184,802 (system for informing users when a next vehicle will arrive at their boarding site).

Furthermore, a nonexhaustive list of examples of tracking systems is as follows: U.S. Pat. No. 5,014,206; U.S. Pat. No. 5,113,185; U.S. Pat. No. 5,155,689; U.S. Pat. No. 5,168,451 (transit system for dispatching vehicles); U.S. Pat. No. 5,223,844; U.S. Pat. No. 5,243,529 (in-vehicle navigation apparatus with map display); U.S. Pat. No. 5,299,132; U.S. Pat. No. 5,394,332 (on-board navigation system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,398,190; U.S. Pat. No. 5,432,841 (system for locating and communicating with mobile vehicles); U.S. Pat. No. 5,448,479; U.S. Pat. No. 5,483,454; U.S. Pat. No. 5,519,621; U.S. Pat. No. 5,587,715 (describes a satellite based tracking system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,594,650 (describes a tracking system with map display capabilities); U.S. Pat. No. 5,652,707; U.S. Pat. No. 5,724,243 (on board vehicle system tracks location and expected time of arrival); U.S. Pat. No. 5,739,774 (mass transit monitoring system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,760,742 (integrated mobile GIS/GPS/AVL with wireless messaging); U.S. Pat. No. 5,796,365 (uses satellites, vehicle tracking units, and a central computer); U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,040 (vehicle positioning data is exchanged between vehicles and a central processor having a map display); U.S. Pat. No. 5,945,919 (dispatch system tracks vehicles); U.S. Pat. No. 6,191,708 (vehicle location tracking without satellites); U.S. Pat. No. 6,253,148 (tracks buses and communicates waiting times to radio receivers); and U.S. Pat. No. 6,360,101 (cellular phone that displays or sends messages upon its arrival at a predetermined location).

Another tracking system that has been known in the art is the FlightView airline tracking system developed by RLM Software, Inc., which monitors the progress of an airplane

and displays its location on a map on a user's computer screen. RLM receives real-time flight data (for example, position and speed) for each flight over North America. This data comes from transponders located on aircraft. The FAA collects the transponder data, adds radar and other information, and supplies it to RLM. This data feed is known in the aviation industry as "ASDI," which stands for Aircraft Situation Display for Industry and has been made available by the FAA since 1996. RLM processes this data and stores it in the FlightView database. A user can then request the status of any commercial flight from the FlightView system (by providing the airline and flight number), which sends to the user's computer screen a map showing the current position, route, and expected arrival time of the flight.

Sabre, Inc., provides similar map functionality at its Virtually There web site using a system that is apparently based upon the FlightView system.

As can be seen from the aforementioned prior art, the systems that give notice concerning the status of moving things are still evolving and, in some sense, the art is still in a state of infancy. Accordingly, I write and submit this application and invention for the public good to educate and further advance the technology associated with such systems.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides systems and methods for notification or messaging systems that give confidence to the notification-receiving party that a notification concerning the travel status of a mobile thing is from a proper authorized source.

One representative method, among others, comprises the following steps: monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing; communicating a notification involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the mobile thing to a personal communications device associated with a party; and providing authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification is from an authorized source. A representative system, among others, comprises a computer system that is programmed to perform each of the foregoing steps.

Other systems, methods, features, and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the accompanying Drawings and following Detailed Description section.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The invention can be better understood with reference to the following drawings. The elements of the drawings are not necessarily to scale relative to each other, emphasis instead being placed upon clearly illustrating the principles of the invention. Furthermore, like reference numerals designate corresponding parts throughout the several views.

FIG. **1** is a block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of an automated notification system, which in this case, is a computer-based system.

FIG. **2** is a block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of a computer system implementing the functionality of the mobile thing manager of FIG. **1**.

FIG. **3** is a block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of a computer system implementing the functionality of the base station manager (BS manager) of FIG. **1**.

FIG. **4**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the mobile thing manager of FIG. **1** that creates the mobile thing schedule.

FIG. **4**B is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the mobile thing manager of FIG. **1** that tracks the mobile thing.

FIG. **5**A is a functional block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIG. **1**.

FIG. **5**B is a functional block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the data manager associated with the BS manager of FIG. **5**A.

FIG. **5**C is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the monitoring mechanism associated with the BS manager of FIGS. **5**A and **5**B.

FIG. **5**D is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the message manager associated with the BS manager of FIGS. **5**A and **5**B.

FIG. **6** is a block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of the response system of FIG. **1**, which has the response system feedback mechanism and the response system feedback analyzer.

FIG. **7**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **7**B is a flow chart illustrating another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**. A response from a notified party causes a telecommunications connection to be made between the notified party and a party associated with a tracked MT that will make a pickup or delivery at a stop location.

FIG. **7**C is a flow chart illustrating yet another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**. A response from a notified party is used to change one or more tasks associated with a pickup or delivery of an item or service associated with a stop location.

FIG. **7**D is a flow chart illustrating still another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**. A response from a notified party is used to select one of a plurality of times for a pickup or delivery of an item or service associated with a stop location.

FIG. **8** is a flow chart illustrating another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer of the present invention, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **9**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of the modify step in the response system feedback analyzer of FIG. **8**, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **9**B is a flow chart illustrating another exemplary implementation of the modify step in the response system feedback analyzer of FIG. **8**, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **9**C is a flow chart illustrating yet another exemplary implementation of the modify step in the response system

feedback analyzer of FIG. **8**, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **10** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of the response system feedback mechanism, which is optionally implemented as at least a part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the personal communications device (PCD) of FIG. **1**, and which interacts with the response system feedback analyzer of any of FIGS. **7** through **9**C.

FIG. **11** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of an advertisement method of doing business that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system.

FIG. **12** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of another advertisement method of doing business that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system.

FIG. **13** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of yet another advertisement method of doing business that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system.

FIG. **14**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a first stop location determination system (and method; system and method are based upon feedback regarding the location of the PCD and/or user) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **14**B is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a second stop location determination system (and method; system and method are based upon feedback regarding the location of the PCD and/or user) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **15**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a third stop location determination system (and method; system and method are based upon timing criteria) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **15**B is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a fourth stop location determination system (and method; system and method are based upon timing criteria) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **16** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a secure notification messaging system (and method) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **16**A shows a possible screen message that can be shown on a notified PCD during a notification communication for authentication purposes.

FIG. **17**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a first mobile thing determination system (and method; system and method are based upon pickup and dropoff locations that are communicated to the notification system) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **17**B is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a second mobile thing determination system (and method system and method are based upon pickup and dropoff locations that are communicated to the notification system) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **17**C is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a third mobile thing determination system (and method; system and method are based upon the detected location of the PCD and/or user) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **17**D is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a fourth mobile thing determination system (and method; system and method are based upon the detected location of the PCD and/or user) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **18** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a combined mobile-thing-to-location (MTTL) and device-to-location (DTL) notification system (and method) that can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **19**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a first system (and method) for making more accurate notifications by considering traffic flow predicament data. This system can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **19**B is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a second system (and method) for making more accurate notifications by considering traffic flow predicament data. This system can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **19**C is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a third system (and method) for making more accurate notifications by considering traffic flow predicament data. This system can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **20**A is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a first system (and method) for monitoring travel of MTs that are PCDs and communicating notifications and responses among the PCDs. This system can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **20**B is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a second system (and method) for monitoring travel of MTs that are PCDs and communicating notifications and responses among the PCDs. This system can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **20**C is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of a third system (and method) for monitoring travel of MTs that are PCDs and communicating notifications

and responses among the PCDs. This system can be optionally implemented in connection with any notification system, for example, as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**.

FIG. **21** is an illustration of an exemplary system with various PCDs being tracked, communicating notifications to other PCDs, and receiving responses from the other PCDs, all by way of a base station control unit.

FIG. **22** is an illustration of an exemplary system with a PCD in the form of a first navigation system (a) tracking its location, (b) communicating a notification to another PCD in the form of a second navigation system, and (c) receiving a response from the second navigation system, either indirectly by way of a base station control unit or directly from navigation system to navigation system.

FIG. **23** is an illustration of a possible architecture for implementing the direct communications configuration between a tracked PCD in the form of an in-vehicle navigation system and one or more other PCDs.

FIG. **24** is a continuation of the example in FIG. **23** and shows implementation of response requests and failure states.

FIGS. **25**A through **25**D illustrate examples of possible failure states the can be shown on the screen of the tracked PCD.

FIG. **26** is an illustration of an embodiment of a stop list generation system that may be used in connection with a delivery vehicle. A stop list is compiled based upon whether or not a stop requires a response and whether or not a response has been received from such stops that require one.

FIG. **27** is an illustration of an embodiment of a stop list generation system that may be used in connection with a delivery vehicle. A notified party is given a predetermined time period to respond until a failure state is reached. The existence of failure states (No Responses) and confirmations are communicated to the PCD associated with the delivery vehicle.

FIG. **28** is an illustration of an embodiment of a stop list generation system that may be used in connection with a delivery vehicle. A delivery vehicle driver can select or otherwise indicate which of the confirmed notified parties will be visited by the delivery vehicle.

FIG. **29** is an illustration of an embodiment of a stop list generation system that may be used in connection with a delivery vehicle. The PCD associated with the delivery vehicle and driver communicates with the BSCU in order to determine whether or not a response pertaining to a stop has been received.

FIG. **30** is an illustration of an embodiment that can be implemented at the BSCU or MTCU showing implementation of failure states in connection with responses and nonresponses to notification communications in the context of a delivery vehicle.

FIG. **31** is an illustration of another embodiment that can be implemented at the BSCU or MTCU showing implementation of failure states in connection with responses and nonresponses to notification communications in the context of a delivery vehicle.

FIG. **32** is an illustration of an embodiment of route data and corresponding driver display data that can be maintained and implemented in connection with a delivery or pickup service.

FIG. **33** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **34** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **35** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **36** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **37** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **38** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **39** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **40** shows an example of an email that can be generated and sent by the BSCU **40** of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

FIG. **41** is a block diagram illustrating an exemplary implementation of a computer-based notification failure detection system implemented in connection with a notified PCD.

FIG. **42** is a flow chart illustrating an exemplary implementation of notification failure detection software of FIG. **41**.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

A. Notification System

The systems and methods of this patent application can be implemented in connection with any type of notification service or system, messaging system, information system, data communications system, or tracking system, that notifies a party of travel status associated with one or more moving things (all referred to herein as "notification system"). The notification system may or may not have a tracking subsystem that actually directly or indirectly tracks the mobile things (MTs), but has access to information or data, perhaps from a tracking system(s) or data source, that can be used by it to monitor travel of the MTs. There are a number of such notification, messaging, and tracking systems that are known in the art.

As mentioned in the Background, Mr. Martin Kelly Jones has been an active pioneering inventor in this area and has filed applications for patent on various notification systems, a few of which, are as follows: U.S. Pat. No. 5,400,020; U.S. Pat. No. 5,444,444; U.S. Pat. No. 5,623,260; U.S. Pat. No. 5,647,010; U.S. Pat. No. 5,648,770; U.S. Pat. No. 5,657,010; U.S. Pat. No. 5,668,543; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,400,020; U.S. Pat. No. 6,278,936; U.S. Pat. No. 6,317,060; U.S. Pat. No. 6,363,323; U.S. Pat. No. 6,363,254; U.S. Pat. No. 6,411,891; U.S. Pat. No. 6,415,207; U.S. Pat. No. 6,492,912; U.S. Pat. No. 6,510,383; and U.S. Pat. No. 6,618,668. All of the foregoing patents are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. The inventions that are claimed near the end of this document can be implemented and practiced in the systems described in the foregoing patents, as will be clear from the discussion that follows.

A nonexhaustive list of other examples of notification systems is as follows: U.S. Pat. No. 6,006,159 (for a public bus transit system); U.S. Pat. No. 6,374,176 (for a public bus transit system); application Ser. No. 09/163,535, filed on Sep. 30, 1998; U.S. Pat. No. 5,602,739 (for a public transit system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,736,940 (tracking system for buses; notice of impending arrival is described); U.S. Pat. No. 5,808,565 (GPS triggered automatic enunciator for public transportation vehicles that notifies of a stop based upon the location of the vehicle); U.S. Pat. No. 5,955,974 (apparatus carried by

a user to notify of arrival so user does not miss stop); U.S. Pat. No. 5,987,377 (dispatch system that determines expected time of arrival and indicates to dispatcher when a vehicle will be late); U.S. Pat. No. 6,124,810 (vehicle apparatus determines when vehicle has arrived or departed from a planned or unplanned stop and communicates such information to a central facility); U.S. Pat. No. 6,137,425 (waiting time prediction system for a public transit system); U.S. Pat. No. 6,178,378 (a vehicle navigation system where a start call, such as by telephone, is made); and U.S. Pat. No. 6,184,802 (system for informing users when a next vehicle will arrive at their boarding site). All of the aforementioned patents or applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. The inventions that are claimed in this document can be implemented and practiced in the systems described in the foregoing patents.

Furthermore, a nonexhaustive list of examples of, what appear to be tracking systems, are as follows: U.S. Pat. No. 5,014,206; U.S. Pat. No. 5,113,185; U.S. Pat. No. 5,155,689; U.S. Pat. No. 5,168,451 (transit system for dispatching vehicles); U.S. Pat. No. 5,223,844; U.S. Pat. No. 5,243,529 (in-vehicle navigation apparatus with map display); U.S. Pat. No. 5,299,132; U.S. Pat. No. 5,394,332 (on-board navigation system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,398,190; U.S. Pat. No. 5,432,841 (system for locating and communicating with mobile vehicles); U.S. Pat. No. 5,448,479; U.S. Pat. No. 5,483,454; U.S. Pat. No. 5,519,621; U.S. Pat. No. 5,587,715 (describes a satellite based tracking system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,594,650 (describes a tracking system with map display capabilities); U.S. Pat. No. 5,652,707; U.S. Pat. No. 5,724,243 (on board vehicle system tracks location and expected time of arrival); U.S. Pat. No. 5,739,774 (mass transit monitoring system); U.S. Pat. No. 5,760,742 (integrated mobile GIS/GPS/AVL with wireless messaging); U.S. Pat. No. 5,796,365 (uses satellites, vehicle tracking units, and a central computer); U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,040 (vehicle positioning data is exchanged between vehicles and a central processor having a map display); U.S. Pat. No. 5,945,919 (dispatch system tracks vehicles); U.S. Pat. No. 6,191,708 (vehicle location tracking without satellites); U.S. Pat. No. 6,253,148 (tracks buses and communicates waiting times to radio receivers); and U.S. Pat. No. 6,360,101 (cellular phone that displays or sends messages upon its arrival at a predetermined location). All of these mentioned patents or applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. The inventions that are claimed in this document can be implemented and practiced in the systems described in these mentioned patents.

The claimed systems (and methods) of the invention can be implemented in many other known notification systems, messaging systems, or tracking systems, that notify a party of travel status associated with one or more moving things and that are not specifically referenced, shown, or described in this document for reasons of simplicity.

As a nonlimiting example, FIG. **1** depicts a notification system **10** illustrating a possible context, among others, in which the invention may be implemented. As shown by FIG. **1**, the notification system **10** has a tracking aspect and a notification aspect.

As depicted in FIG. **1**, an MT control unit (MTCU) **15** is disposed on an MT **17**, which is capable of transporting the MTCU **15** over various distances. For example, MT **17** can be any movable object or thing, including but not limited to, a motor vehicle, such as an automobile, motorcycle, truck, bus, limousine, or taxicab, a bicycle, an aircraft such as an airplane, helicopter, balloon, or rocket, a train, a water vehicle such as a cruise ship, cargo ship, or other boat/ship, a package, a human being, an animal, an electronic email or transmission, an amusement park vehicle, or any other thing capable of being moved across or through the Earth's surface and/or atmosphere.

The notification service can be implemented in connection with any vehicle **17** for delivering items to a destination or for picking up items at a destination. Items can include any of many various types of packages or goods to be delivered or picked up, for example but not limited to, mail, pizza, beverages, shipping vessels, containers, produce, etc. Furthermore, items can also include persons to be picked up or delivered, such as when a bus picks up and/or delivers passengers at different bus stops or such as when an airplane picks up and/or delivers passengers at airports. Although not necessary for implementation, the MT **17** can travel along a predetermined route or modifiable route in making its deliveries, and the MT **17** may make one or more stops along its route in order to deliver or pick up different items at different locations.

The notification service can also be implemented in connection with any services to be delivered, or performed at or near, a destination. The notification service can be implemented in connection with the following nonlimiting list of examples: maid service, pest control, telephone repair or installation, television repair, cable repair or installation, garbage pickup, yard maintenance, pool maintenance, power meter maintenance/reading, etc.

B. Mobile Thing Control Unit (MTCU)

In the preferred embodiment, a sensor **18** within MTCU **15** is configured to sense signals to help determine and/or determine the location of the sensor **18** relative to a predetermined reference point. In the preferred embodiment, sensor **18** is a global positioning system (GPS) sensor(s), although other types of positioning systems (having components that are local to and/or remote from the MTCU **15**) and/or sensors are also possible. For example, other types of positioning systems that may be used include, but are not limited to, GLONASS, LORAN, Shoran, Decca, TACAN, radar, traffic system monitoring, a system for monitoring vehicle stops along a route, or any other of numerous possible tracking systems or combinations thereof. It is also possible to indirectly monitor the location of the MT **17** by monitoring or tracking pickup or delivery of people, products, packages, or things that are transported by the MT **17**. The GPS sensor **18** of the preferred embodiment is configured to receive signals **21** from a plurality of GPS satellites **23**, and as known in the art, sensor **18** is designed to analyze signals **21** in order to determine the sensor's location or coordinate values relative to a predetermined reference point. For example, in the preferred embodiment where sensor **18** is a GPS sensor, the sensor **18** determines the sensor's location values relative to the Earth's zero degree latitude and zero degree longitude reference point, which is located at the intersection of the Equator and the Prime Meridian. U.S. Pat. No. 5,781,156 entitled, "GPS Receiver and Method for Processing GPS Signals" and filed on Apr. 23, 1997 by Krasner, which is incorporated herein by reference, discusses a sensor for the processing of GPS signals **21** received from GPS satellites **23** in order to determine the sensor's location values. Since the sensor **18** is located within MTCU **15**, the location values determined by the sensor **18** are assumed to match the location values of the MT **17** and the MTCU **15**.

A location value can be any value or set of values that may be used to determine a location of a point on the Earth or within the Earth's atmosphere. This value may be a coordinate value (i.e., grid value), polar value, vector value, time-distance value, or any other type of value or values known in the art for indicating locations of points.

In alternative embodiments, the positioning system **23** may determine MT location information and merely transmit the position information to the MT **17**. For example, radar could be used to remotely track the MT **17** and then the radar system could be designed to convey MT position information to the MT **17** (and/or the base station control unit (BSCU) **40**, which will be described in detail hereinafter).

In alternative embodiments, the positioning system **23** may be the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), which collects transponder data from airplanes, adds radar and other information, and makes the resultant data available for tracking purposes. This data feed is known in the aviation industry as "ASDI," which stands for Aircraft Situation Display for Industry. This data feed can be accessed by the BSCU **40** (and/or the MTCU **15**).

In alternative embodiments, the positioning system **23** may be associated with a computer system server communicatively coupled to the Internet that makes location information pertaining to the MT **17** available to the BSCU **40** and/or to the MTCU **15** over the Internet. In such embodiments, it is also possible for the BSCU **40** to communicate the server's uniform resource locator (URL) to the notified PCD **75**, which can be equipped with a web browser, so that location information pertaining to the tracked MT **17** (as well as the PCD **75**) can be accessed by the notified PCD **75** from the server.

In alternative embodiments, the positioning system **23** may be a tracking system that tracks a vehicle's progress along a predetermined route based upon its arrival at and/or departure from stops along the route.

Referring back to FIG. **1**, sensor **18** is designed to transmit a signal **27** to MT manager **29** indicating the MT's current location values. MT manager **29** is configured to receive signal **27** and to monitor the location of the MT **17** over time by processing multiple signals **27**. The MT manager **29** can be implemented in software, hardware, or a combination thereof. In the preferred embodiment, as illustrated by way of example in FIG. **2**, the MT manager **29** along with its associated methodology is implemented in software and stored in computer memory **30***a* of a computer system **31***a*.

Note that the MT manager **29** can be stored and transported on any computer-readable medium for use by or in connection with an instruction execution system, apparatus, or device, such as a computer-based system, processor-containing system, or other system that can fetch the instructions from the instruction execution system, apparatus, or device and execute the instructions. In the context of this document, a "computer-readable medium" can be any means that can contain, store, communicate, propagate, or transport the program for use by or in connection with the instruction execution system, apparatus, or device. The computer readable medium can be, for example but not limited to, an electronic, magnetic, optical, electromagnetic, infrared, or semiconductor system, apparatus, device, or propagation medium. More specific examples (a nonexhaustive list) of the computer-readable medium would include the following: an electrical connection (electronic) having one or more wires, a portable computer diskette (magnetic), a random access memory (RAM) (magnetic), a read-only memory (ROM) (magnetic), an erasable programmable read-only memory (EPROM or Flash memory) (magnetic), an optical fiber (optical), and a portable compact disc read-only memory (CDROM) (optical). Note that the computer-readable medium could even be paper or another suitable medium upon which the program is printed, as the program can be electronically captured, via for instance optical scanning of the paper or other medium, then compiled, interpreted or otherwise processed in a suitable manner if necessary, and then stored in a computer memory. As an example, the MT manager **29** may be magnetically stored and transported on a conventional portable computer diskette.

An exemplary embodiment of the computer system **31***a* of FIG. **2** comprises one or more conventional processing elements **32***a*, such as microprocessors, digital signal processors (DSPs), or other suitable processing means, that communicate to and drive the other elements within the system **31***a* via a local interface **33***a*, which can include one or more buses. Furthermore, an input device(s) **34***a*, for example, a keyboard, mouse, or trackball, can be used to input data from a user of the system **31***a*, and screen display(s) **35***a* or a printer(s) **36***a* can be used to output data to the user. A nonvolatile disk storage mechanism **37***a* can be connected to the local interface **33***a* to transfer data to and from a nonvolatile disk (e.g., magnetic, optical, etc.). It should be noted that input device **34***a*, display **35***a*, printer **36***a*, and disk storage mechanism **37***a* are optional and are not a part of the preferred embodiment, although other embodiments may include these features.

The MT manager **29** is preferably configured to maintain a predefined MT schedule **39***a* within memory **30***a*. The predefined MT schedule **39***a* corresponds with a route of travel for the MT **17**. In this regard, the predefined MT schedule **39***a* stored in memory **30***a* includes data defining locations along the MT's intended route of travel. Furthermore, each location is associated with a particular time value indicating when the MT **17** is expected to reach the associated location. Each time value along with its associated location defines an entry in the MT schedule **39***a*.

In the preferred embodiment, the time value corresponds to the estimated amount of time that should lapse between the time that the MT **17** starts its intended route and the time that the MT **17** reaches the associated location along the route. However, other time values may be used. For example, the time of day that the MT **17** is expected to reach the associated location may be used. Any time value that indicates when the MT **17** is expected to reach the associated location is sufficient. However, for illustrative purposes, the system will be discussed hereinafter assuming that the time values in the entries of the MT schedule **39***a* conform to the preferred embodiment (i.e., that the time values represent the amount of time that should lapse between the time that the MT **17** starts its intended route and the time that the MT **17** reaches the associated location along the route).

The MT manager **29** is configured to monitor the amount of time that lapses as the MT **17** travels along the MT's route. For example, the computer system **31***a* can include a clock **38***a* that indicates the time of day. In this situation, the MT manager **29** is configured to store the time value of the clock **38***a* when the MT **17** begins the route. Therefore, the MT manager **29** can determine the amount of time that has lapsed since the start of the route by comparing the current time value of the clock **38***a* versus the stored time value for the start of the route. Alternatively, the clock **38***a* can be designed as a counter that begins timing or counting in response to a start signal transmitted by the MT manager **29**. Therefore, the MT manager **29** transmits the start signal when the MT **17** starts the route, and thereafter, the MT manager **29** can determine the amount of time that has lapsed since the start of the route by analyzing the value of the clock **38***a*. Other devices and/or methodologies may be employed to determine the amount of time that has lapsed since the start of the route.

As the MT **17** travels along the predetermined route of travel, the MT manager **29** is configured to determine the MT's current position by analyzing the location values from

the sensor **18**. Furthermore, as the MT **17** travels, the MT **17** passes the points or locations along the route that are defined in the MT schedule **39***a*. The MT manager **29** is designed to compare the current location values of the MT **17** (i.e., of the sensor **18**) with the location values defined by the MT schedule **39***a* in order to determine which entry in the MT schedule **39***a* corresponds with the current location of the MT **17**. In the preferred embodiment, the entry that corresponds with the current location of the MT **17** is the entry having location values most closely matching the location values currently supplied by the sensor **18**. In other words, the corresponding entry includes location values representing the location that is closest to the location of the MT **17**. This entry will be referred to hereinafter as the "corresponding entry."

After determining which entry corresponds with the current location of the MT **17**, the MT manager **29** is designed to determine whether the MT **17** is off schedule or on schedule. The MT **17** is off schedule if the amount of time that has lapsed since the start of the route differs from an estimated lapsed time by a predetermined amount of time. In the preferred embodiment, the estimated lapsed time is represented by the time value in the corresponding entry of the MT schedule **39***a*. As an example, assume for illustrative purposes only that the predetermined amount of time is five minutes. If the MT manager **29** determines that the difference between the actual lapsed time since the start of the trip and the estimated lapsed time (i.e., the time value in the corresponding entry) is greater than five minutes, then the MT **17** is off schedule. Otherwise the MT **17** is on schedule.

Furthermore, if the MT **17** is off schedule, then the MT manager **29** is also designed to determine whether the MT **17** is early or late. If the actual time lapsed since the start of the trip is greater than the estimated lapsed time, then the MT **17** is late. If the actual time lapsed since the start of the trip is less than the estimated lapsed time, then the MT **17** is early.

Alternatively, the MT manager **29** can be configured to select the corresponding entry in the predefined schedule **39***a* via comparison of time values instead of location values. In this regard, the MT manager **29** can be configured to compare the current time value indicated by the clock **38***a* (e.g., the lapsed time since the start of the route) with the time values in the entries of the MT schedule **39***a*. The corresponding entry is then the entry in MT schedule **39***a* having the estimated time value that differs the least with the actual time value indicated by clock **38***a*.

In this situation, the MT manager **29** compares the current location values from sensor **18** with the location values associated with the corresponding entry of the MT schedule **39***a* in order to determine whether or not the MT **17** is on schedule. If the location values differ by more than a predefined threshold value, then the MT **17** is off schedule. Otherwise, the MT **17** is on schedule. Furthermore, if the actual location of the MT **17** (as defined by the current location values from sensor **18**) is further along the route of travel than the location associated with the corresponding entry (as defined by the location values in the corresponding entry), then the MT **17** is early. If the location associated with the corresponding entry (as defined by the location values in the corresponding entry) is further along the route of travel than the actual location of the MT **17** (as defined by the current location values from sensor **18**), then the MT **17** is late.

In response to a determination by the MT manager **29** that the MT **17** is off schedule, the MT manager **29** is designed to transmit a status message to base station control unit **40** (BSCU; FIG. **1**; essentially, the host computer), which is remotely located from the MT **17**. The status message preferably indicates that MT **17** is off schedule and indicates the amount that MT **17** is off schedule. U.S. Pat. No. 6,363,254 entitled, "System and Method for Enciphering and Communicating Vehicle Tracking Information," describes a system and method for transmitting messages to BSCU **40**. The foregoing document is incorporated herein by reference.

C. Base Station Control Unit (BSCU)

BSCU **40** preferably, although not necessarily, includes a base station (BS) manager **41** designed to monitor the travel of each MT **17** associated with the notification system **10**. In the preferred embodiment, although not limited to this implementation, unlike the MTCU **15**, the BSCU **40** is non-mobile (although it could be in some embodiments). As an example, the BSCU **40** can be located in a central office of a telephone company.

The BS manager **41** can be implemented in software, hardware, or a combination thereof. In the preferred embodiment, as illustrated by way of example in FIG. **3**, the BS manager **41** along with its associated methodology is implemented in software and stored in computer memory **30***b* of a computer system **31***b*. The computer system **31***b* can be similar to computer system **31***a*, as can be seen by comparing FIG. **2** to FIG. **3**. In this regard, the computer system **31***b* may include memory **30***b* for storing the BS manager **41**, and the computer system **31***b* may also include processing element **32***b* for executing software, local interface **33***b* for connecting the various components, input device(s) **34***b* (e.g., mouse, keyboard, etc.), display(s) **35***b*, printer(s) **36***b*, and nonvolatile storage device(s) **37***b*. In the preferred embodiment, transceiver (TX/RX) device(s) **52**, **72** include one or more suitable network interfaces that allow the system **31***b* to communicate data in connection with network **55** (FIG. **1**).

D. Transmission of a Status Message

In order to transmit the status message to the BSCU **40**, the MT manager **29** is configured to transmit the status message, via signal **43** (FIG. **1**), to a communications device **44**, which is capable of transmitting and receiving data to and from devices outside of MT **17**. In this regard, communications device **44** is preferably, although not necessary, a cellular modem configured to transmit and receive wireless signals to and from a cellular network **48** (FIG. **1**).

The communications device **44** can transmit the status message over the voice channels associated with the cellular network **48**, as is done by most cellular modems of the prior art. However, in order to reduce the cost associated with transmitting the travel data through the cellular network **48**, the status message may be communicated through the cellular network **48** via a data or control channel. In this regard, the status message can be encoded by altering identifiers of the communications device **44**, such as the mobile identification number (MIN) or electronic serial number (ESN), transmitted over a data channel of the cellular network **48**. Alternatively, the status message can be appended to a feature request transmitted over the data channel. As examples, U.S. Pat. No. 5,771,445 entitled, "Data Messaging in a Communications Network using a Feature Request," filed on Dec. 15, 1995, by Kennedy, III, et al., and U.S. Pat. No. 5,546,444 entitled, "Methods and Apparatus for Communicating Data Via a Cellular Network Control Channel" filed on Mar. 11, 1994, by Roach, Jr., et al., which are both incorporated herein by reference, discuss the transmission of travel data over a data or control channel associated with the cellular network **48** in further detail. Also, see U.S. Pat. No. 5,526,401, which is incorporated herein by reference and which describes a system for communications over a wireless network as well as text messaging to personal pagers. Also, see U.S. Pat. No. 5,544,225, which is incorporated herein by reference and

which describes a system for communications over a wireless network as well as communication of the location or status information of a mobile item.

In order to transmit the status message through a data channel by manipulating identifiers of the communications device **44**, the MIN of the communications device **44** is altered to include the status message, but the ESN remains fixed to be used as an identifier of the communications device **44**. Therefore, after transmitting the identifiers through the data channel, the communications device **44** can be identified by the ESN, and the status message can be determined from the MIN. Alternatively, the ESN of communications device **44** can be altered while the MIN is kept constant. It should be understood that the invention contemplates modification of the MIN, ESN, both the MIN and ESN, or other identifiers of the communications device **44** to accomplish the dual task of transmitting status messages and identifying the communications device **44**.

Alternatively or in combination with the manipulation of the identifiers of the communications device **44**, the status message can be communicated through the data channel by appending the status message to feature requests that are transmitted through the data channel. In this regard, most feature requests are generated by automatically or manually dialing the star key ("*") followed by a two-digit feature request identification code, and 29 digits of data. Therefore, for each feature request generated, 29 digits of data pertaining to the status message can be appended to the two-digit feature request identification code and sent over the data channel of the wireless cellular network **48**. Other embodiments may transmit different amounts of data following the feature request. By utilizing the manipulation of identifiers or the appendage of travel data to feature requests, less data is transmitted through the voice channels of the cellular network **48**, thereby reducing the cost of transmitting data through the cellular network **48**.

In order for successful communication to exist between MT manager **29** and BS manager **41**, both managers **29** and **41** should be aware of the communications protocol utilized. Therefore, it is desirable for the BS manager **41** or the MT manager **29** to initially transmit an instruction via the data channel of the cellular network **48** to the other manager **29** or **41** indicating the protocol to be utilized. Thereafter, the MT manager **29** transmits messages to the BS manager **41** via the selected protocol.

Cellular network **48** is designed to transmit the status message to a communications device **52** (FIG. **1**) at the BSCU **40**. Although not necessary for implementation, cellular network **48** is preferably designed to transmit to the communications device **52** via a public switched telephone network (PSTN) **55**. In this regard, PSTN **55** establishes a link between communications device **52** and cellular network **48**, whereby cellular network **48** and communications device **52** can communicate via signals **61** and **65**, which are transmitted over land-line connections in the preferred embodiment. Therefore, communications device **52** is preferably designed as or to include a PSTN modem capable of communicating signals **65** between BS manager **41** and PSTN network **55**.

Although the preferred embodiment utilizes a cellular network **48** and a PSTN network **55** to communicate travel data to BS manager **41**, one ordinarily skilled in the art should realize that other configurations are possible. For example, communications device **52** can be configured as a cellular modem capable of communicating signals directly with cellular network **48**. Alternatively, utilization of communications networks **48** and **55** can be completely circumvented by configuring the communications device **44** to communicate directly with communications device **52**, for example. Any embodiment capable of communicating data between MT manager **29** and BS manager **41** should be suitable.

It should be noted that by transmitting a status message only when the MT **17** is off schedule reduces the cost of operating the notification system **10**. In this regard, communication through a cellular network **48** is relatively expensive, and the cost is based on the amount of data transmitted. By refraining from transmitting any data from the MT manager **29** to the BS manager **41** when the MT **17** is on schedule, the amount of data transmitted through the cellular network **48** is reduced, thereby reducing the communications cost associated with the notification system **10**. Therefore, the methodology of assuming the MT **17** is on schedule and of only transmitting data to the BS manager **41** when the MT **17** is off schedule enables the notification system **10** to minimize costs. It should be noted that the foregoing feature is optional.

E. Base Station Manager

BS manager **41** is designed to monitor the travel of the MT **17** and (when employed in the context of advance notification system **10**) is also designed to transmit a notification message to a user when the MT **17** is a predetermined proximity from a particular MT destination or other location. The predetermined proximity can be a particular time or distance that the MT **17** is from the destination. If the MT **17** is off schedule, then the BS manager **41** is further configured to transmit a message to the user indicating that the MT **17** is off schedule.

The BS manager **41** of tracking notification system **10** is designed to determine the current location of the MT **17** and to compare the current location of the MT **17** to a predefined location along the route of travel of the MT **17** in order to determine whether notification should be sent to the user. In this regard, like the MT manager **29**, the BS manager **41** includes a predefined schedule **39***b*, referred herein as the "base station schedule **39***b*," in memory **30***b*. Furthermore, similar to the computer system **31***a* (FIG. **2**), the computer system **31***b* (FIG. **3**) includes a clock **39***b* or other type of counter that can be used to determine the amount of time that has lapsed since the MT **17** started traveling along the MT's route. When the MT **17** begins the route, the MT manager **29** preferably transmits a message to the BS manager **41** via communications devices **44** and **52** indicating that travel on the route is beginning. In response, the BS manager **41**, like the MT manager **29**, begins monitoring the amount of time lapsed since the start of the route.

In the preferred embodiment, the base station schedule **39***b* stored in memory **30***b* matches the MT schedule **39***a* stored in memory **30***a*, although variations in the two predefined schedules **39***a* and **39***b* are possible. Furthermore, the BS manager **41** is configured to retrieve an entry, the "corresponding entry," in the base station schedule **39***b* corresponding with the amount of time lapsed since the MT **17** began travelling its route. In this regard, the BS manager **41** compares the amount of time that has lapsed since the MT **17** began its route (as determined from the clock **38***b* at the BSCU **40**) with the time values in the base station schedule **39***b*. The corresponding entry in the base station schedule **39***b* is the entry having the time value differing the least with the value indicated by the clock **38***b* (i.e., the time value indicating the amount of time that has lapsed since the MT **17** began its route).

The BS manager **41** assumes that the MT **17** is on schedule, unless the BS manager **41** has received a recent status message from the MT manager **29**. As used herein, a "recent status message" is the most recent status message that has been received by the BS manager **41** within a predetermined

time. For example, a recent status message could be the latest status message received within the last five minutes, or at the start of a route, or some other suitable time frame. Therefore, if the BS manager **41** has not received a recent status message from the MT manager **29**, then the BS manager **41** assumes that the location values in the corresponding entry of the predefined base station schedule **39***b* indicate the current location of the MT **17**.

Recalling that BS manager **41** (when employed within the context of notification system **10**) is to transmit a notification message when the MT **17** is a predetermined proximity from a particular location (e.g., a predefined MT stop, etc.), the BS manager **41** then compares the location values in the corresponding entry (which represent the current location of the MT **17**) with location values defining the predetermined proximity. If the location values from the corresponding entry differ from the location values of the predetermined proximity by less than a predetermined amount, then the BS manager **41** transmits a notification message to the user. Otherwise no notification message is transmitted to the user.

Alternatively, the BS manager **41** can be configured to compare time values instead of location values in order to determine whether a notification message should be transmitted to the user. In this regard, the BS manager **41** is designed to compare the time value in the corresponding entry with a predetermined threshold value indicating the amount of time that should lapse between the MT **17** starting its route and arriving at a location associated with the predetermined proximity (e.g., a threshold value indicating how long the MT **17** should travel along its route before notification should be sent to the user). If the threshold value in the corresponding entry exceeds the predetermined time value, then the BS manager **41** causes a notification message to be communicated to the user.

If the BS manager **41** of notification system **10** has received a recent status message from the MT manager **29**, then the BS manager **41** determines the actual location values of the MT **17** based on the location values in the corresponding entry and the recent status message. In this regard, the location values in the corresponding entry represent the estimated location of the MT **17**. The status message indicates how much the MT **17** is off schedule (i.e., how far the MT **17** is from the estimated location). For example, the status message can indicate that the MT **17** is five miles off schedule. Therefore, the BS manager **41** is designed to calculate new location values based on the estimated location and the status message. These new location values represent the actual location of the MT **17**. Therefore, by using the new location values instead of the values in the corresponding entry, the BS manager **41** can determine whether a notification message should be sent to the user according to the methodology described hereinabove.

Furthermore, instead of indicating how far the MT **17** is from the estimated location via location values, the status message can indicate how far the MT **17** is from the estimated location via a time value (e.g., the status message can indicate that the MT **17** is ten minutes late). In this case, the BS manager **41** is designed to adjust the time value in the corresponding entry to account for the MT **17** being off schedule. For example, if the MT **17** is early, then the time value in the corresponding entry is increased a corresponding amount, and if the MT **17** is late, then the time value in the corresponding entry is decreased a corresponding amount. This adjusted time value is then compared with the predetermined threshold value described hereinabove in order to determine whether notification should be sent. If the adjusted time exceeds the predetermined time value, then the BS manager **41** causes a notification message to be transmitted to the user.

In an alternative embodiment, the location values transmitted in the status message can represent the actual location of the MT **17** instead of representing how far the MT **17** is off schedule. In this embodiment, the BS manager **41** can be designed to directly compare these location values with the location values defining the predetermined proximity in order to determine whether notification should be sent to the user. Accordingly, if these location values differ from the location values defining the predetermined proximity by less than a predetermined amount, then the BS manager **41** transmits a notification message to the user. Otherwise, no notification message is sent to the user.

Furthermore, when the BS manager **41** determines that the MT **17** is off schedule, the BS manager **41** preferably transmits an off schedule message to the user, as described hereinbelow, to notify the user that the MT **17** is off schedule. This message can include a variety of information including, but not limited, how much (in time or distance) the MT **17** is off schedule. However, it should be noted that communication of the off schedule message is not a necessary feature.

F. Transmission of Off Schedule and Notification Messages

Once the BS manager **41** of systems **10** and **12** determines that a notification or an off schedule message should be sent to a user, the BS manager **41** is designed to communicate the message to the user via PSTN network **55** and communications devices **72** and **73** (FIG. **1**). In this regard, communications devices **72** and **73** are or include PSTN transceiver modems capable of interfacing with and communicating with PSTN network **55**. BS manager **41** is designed to transmit the message as signal **70** to user communications device **72**, which communicates the message with PTSN network **55** via signal **74**. PTSN network **55** then communicates the message to personal communications device (PCD) **75**, which has a receiver and a transmitter, or a transceiver, denoted by block **73**, in the preferred embodiment.

PCD **75** is configured to notify the user and communicate a notification message, which may merely be a ring in the case of a telephone or pager, optionally accompanied by an audible, text, and/or other message that can be communicated. A PCD **75** is a communications device that can be personally associated with a party and enable point-to-point communications between the notification system **10** and the party. Nonlimiting examples of PCDs **75** are as follows: a personal computer (PC) capable of displaying the notification through e-mail or some other communications software, a television, a wireless (e.g., cellular, satellite, etc.) or non-wireless telephone, a pager, a personal data assistant, a navigation system in a motor vehicle, a radio receiver or transceiver, or any other device capable of notifying the user with some type of user perceptible emission. Many, although not all, PCDs **75** are transportable. Furthermore, a plurality of communications devices **72** may exist in some applications, so that the BS manager **41** can simultaneously or substantially concurrently notify a plurality of parties having respective devices **72** of the impending arrival of the MT **17** at a particular MT stop.

Note that examples of useful PCDs **75** that can be utilized to implement many of the features described in this document are portable wireless telephones having image capabilities (e.g., a Sanyo Model 8100 wireless PCS vision picture phone distributed by Sprint, a Sony Ericsson T300 wireless picture phone distributed by T Mobile, etc.). The Wireless Access Protocol (WAP; developed by the WAP Forum; see WAP Version 2.0 specification at www.wapforum.org, which is

incorporated herein by reference in its entirety) can be implemented in connection with wireless telephones in order to enable these telephones to communicate with (send data packets to and/or receive data packets from) computers or computer-based devices, such as servers, that are communicatively coupled to the World Wide Web (WWW) of the Internet (by way of their respective cellular or PCS networks).

Note further that the PCDs **75** can be non-standard input/output (I/O) devices that can be communicated with over an open network, such as the Internet, using an extended open network protocol, such as extended HTML, as is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,742,845 and 5,905,908, both of which are incorporated herein in their entirety by reference.

Although the preferred embodiment utilizes a PSTN network **55** to communicate a notification or an off schedule message to PCD **75**, one ordinarily skilled in the art should realize that other configurations are possible. For example, other communications networks can be utilized or utilization of communications networks can be completely circumvented by configuring communications device **72** to communicate directly with communications device **73**. Any communications system capable of communicating data between BS manager **41** and PCD **75** should be suitable.

As an example, the BS manager **41** may notify the user of the impending arrival of the MT **17** by transmitting a distinctive ring to the user's message device. In this embodiment, the PCD **75** is a telephone. A distinctive ring is a ringing cadence that is different than the standard ringing cadence used to notify the user of a telephone call. Since the user can different the different ringing cadence, the user is aware that the telephone call corresponds to a notification message from the BS manager **41** indicating that arrival of the MT **17** is imminent. A system for transmitting a distinctive telephone ring as the notification message is fully described in U.S. patent application entitled, "Advance Notification System and Method Utilizing a Distinctive Telephone Ring," assigned Ser. No. 08/762,052 and filed on Dec. 9, 1996, which is incorporated herein by reference.

G. Creation of the MT and Base Station Schedules

It should be noted that the predefined MT schedule **39***a* and the predefined base station schedule **39***b* can be determined or defined by a variety of methodologies. For example, the predetermined schedules **39***a* and **39***b* can be estimated based on various factors, such as the types of speeds likely to be traveled by the MT **17** and the types of traffic conditions expected to be encountered during travel. However, in the preferred embodiment, the predefined schedules **39***a* and **39***b* are defined via a previous delivery of the MT **17** along the same route of travel.

In this regard, delivery vehicles **17** frequently travel the same routes. This is especially true for buses, for example, where a bus routinely travels the same route and makes the same stops. As the MT **17** is traveling the route, the MT manager **29** is configured to periodically read the sensor **18** and to store an entry in memory **30***a*. The entry preferably includes the current location values of the MT **17** indicated by sensor **18** and the time value indicated by clock **38***a* (i.e., the time value indicating the amount of time that has lapsed since the start of the travel on the route). Therefore, when the MT **17** reaches the end of the route, the MT manager **29** has stored numerous entries which define the predefined MT schedule **39***a*. This predefined schedule **39***a* may also be used as the base station schedule **39***b*. Other methodologies may be employed to define the MT schedule **39***a* and/or the base station schedule **39***b*.

FIG. **4**A is a flow chart depicting the operation and functionality of the MT manager **29** in embodiments where the MT manager **29** determines the MT schedule **39***a* while traveling along the route of travel. As shown by blocks **76** and **77**, the MT manager **29** determines whether a sample period has expired while the MT **17** is traveling on the route (i.e., before the MT **17** has finished the route). The sample period is a predetermined amount of time that lapses between samples, which will be discussed in more detail hereinbelow. Preferably, the MT clock **38***a* indicates whether the sample period has expired. For example, when the clock **38***a* is a counter, the sample period can be defined as a predetermined number of counts by the clock **38***a*. Therefore, the MT manger **29** can determine whether the sample period has expired by counting the number of increments or cycles of the clock **38***a*.

When the MT manager **29** determines that the sample period has expired, the MT manager **29** samples the current location values of the MT **17** and the time value of the clock **38***a*. In other words, the MT manager **29** determines the current location values of the MT **17** and the current time value from the clock **38***a* and stores these values in the next entry of the MT schedule **39***a*, as depicted by blocks **78** and **79**. This process repeats until the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** has completed the route. Thereafter, the MT manager **29** can use the MT schedule **39***a* to track the MT's progress on future deliveries that utilize the route defined by the MT schedule **39***a*.

H. Alarm System

The MT manager **29** can be configured to compare the corresponding entry and the location values supplied from the sensor **18** in order to determine whether an alarm signal should be generated. In this regard, the MT manager **29** preferably subtracts the location values in the corresponding entry from the current location values of the MT **17** (as determined by the sensor **18**) to produce a deviation indicator. Therefore, the deviation indicator indicates how far the MT **17** has deviated from the route defined by the MT schedule **39***a*.

The MT manager **29** is then designed to compare the deviation indictor to an alarm threshold value to determine whether an alarm signal should be transmitted to the BS manager **41**. The alarm threshold value corresponds with the distance that the MT **17** can deviate from the predefined MT schedule **39***a* before an alarm is generated. Therefore, if the deviation indicator exceeds the alarm threshold value, the MT manager **29** transmits an alarm message to the BS manager **41** via communications devices **44** and **52**. Preferably the alarm message includes the current location values produced by the sensor **18** so that the travel of the MT **17** can be tracked by the BS manager **41**.

Providing an alarm message, as described hereinabove, helps to discover when an MT **17** has been stolen or hijacked and helps law enforcement agencies to recover the MT **17** by tracking the travel of the MT **17** once the MT **17** has been stolen. In this regard, the MT manager **29** automatically generates an alarm message and monitors travel of the MT **17** once the MT **17** deviates from the MT schedule **39***a* by a predetermined amount. The alarm message can be used by law enforcement agencies to discover when the MT **17** has been stolen and where the MT **17** is located, thereby helping law enforcement agencies to recover the MT **17** once it has been stolen.

Because the deviation indicator is defined relative to points along the MT's route of travel, an alarm can be generated when the MT **17** deviates from the route by a relatively small amount. For example, the MT manager **29** can be configured

to transmit an alarm signal when the MT **17** deviates from its predefined route by approximately 20 feet. Other distances, both less than and greater than 20 feet, may be used to trigger an alarm signal. However, it is generally desirable that a certain amount of deviation (depending on the expected driving conditions and the precision of sensor **18**) be allowed so that the MT **17** can reasonably maneuver through traffic without generating false alarms.

In addition, the alarm threshold value is selectable in the preferred embodiment. This value can be entered into the computer system **31***a* by a human operator at the MT **17** via input device **34***a*, for example. Alternatively, this value can be communicated from the BS manager **41** to the MT manager **29** via communications devices **44** and **52** at or around the start of the route. The alarm threshold value can also be hardwired into the computer system **31***a* with switches that can be manipulated by a human operator in order to selectively change the value. Many other methodologies known in the art may be used for selecting the value of the alarm threshold value.

It should be noted that in other embodiments, it may be desirable for the MT manager **29** to generate an alarm signal based on comparisons of the location of MT **17** to a predefined geographical region instead of the route defined in MT schedule **39***a*. For example, it may desirable to define a region that is 30 miles (or some other distance) from the start of the route (or some other particular location). Then, the MT manager **29** can be configured to generate an alarm signal if the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** is outside of this predefined region based on the signals **27** received from sensor **18**. Such a methodology for generating an alarm signal is particularly suitable for applications where only local deliveries are expected, for example.

There are various methodologies for determining whether the MT **17** is outside of the predefined region. For example, in one embodiment, the MT manger **29** subtracts the current location values determined from signals **27** with the location values of a particular point (e.g., the location values of the start of the route, when the region is defined as any point within a certain distance of the start of the route) to derive the deviation indicator. As in the preferred embodiment, if the deviation indicator has a magnitude greater than the alarm threshold value, the MT manager **29** generates an alarm signal. Otherwise, no alarm signal is generated.

Further note that U.S. Pat. No. 5,751,245, which is entirely incorporated herein by reference describes an alarm system that can be employed when a vehicle substantially departs from a predetermined route, for the security of transported cargo.

I. Alternative Embodiment of the MTCU

In an alternative embodiment of the MTCU, the "corresponding entry" of the MT schedule **39***a* can be defined as the entry having location values defining a location along the route that was most recently passed by the MT **17**. Therefore, the MT manager **29** monitors the signals **27** from the sensor **18** until the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** passed a location corresponding with one of the entries in the MT schedule **39***a*. The MT manager **29** determines whether the MT **17** is early or late via the techniques described hereinabove using the aforementioned entry as the corresponding entry.

After determining whether to generate an alarm signal and/or status message for the corresponding entry (and after generating the alarm signal and/or the status message, if necessary), the MT manager **29** monitors the signals **27** again for the next corresponding entry. Therefore, when a corresponding entry is detected (i.e., when the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** passed a location corresponding with the location values in one of the entries of the MT schedule **39***a* for the first time), the MT manager **29** analyzes the values of the sensor **18**, the clock **38***a*, and the corresponding entry to determine whether an alarm signal and/or status message should be generated. Thereafter, the MT manager **29** waits until the next corresponding entry is detected before determining whether to generate another status message. Therefore, the MT manager **29** determines whether a status message should be communicated to the BS manager **41** each time the MT **17** passes a location corresponding with the location values in one of the entries of the MT schedule **39***a*, and the MT manager **29** refrains from communicating status messages as the MT **17** travels between locations defined by the data in the MT schedule **39***a*. In other words, the only time the MT manager **28** transmits a status message is when the MT **17** is passing a location corresponding with one of the entries in the MT schedule **39***a* or a short time thereafter.

However, since it is possible for the MT **17** not to pass any of the locations defined in the predefined schedule when the MT **17** deviates from the route (e.g., when the MT **17** is stolen), the MT manager **29** preferably determines whether to communicate an alarm signal periodically rather than waiting for one of the locations defined by the MT manager **29** to be passed.

J. Overall Notification System Operation

A possible implementation of use and operation of the notification system **10** and associated methodology are described hereafter. For illustrative purposes only, assume that the MT **17** is to travel a predetermined route to a destination where the MT **17** is to pick up or deliver an item. For example, assume that the MT **17** is a bus that is to travel to a bus stop to pick up a passenger and that this passenger is to receive a notification signal when the MT **17** is ten minutes from the bus stop.

Initially, the MT schedule **39***a* is stored in the MT manager **29** and the base station schedule **39***a* is stored in the BS manager **41**. In the preferred embodiment, the MT schedule **39***a* was created and stored in the MT manager **29** as the MT **17** previously traveled along the same route. A copy of the MT schedule **39***a* is preferably transferred to the BS manager **41** via any suitable methodology and stored as the base station schedule **39***a*. For example, the MT schedule **39***a* can be copied to a magnetic disk and later downloaded in memory **30***b* or a copy of the MT schedule **39***a* can be transmitted to the BS manager **41** via communications devices **44** and **52**.

In embodiments where the MT schedule **39***a* is not previously created and stored by the MT manager **29**, the MT schedule **39***a* is preferably downloaded into both the BS manager **41** and the MT manager **29**. It is possible to download the base station schedule **39***a* in the BS manager **41** and to transmit a copy of the base station schedule **39***a* to the MT manager **29** via communications devices **44** and **52** prior to the start of the route. Any methodology for respectively storing the MT schedule **39***a* and the base station schedule **39***b* into the MT manager **29** and the BS manager **41** is suitable.

When the MT **17** begins travel, the MT manager **29** stores the current value of the MT clock **38***a* and begins to monitor the amount of time that lapses from that point until completion of the route. Furthermore, as can be seen by block **82** of FIG. **4**B, the MT manager **29** also transmits a start signal to the base station manger **41** via communications devices **44** and **52** indicating that travel of the MT **17** is beginning. In response, the BS manager **41** begins to monitor the lapsed time as well.

In many situations, it may be desirable to begin monitoring travel of the MT **17** after the MT **17** starts its route. This is particularly true when unpredictable delays usually occur close to the staring point of the route. For example, when the MT **17** is a school bus taking children home from school, unpredictable delays may occur close to the starting point (i.e., at the school) where traffic is often congested. Therefore, instead of transmitting a start signal to the BS manager **41** when the MT **17** begins traveling, the MT manager **29** waits for a predetermined time period or until the MT **17** has traveled a predetermined distance from the starting point before transmitting the start signal. For example, the MT manager **29** can monitor the travel of the MT **17** from the starting point via the sensor **18** and transmit the start signal once the MT manager **29** determines that the MT has traveled one-eighth of a mile from the starting point. In this regard, location values representing a predetermined point along the route of travel and one-eighth of a mile from the starting point can be stored in the MT manager **29**. When the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** passes this point, the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **29** has traveled more than one-eighth of a mile and transmits the start signal.

Preferably, the predetermined schedules **39***a* and **39***b* both use the point where the MT manager **29** transmits the start signal as the starting point for the route. Therefore, the distances and times stored in the predetermined schedules **39***a* and **39***b* are relative to the predetermined location where MT manager **29** transmits the start signal instead of the actual starting point of the route. However, this is not a necessary feature, and the location values and time values stored in the predetermined schedules **39***a* and **39***b* may be relative to other points both along the route of travel and outside of the route of travel.

As the MT **17** travels, GPS satellites **23** transmit wireless signals **21** to sensor **18** that can be analyzed through techniques well known in the art to determine a position (i.e., current location values) of the sensor **18** (and, therefore, of the MT **17**) relative to a particular reference point, as depicted by block **85** of FIG. **4**B. For example, in GPS systems, the intersection of the Equator and the Prime Meridian is typically used as the reference point. Sensor **18** receives the signals **21** and determines location values representing the position of the MT **17** relative to the reference point and transmits these values to MT manager **29**.

The MT manager **29** compares the current location values of the MT **17** with the location values in the MT schedule **39***a* in order to determine which entry in the MT schedule **39***a* corresponds with the current location of the MT **17**, as shown by block **87** of FIG. **4**B. The corresponding entry is preferably the entry having location values that most closely match the current location values received from the sensor **18**.

After selecting the corresponding entry, the MT manager **29** retrieves the location values associated with the corresponding entry and subtracts these values from the current location values received from the sensor **18** and used by the MT manager **29** to select the corresponding entry. Referring to block **91** of FIG. **4**B, the resulting value or values (referred to as the deviation indicator) indicates the MT's deviation from the MT schedule **39***a*. As shown by block **93** of FIG. **4**B, the MT manager **29** then compares the deviation indicator to the alarm threshold value. If the deviation indicator exceeds the alarm threshold value, then the MT manager **29** transmits an alarm message to the BS manager **41**, as depicted by block **95** of FIG. **4**B. The alarm message includes the current location of the MT **18**, and the BS manager **41** tracks the location of the MT **17** based on the alarm messages transmitted from the MT manager **29**. The information provided by the alarm message can be used by law enforcement agencies to track the MT **17**.

After determining whether an alarm message should be generated, the MT manager **29** retrieves the time value associated with the corresponding entry and compares it with the time value indicated by clock **38***a* (i.e., the time value indicating the amount of time elapsed since the start of the route). The MT manager **29** also retrieves a predetermined threshold value indicating how much the MT **17** can deviate from the MT predefined schedule **39***a* before the MT **17** is considered to be off schedule. Referring to block **97** of FIG. **4**B, if the difference of the foregoing time values exceeds the predetermined threshold value, then the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** is off schedule. However, if the difference of the foregoing time values is less than the predetermined threshold value, then the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** is on schedule.

When the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** is on schedule, the MT manager takes no further action regarding the current location values received from the sensor **18**. The MT manager **29** merely receives a new set of location values from the sensor **18** and analyzes the new set of values according to the methodology described herein. However, when the MT manager **29** determines that the MT **17** is off schedule, the MT manager **29** generates a status message and transmits the status message to the BS manager **41**, as depicted by block **99** of FIG. **4**B.

In this regard, the MT manager **29** determines whether the MT **17** is early or late and how far the MT **17** is off schedule (e.g., how many minutes or miles the MT **17** is from the location specified by the location values in the corresponding entry). The MT manager **29** then generates a status message including this information and transmits the status message to the BS manager **41** via communications devices **44** and **52**.

In order to reduce the number of transmissions between the MT **17** and the base station control unit **40**, the MT manager **29** preferably (although not necessary) transmits the status message to the BS manager **41** only if another status message has not been transmitted within a predetermined delay period. For example, if a status message has been sent within a predetermined time period, for example, within the last five minutes, then the MT manager **29** refrains from sending another status message. It should be apparent to one skilled in the art that other delay periods can be selected to update the location of the MT **17** at a desirable rate.

Furthermore, it is possible to selectively control the delay period. For example, when the MT **17** stops to make a delivery or is slowly traveling through congested areas, it may be desirable to increase the delay period to decrease the number of status messages sent to the BS manager **41**. Alternatively, when the MT **17** is traveling quickly and the location of the MT **17** is changing rapidly, it may be desirable to decrease the delay period. Furthermore, when the MT **17** enters an area where no immediate deliveries or pick ups are to made, there is no immediate need to monitor the MT **17** and the delay period can be increased. The delay periods can be predefined in memory **30***a*, can be controlled by the operator of the MT **17**, or can be controlled via signals transmitted from remote locations to the MT manager **29** (e.g., from the BS manager **41** to the MT manager **29** via communications device **44**). Other methodologies for controlling the delay periods are possible.

Another way to reduce the number of transmissions of status messages at desired times is to selectively increase the predefined amount that the MT **17** should be off schedule before a status message is transmitted to the base station

control manager **41**. Similar to the changes in the delay periods described above, the changes to the aforementioned predefined amount can be predefined in memory **30***a*, can be controlled by the operator of the MT **17**, or can be controlled via signals transmitted from remote locations to the MT manager **29** (e.g., from BS manager **41** to MT manager **29** via communications device **44**).

The input device **34***a* (FIG. **2**) can be used to input changes in the delay period and/or in the predefined amount that the MT should be off schedule before a status message is transmitted. In this regard, the input device **34** a may include switches, buttons, a key pad, or any other device that can be manipulated by the operator of the MT **17** to input the changes.

When the BS manager **41** receives a status message, the BS manager **41** stores the status message in memory **30***b*. If desired, the BS manager **41** transmits a message to the user via communications devices **72** and **73** indicating that the MT **17** is off schedule and indicating how much the MT **17** is off schedule in response to the status message.

The BS manager **41** periodically determines whether a notification message should be sent to the user indicating that arrival of the MT **17** at the bus stop is imminent (e.g., indicating that the MT **17** is ten minutes from the bus stop). In this regard, the notification message should be sent to the user when the MT **17** is within a predetermined proximity (i.e., a predetermined time or distance) from the bus stop. To determine whether the notification message should be sent, the BS manager **41** compares the location values of the current location of the MT **17** to the location values of the predetermined location (e.g., the bus stop). If the difference between the location values of the current location of the MT **17** and the bus stop is greater than a threshold value, then the MT **17** is too far from the bus stop for notification to be sent to the user. Therefore, a notification message is not generated. However, if the difference between the location values of the current location of the MT **17** and the bus stop is less than the threshold value, then a notification message is transmitted to the user via communications devices **72** and **73**, unless a similar notification message (i.e., a message indicating that the MT **17** is off schedule by the same amount) associated with the bus stop has previously been sent to the user.

In determining the current location of the MT **17**, the BS manager **41** assumes that the MT **17** is on schedule unless a recent status message has been received. Therefore, the MT manager **41** determines which entry in the base station schedule **39***b* corresponds to the assumed location of the MT **17**. In this regard, the MT manager **41** compares the time values in the base station schedule **39***b* with a lapsed time value indicating how much time has lapsed since the MT **17** started the route. The entry having a time value closest to this lapsed time value is the corresponding entry. The location values associated with the corresponding entry represent the assumed location of the MT **17**. Unless a recent status message has been received, the BS manager **41** uses these location values as the current location values to be compared against the location values of the predetermined location (e.g., the bus stop) in order to determine whether a notification message should be sent to the user. However, if a recent status message has been received, then the BS manager **41** determines the current location values of the MT **17** based on the recent status message and/or the location values associated with the corresponding entry.

For example, if the recent status message includes location values indicating the actual location of the MT **17**, then the BS manager **41** uses these values to compare with the coordinate values of the predetermined location (e.g., the bus stop). However, if the status message only indicates how much the MT **17** is off schedule, then the BS manager **41** calculates the current location values of the MT **17** based on the status message and the location values associated with the corresponding entry in the base station schedule **39***b*.

Once the current location values of the MT **17** have been determined, the BS manager **41** compares the current location values of the MT **17** with the location values of the predetermined location (e.g., the bus stop) as previously described hereinabove to determine whether a notification signal should be transmitted to the user.

The operation of the preferred embodiment has been described hereinabove in the context where the MT manager **29** compares location values to determine the corresponding entry in the MT predefined schedule **39***a*. Therefore, the MT manager **29** compares the time value associated with the corresponding entry in the MT schedule **39***a* to determine whether or not the MT **17** is on schedule. However, it should be apparent to one skilled in the art upon reading this disclosure that time values may be compared by the MT manager **29** to determine the corresponding entry in the MT predefined schedule **39***a*.

In this regard, the entry in the MT schedule **39***a* having a time value most closely matching the lapsed time value indicated by the clock **38***a* (i.e., the value indicating the amount of time lapsed since the start of the route) can be selected as the corresponding entry. As a result, the MT manager **29** determines how far the MT **17** is off schedule based on distance rather than time. For example, if the difference between the current location values of the MT **17** (as determined by the sensor **18**) and the location values associated with the corresponding entry is greater than a predetermined threshold value, then the MT **17** is off schedule. Otherwise, the MT **17** is on schedule. Furthermore, regardless of which embodiment is used to determine how far the MT **17** is off schedule, the MT manager **29** can indicate how far the MT **17** is off schedule via the status message using either distance values, time values, or any other type of values known in the art for indicating the position of the MT **17**.

It should be noted that the preferred embodiment has been described hereinabove assuming that the sensor **18** is capable of determining the MT's location based on signals received from satellites **23**. However, this is not a necessary feature, and any type of sensor **18** that may be used for determining the MT's position along the route of travel is sufficient. For example, the sensor **18** may be designed as an odometer that indicates how far the MT **17** travels. Therefore, the predetermined points along the route of travel used to determine whether the MT **17** is on or off schedule can be defined in the schedules **39***a* and **39***b* relative to their distance from the starting point of the route. In other words, the location values stored in the schedules **39***a* and **39***b* correspond to distance values indicating how far the predetermined points are from the starting point of the route. Therefore, the MT manager **29** can determine how far the MT **29** is from any of the predetermined points by determining how far the MT **17** has traveled from the starting point of the route.

K. User Notification Preferences and Reports

BS manager **41** is designed to receive the travel data transmitted from MT manager **29** and to monitor the travel of the MT attached to the MTCU **15** by monitoring the travel of the MTCU **15**. In this regard, BS manager **41** is designed to include a data manager **67** configured to receive the travel data via signal **66** from communications device **52**, as depicted by FIG. **5**A. Data manager **67** is designed to store the travel data for each MTCU **15** being monitored in a database

94, which is preferably a relational database having a number of tables **68**, but other databases are possible, for example, flat-file database, inverted-list database, one made up of lookup tables, etc.

As is well known in the art, a relational database is a database or database management system that stores information in tables—rows and columns of data—and conducts searches by using data in specified columns of one table to find additional data in another table. In a relational database, the rows of a table represent records (collections of information about separate items) and the columns represent fields (particular attributes of a record). In conducting searches, a relational database matches information from a field in one table with information in a corresponding field of another table to produce a third table that combines requested data from both tables. For example, if one table contains the fields MOBILE-THING-ID, PACKAGE-ID, and LOAD-DATE, and another contains the fields STOP-TIME, MOBILE-THING-ID, and STOP-LOCATION, a relational database can match the MOBILE-THING-ID fields in the two tables to find such information as the possible pickup stop locations for packages transported by the MT or the delivery times (stop times) for all packages loaded on the MT within the last day. In other words, a relational database uses matching values in two tables to relate information in one to information in the other.

Although not limited to this configuration, in one embodiment, among others, the database **94** includes, among other things and in general, an MT data table **68***a* having information pertaining to the MT, such as an ID, type (package, mobile vehicle type, etc.), model, whether the thing has air conditioning, etc.; a user data table **68***b* having information regarding user preferences; a communication method data table **68***c* having information pertaining to various communications methods that can be utilized for contacting a user (which can be linked to the user preferences); a stop location data table **68***d* having information pertaining to stop locations of MTs; an MT (MT) travel data table **68***e* having information concerning travel status of MTs, an advertisement data table **68***f* having advertisements that can be communicated to a PCD **75**; a PCD data table **68***g* having information pertaining to the devices **75**; an authentication data table **68***h* having authentication information or indicia to be described later in this document, a PCD travel data table **68***i*, having information pertaining to travel of a tracked PCD **75**, a traffic flow predicament data table **68***j*, a package data table **68***k*, a failure states data table **68***l*, a tasks data table **68***m*, sub-tables of the foregoing, etc. The tables **68** include related fields for linking and relating various elements in the various tables **68**.

Furthermore, in this embodiment, MTCUs are related to identification values in MT data table **68***a*, and these values are correlated with travel data in MT travel data table **68***e*. Travel data can include information such as, but not limited to, the MTCU's coordinate values (i.e., the MTCU's **15** location relative to a predetermined reference point), information regarding delivery status of items to be delivered, and/or the times that the MTCU **15** reached particular locations or stops. The database **94** is configured to contain all of the desirable information to monitor the status of each MTCU **15** associated with the notification system **10**.

Referring to FIG. **5**B, data manager **67** is configured to include a monitoring mechanism **69**. The functionality of monitoring mechanism **69** is depicted in FIG. **5**C. As shown by blocks **88***a*-**88***f* of FIG. **5**C, monitoring mechanism **69** is configured to receive travel data from MTCU **15** and to compare the travel data with predefined preference data stored in the database **94**, particularly the user data table **68***b*. Preference data, as used herein, is data that defines the preferred parameters indicating when to notify a user of the impending arrival of the MTCU **15** at a particular location. It can be system defined or user defined. For example, preference data can be coordinates of a desired location whereby a notification message is sent to a user when the coordinates of the MTCU **15** pass the coordinates of the desired location. In this context, the desired location defined by the preference data can, for example, represent a location that is a predetermined distance from the user house, place of delivery or pickup, or other particular location. Therefore, when the user receives the notification message, the user is aware of the approximate location of the MTCU **15** or of the distance of the MTCU **15** from a predetermined point (i.e., of the proximity of the MTCU **15** from a predetermined point or location). Consequently, the user can prepare for the arrival of the MTCU **15**, since the user knows that arrival of the MTCU **15** is imminent.

As an alternative embodiment, the preference data can define a certain time before the MTCU **15** reaches a destination or other particular location (i.e., a proximity of the MTCU **15** from the predetermined point). In this regard, the monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to determine the location of the MTCU **15** from the travel data stored in MT travel data table **68***e* of database **94**. The monitoring mechanism **69** is then designed to calculate the time it will take for the MTCU **15** to reach the location specified by the preference data based on the location of the MTCU **15** and the location of the desired destination. In calculating the travel time, the monitoring mechanism **69** can be configured to make assumptions about the time necessary to travel to the specified location. For example, if the route of the MTCU **15** is through congested areas, the monitoring mechanism **69** can assume a certain delay time for traveling certain distances, and if the route of the MTCU **15** is through less congested areas, the monitoring mechanism **69** can assume another delay time that is less than the delay time assumed for the congested areas. Alternatively, the monitoring mechanism **69** can use an average of the times it has previously taken for MTs **17** to travel over the same route during other deliveries. Therefore, by comparing the travel data transmitted from MTCU **15** with preference data, the monitoring mechanism **69** can determine when to send a notification message to a user.

As depicted by blocks **88***a*, **88***b*, **88***g*, and **88***h* of FIG. **5**C, the preference data can be stored in user data table **68***b* of the database **94** (FIG. **5**B). As stated hereinbefore, the MT travel data table **68***e* of the database **94** is preferably configured to store the travel data associated with each MTCU **15** in a respective entry uniquely identified with the associated MTCU **15**. Accordingly, each data entry can also include the preference data associated with each MTCU **15** that corresponds with the entry, or the preference data can be stored in separate entries which are correlated with corresponding MTCU entries.

Once the monitoring mechanism **69** determines that a notification message should be sent to a user, the data manager **67** is designed to communicate a message to a user at a remote location via PSTN network **55** and communications devices **72** and **73** (FIG. **1**). In this regard, communications devices **72** and **73** are preferably PSTN modems capable of communicating with PSTN network **55**. Data manager **67** is designed to transmit the message as signal **70** to user communications device **72**, which communicates the message with PTSN network **55** via signal **74**. PTSN network **55** then communicates the message to communications device **73**, which is preferably configured to communicate the message to a PCD **75**. PCD **75** is configured to notify the user of the impending arrival of the MTCU **15**. As mentioned, PCD **75** can be a

computer capable of displaying the notification through e-mail or some other communications software. Alternatively, PCD **75** can be a telephone, a pager or any other device capable of notifying a user.

1. User Activation

In order for data manager **67** to transmit a notification PCD **75**, data manager **67** should be aware of certain contact information enabling data manager **67** to contact the PCD **75**. In this regard, data manager **67** is configured to include a user data table **68***b* (FIG. **5**) containing contact information pertaining to each user that is to receive a notification message from the data manager **67**. In the preferred embodiment, the user table **68***b* is capable of uniquely identifying each user of the notification system **10**, and has entries that specify contact information associated with each user. Each entry preferably includes a user identification number unique to each user that identifies the information in the entry as relating to a particular user.

Each entry preferably includes a value specifying the medium through which the user has specified to be contacted. For example, the value can indicate that the user is to be contacted through e-mail, in which case the entry should also include the user e-mail address. Alternatively, the value can indicate that the user is to be contacted through a telephone call or a page. In these situations, the entry should also include the user telephone number or pager number. The value can also indicate multiple methods of notification. For example, the value can indicate that the user is to be first contacted via telephone. If there is no answer when the data manager **67** attempts to deliver a notification message, then the data manager **67** can be configured to attempt notification via paging. If paging fails, then the data manager **67** can be configured to attempt notification through e-mail or other computer oriented messaging system. Accordingly, the order of notification media should be indicated by the data in the user data table **68***b*, and the contact information necessary for each method selected (e.g., the telephone number, pager number, and e-mail address of the user) should also be included in the entry. It should be noted that various other communications media and combinations of communications media can be employed.

The contact information (and preference data, which will be discussed in further detail hereinafter) can be manually entered or downloaded into the user data table **68***b* in order to activate a user for the notification system **10**. In this regard, a system operator can receive the contact information (and preference data) via a telephone call or e-mail, for example, and manually enter the information into the notification system **10**.

However, in the preferred embodiment, the contact information is automatically entered into the user data table **68***b* via a message manager **82**, which is depicted by FIG. **5**B. The functionality of the message manager **82** is shown in FIG. **5**D. The message manager **82** is configured to receive, via communications device **72** (FIG. **1**), an activation request from a user at PCD **75**, as shown by blocks **90***a*, **90***b*, **90***f* of FIG. **5**D. In this regard, the request can be transmitted to PCD **75**, via any suitable technique known in the art, and the BSCU **38** can be configured to include a plurality of communications devices **72**, as depicted by FIG. **5**A.

Each of these communications devices **72** can be configured to simultaneously communicate with a respective user of the notification system **10**. The information received by the communications devices **72** can be transmitted to message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B) via any suitable technique, such as time division multiplexing, for example. Each user communications device **72** can also be designed to communicate with different communications media. For example, one user communications device **72** can be designed as a modem to communicate with a modem associated with a user. This user communications device **72** can be designed to send data configured to prompt the user to return data pertaining to contact information. An example of such a prompt, could be a template or web page where the PCD **75** (i.e., a computer in this case) displays the template, and the user can fill in fields of the template with the appropriate contact information. Alternatively, another one of the user communications devices **72** can be designed to receive a telephone call from a user and to prompt the user to enter data through touch-tone signaling. Other user communications devices **72** can be designed to communicate with other types of communications media known in the art.

Once the message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B) receives the request from the user, the message manager **82** is designed to determine that the request is a request for activation (i.e., a request for the user to be entered into the notification system **10**). In response, the message manager **82** transmits data to the user, via user communications device **72**, in order to prompt the user to transmit the necessary contact information, as shown by block **90***g* of FIG. **5**D. In this regard, the message manager **82** is configured to determine the type of medium used by the user to communicate the request for activation and to transmit a prompt to the user that is compatible with this medium. For example, when the user is communicating via a modem, the message manager **82** is configured to transmit signals compatible with the user modem in order to prompt the user to enter the appropriate contact information. This data could be in the form of a web page transmitted through the Internet, or the prompt could simply be messages transmitted through e-mail or some other data communications system.

When the user is communicating via a PCD **75** in the form of a telephone, the message manager **82** can be designed to transmit recorded messages to the user. The user can then select or enter data by transmitting touch-tone signals in response to the prompting messages, as is commonly known in the art. The message manager **82** may be configured to communicate with the user in other formats and media known in the art.

Once the message manager **82** receives the contact information from the user, the message manager **82** is designed to store the contact information as an entry in the user data table **68***b*, as depicted by block **90***h* of FIG. **5**D. When the monitoring mechanism **69** determines that a user should be notified of an impending arrival of an MTCU **15**, the monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to send a notification command to message manager **82**. The notification command may include travel data to be sent to the user, such as data indicating that a particular MT is a certain proximity from the destination defined by the preference data. In response, the message manager **82** is designed to retrieve the contact information associated with the user from the user data table **68***b* and to determine how to contact the user based on the retrieved contact information, as depicted by blocks **90***c* and **90***d* of FIG. **5**D.

The message manager **82** is then designed to transmit a message compatible with the medium previously selected by the user for notification, as depicted by block **90***e* of FIG. **5**D. The message can include any travel data sent to the message manager **82** from the monitoring mechanism **69**. For example, when the contact information indicates that a telephone call is the preferred medium for notification, the message manager **82** can send a recorded telephone message to the telephone number that is indicated by the contact infor-

mation retrieved from the user data table **68***b*. If the monitoring mechanism **69** included travel data indicating the time of arrival in the command to message manager **82**, then message manager **82** can be configured to include a message indicating the expected time of arrival at a particular location. Alternatively, the same information can be sent via e-mail, facsimile, page or other type of communications medium to the user, depending on the preferences selected by the user during activation.

During activation, the message manager **82** can be further configured to prompt for and receive preference data (i.e., data pertaining to when the user is to be notified) from the user, as shown by block **90***g* of FIG. **5**D. In this regard, the message manager **82** can be designed to prompt the user to return information indicating which MTCU **15** is to be monitored on behalf of the user and when the notification is to be sent to the user. For example, the user can be prompted to select an MTCU **15**, a destination (or other particular location), and a notification preference to indicate a time or distance that the MTCU **15** should be from the selected destination or other particular location when a notification is to be sent to the user. In response, the user specifies, through any known suitable communications technique, which MTCU **15** the user wishes the notification system **10** to monitor and how the user wishes to be notified of an impending arrival of the selected MTCU **15** at the selected destination. If the user knows the coordinate values of the destination, the user can simply transmit the coordinate values to the data manager **67**. If the user selects the destination without supplying the coordinates of the destination (e.g., the user selects a destination from a list of locations) then the data manager **67** is preferably designed to determine the coordinate values transparently.

In some instances, the user may be aware of the vehicle number and stop number used by the notification system **10** to identify a particular MTCU **15** and destination. For example, many buses are associated with a commonly known bus number, and the stops along the bus' route are associated with commonly known bus stop numbers. The data manager **67** can be configured to recognize the MTCU **15** and destination associated with the bus number and stop number entered by the user in order to register the user with the notification system **10**.

As depicted by block **90***i* of FIG. **5**D, the message manager **82** is preferably designed to automatically transmit to monitoring mechanism **69** the preferences selected by the user that pertain to when the user is to be notified. The monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to store this preference information in the database **94** and designed to relate it to the selected MTCU **15**.

Once a user becomes activated with the notification system **10**, the user may make changes to the preferences specified by the user, as shown by blocks **90***j*-**90***m* of FIG. **5**D. The message manager **82** is configured to receive the request for changes from the user. The message manager **82** can be configured to request the user to resubmit all contact information and preference data, as updated, or can be configured to request the user to only submit desired changes to the contact information or preference data. After receiving the new data, the message manager **82** is configured to update the contact information in user data table **68***b* and to send a request to monitoring mechanism **69** to update the preference data relating to the monitoring of travel data. In response, monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to update the preference data in database **94**, as shown by blocks **88***g* and **88***h* of FIG. **5**C.

It should be further noted that as described hereinabove, the preference data and travel data can be automatically received and stored in the database **94** and selected MTs **17** can be automatically monitored by the notification system **10**.

2. Requests for Travel Data

In addition to providing the user with automatic advance notification of an impending arrival of an MTCU **15**, the notification system **10** can also be used to provide the user with travel data on demand, as depicted by blocks **90***n*-**90***p*, **90***d* and **90***e* of FIG. **5**D. In this regard, the user communications device **72** is designed to receive a request for travel data from a user. For example, the user may call the communications device **72** on a telephone and through touch-tone signaling select, among other options, an option to discover the distance and/or time a particular MTCU **15** is from the destination specified by the user preference data or specified by the user during the request for travel data. The user communications device **72** is designed to transmit the user selections to message manager **82**. Based on the selections, the message manager **82** is designed to determine that the user message is a request for travel data. In response, the message manager **82** sends a request to monitoring mechanism **69** to retrieve the requested database **94**.

The monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to receive the request for travel data from message manager **82** and to interpret the request in order to determine which travel information from the MT travel data table **68***e* of the database **94** is desired by the user, as depicted by blocks **88***i* and **88***j* of FIG. **5**C. The monitoring mechanism **69** is then designed to retrieve from the database **94** the desired travel data and to transmit the retrieved travel data to message manager **82**, as shown by blocks **88***k* and **88***l* of FIG. **5**C.

In the case where the user desires to know the time and/or distance the selected MTCU **15** is from the selected location, the monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to retrieve from MT travel data table **68***e* of database **94** the coordinates of the destination specified by the user (if not provided in the request for travel data) and the current coordinates of the MTCU **15** of interest to the user. Prior to retrieving this data, the monitoring mechanism **69** can be configured to update the travel data for the MTCU **15** by transmitting an update request to the MTCU **15** via MT communications device **52**. Similar to the user communications devices **72**, a plurality of MT communications devices **52** may be located at the BSCU **38** in order for multiple MTs **17** to simultaneously communicate with the monitoring mechanism **69**, as depicted by FIG. **5**B. The MT communications devices **52** are configured to communicate with the monitoring mechanism **69** through any suitable technique, such as time division multiplexing, for example.

After receiving the update request via communications devices **52** and **44**, the MT manager **29** is designed to transmit the current values of the MT travel data to the monitoring manager **69**. By updating the MT travel data before responding to the user request for travel data, the monitoring mechanism **69** can ensure the accuracy of the response transmitted to the user.

After retrieving the coordinate values from the database **94**, the monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to calculate the distance that the MTCU **15** is from the selected destination based on the coordinate values of the MTCU **15** and the coordinate values of the destination. If the preference data and/or request for travel data indicates that the user is to be notified when the MTCU **15** is a certain time from the selected destination, the monitoring mechanism **69** is then designed to determine the estimated time of arrival of the MTCU **15** at the destination based on this distance. As described previously, the monitoring mechanism **69** is designed to either assume that certain distances will take a certain amount of time to travel based on the type of traffic conditions usually encoun-

tered on the route or to calculate an average time previously required for MTs **17** of the system to travel the route. To increase the accuracy of the calculations, the route should be divided into sections where the time required to travel each section is independently calculated. Furthermore, time delays associated with scheduled stops or deliveries can be factored into the calculations by assuming a delay time for each stop or delivery depending on the type of stop or delivery expected.

After calculating the distance and, if requested, the time the MTCU **15** is from the destination, the monitoring mechanism **69** is configured to transmit the calculated values to the message manager **82**. In response, the message manager **82** is designed to transmit the calculated information to the user via user communications device **72**. Since the user already has an established communications connection with user communications device **72** when requesting travel data, there is no need for the message manager **82** to consult the contact information in the user data table **68***b*. The message manager **82** can simply transmit the data over the same connection. However, if desired, the message manager **82** may consult the contact information in the user data table **68***b* to determine the user preferences in notification and notify the user of the distance and/or time accordingly.

The monitoring mechanism **69** can also be configured to transmit a command to a mapping system **86** (FIG. **5**B) to transmit mapping data to the message manager **82**, if the user request for travel data or user preference data in database **94** includes a request for a mapping. The mapping system **86** may be any system known in the art for producing and supplying a user with mapping data for rendering a display of a map. The command to the mapping system **86** preferably includes the coordinate values of the MTCU **15** and the destination. In response, the mapping system **86** transmits to message manager **82** mapping data sufficient for forming a display map with the locations of the MTCU **15** and the destination graphically displayed by the display map. The message manager **82** is designed to retrieve the contact information for the user requesting the travel data and is further configured to determine an address (e.g., an IP address or other type of address indicating how the mapping data is to be routed to user) associated with the user for sending the mapping data. The message manager **82** is then designed to transmit the mapping data to the retrieved address, which preferably identifies a computer associated with the user. When the PCD **75** (i.e., a computer in this case) receives the mapping data, the user computer is configured to render a graphical display depicting a map that shows the MT's location relative to the destination on the map.

If desired, the monitoring mechanism **69** can be configured to transmit the coordinate values of the MTCU **15** to the mapping system **86** each time the coordinate values are updated. The user request for travel data can request this feature or the user can indicate this desire in the preference data submitted during activation. Accordingly, for each update, the mapping system **86** is designed to transmit updated mapping data to the user computer **75** via message manager **82**, as previously described. As a result, the position of the MTCU **15** is updated, and the user can monitor the progress of the MTCU **15** on the display map rendered by the computer **75**.

Although the preferred embodiment illustrates the requests for travel data by determining the distance the MTCU **15** is from a particular location or by determining the time the MTCU **15** is from the particular location, other information can be used to indicate the proximity of the MTCU **15** from the particular location. For example, the message transmitted to the user in response to a request for travel data can indicate that the MTCU **15** is currently at another particular location or landmark, preferably known to the user. Any other information indicating the proximity of the MTCU **15** from a particular location can be used.

3. Establishing User Preferences

Initially, a user at remote location establishes communication with the message manager **82** via communications devices **72** and **73**. As used herein, the term "remote location" shall refer to any location off the site of the BSCU **38**. The user can establish communication via a telephone, an e-mail message, the Internet, or any other suitable communication medium. The message manager **82** preferably transmits a list of options to the user, such as whether the user would like to activate a monitoring of a particular MT, to retrieve travel data for a particular MT or to modify preferences previously selected by the user in an earlier communication session with the message manager **82**. In response, the user selects the activation option.

The message manager **82** then prompts the user to select certain preferences. For example, the message manager **82** can request the user to identify a particular MTCU **15** that the user wishes the notification system **10** to track and a particular destination for the selected MTCU **15**. If the user knows the identification number of the MTCU **15** or MT stop number used by the notification system **10** to identify the particular MTCU **15** and/or destination, the user can simply transmit a message including this information. As an example, the bus numbers and/or bus stops of commercial and state operated buses are usually available to the public. Therefore, the user may be aware of the bus number and/or stop number of a particular bus that the user wishes to ride, and the user can simply transmit the bus number and/or stop number to the message manager **82**. Also, the user should be able to specify other identifying information such as the day or days of desired travel and the time of day of desired travel.

In the embodiment where the user is expecting to receive a package from a particular delivery vehicle, the user may be aware of the package number or delivery number used by the notification system **10**. Therefore, by specifying the package number and the address that the vehicle is to deliver the package, the particular MTCU **15** of the vehicle that is to deliver the package can be located by the notification system **10**. In this regard, a database should be defined by the operators of the notification system **10** that relates package numbers to MTCU **15** numbers.

Alternatively, if the user is unable to identify a particular MT or MTCU **15**, the message manager **82** can send information to the user that can be used to help the user identify a particular MTCU **15**. For example, the message manager **82** can transmit to the user a list of buses or a list of MT stops to the user. The user can use this information to select a particular MTCU **15** that is suitable to the user.

Also, the message manager **82** can send map data from mapping system **86** to the user. The user can then view the map and select points on the map where the user would like to know when the MTCU **15** reaches the selected point. The points available for selection can be predetermined, such as scheduled bus stops or other types of vehicle stops, or the user can be allowed to freely select any point on the map. In either case, the mapping logic preferably transmits the coordinates of the selected points to the message manager **82**, which can use this information to not only identify the selected destination, but to also choose an appropriate MTCU **15**.

The message manager **82** also prompts the user to enter contact information such as how the user would like to be notified of an impending arrival of the selected MTCU **15** at the selected destination. In response, the user selects a noti-

fication medium or combinations of media to be used to notify the user and supplies the necessary information to enable communication of the notification. For example, if the user selects a telephone as a notification medium, then the user provides a telephone number. In addition, if the user selects a computer as the notification medium, then the user provides a suitable address for the computer, such as an e-mail address or IP address. If the user selects a pager as the notification medium, then the user provides a pager number. It should be apparent to one skilled in the art when reading this disclosure that other types of notification media are possible. After receiving the desired contact information from the user, the message manager **82** stores the contact information in the user data table **68***b*.

The message manager **82** also prompts the user to transmit travel data preferences, which is information pertaining to when the user would like to be notified. For example, the user can select to be notified a certain time before the selected MTCU **15** is to arrive at the selected destination. Also, the user can choose to be notified when the selected MTCU **15** is within a certain distance of the destination, and the user can choose to be notified when the selected MTCU **15** is a certain number of deliveries or stops away from the destination.

Since the monitoring mechanism **69** should have access to the travel data preferences in order to determine when a notification is appropriate, the message manager **82** preferably transmits the travel data preferences to the monitoring mechanism **69** along with a unique identification number that identifies the user and a unique identification number identifying the selected MTCU **15**. The unique identification number identifying the selected MTCU **15** can be the MT number entered by the user provided that the number entered by the user identifies the MTCU **15** to be monitored. In turn, the monitoring mechanism **69** stores this in database **94**. Entries associated with a particular MTCU **15** can be related together in the database **94**. For example, each entry associated with a particular MTCU **15** can be stored, and each of the entries can have a pointer pointing to another one of the entries associated with the particular MTCU **15**. Therefore, entries associated with a particular MTCU **15** can be easily located. Other methods known in the art for categorizing the entries and correlating the entries with a particular MT or with the travel data of a particular MT are also possible.

Once the message manager **82** has received the desired contact information and travel data preferences from the user, the communication between the message manager **82** and the user can be terminated. The BS manager **41** should now have sufficient information to monitor the selected MTCU **15**. If the user wishes to change the contact information and/or the travel data preferences, the user can reestablish communication with the message manager **82**. The message manager **82** preferably recognizes the user requests as an update rather than an activation and prompts the user to transmit the new information. In this regard, the message manager **82** can prompt the user for all of the desired contact information and/or preference data, similar to the activation session, and simply replace the previously stored contact information and/or preference data, or the message manager **82** can prompt the user for only the information to be updated and then merely update the previously stored information.

It should be noted that the information transferred between the user and the message manager **82** can be interfaced with the message manager **82** through a human operator during the activation session or update session described hereinabove and during other sessions, which will be described further hereinbelow. The human operator can prompt the user for certain information through a telephone call or other suitable medium of communication and can enter the response of the user into the message manager **82**.

4. Monitoring the MT

The monitoring mechanism **69** of FIGS. **5**B and **5**C, upon receiving travel data from MTCU **15**, stores the travel data (in the preferred embodiment, coordinate values) relating to the MTCU **15**, in MT travel data table **68***e* of database **94** that is configured to contain travel data and is associated with the MTCU **15**. After accessing an entry for storing travel data, the monitoring mechanism **69** compares the current travel data (either received from the MTCU **15** or selected from a predetermined or assumed set of travel data, as described hereinabove) with the user preferences stored in user data table **68***b* in order to determine whether a notification should be sent to the user. Alternatively, the monitoring mechanism **69** can be configured to periodically poll each entry in the MT data table **68***a* and to compare the travel data corresponding to each entry with the corresponding preference data in user data table **68***b* to determine which users should receive a notification.

In analyzing each entry, the monitoring mechanism **69** preferably subtracts the current coordinate values in the accessed entry of the MTCU **15** with the coordinate values previously stored in travel data **68***e* that indicate the destination location selected by the user. If the resulting value is less than a predetermined value, then the monitoring mechanism **69** sends a notification command to message manager **82** instructing the message manager **82** to notify the user of the impending arrival of the MTCU **15**. This predetermined value corresponds to the distance that the MTCU **15** should be from the destination before a notification is sent to the user. Preferably, this predetermined value is calculated from or is included in the preference data supplied by the user during activation or during an update to the activation.

The monitoring mechanism **69** can also send the notification command to the message manager **82** based on the estimated time the MTCU **15** is from the destination. After calculating the value indicating the distance of the MTCU **15** from the destination, the monitoring mechanism **69** can estimate how long it will take for the MTCU **15** to reach the destination by assuming that the MTCU **15** can travel certain distances in a certain amount of time. In order to increase the accuracy of the notification system **10**, the monitoring mechanism **69** can vary the time for the distances according to the type of traffic that is typically encountered at the MT's location and route of travel. If traffic conditions are usually congested along the MTCU's route, then the monitoring mechanism **69** can assume higher rates of time. Furthermore, if the travel data indicates that the MTCU **15** has a number of MT stops prior to reaching the destination, the monitoring mechanism **69** can factor in a delay time for each stop depending on the type of the stop.

Once the monitoring mechanism **69** determines the MTCU's expected time of arrival at the destination, the monitoring mechanism **69** can determine whether the user should be notified based on this estimated time. If the estimated time is less than a predetermined value indicating the desired estimated time of arrival chosen by the user, then the monitoring mechanism **69** sends the notification command to the message manager **82**.

The message manager **82**, in response to the notification command from the monitoring mechanism **69**, retrieves the contact information from user data table **68***b* indicating how the user desires to be notified. Utilizing the contact information, the message manager **82** then sends a message to the user at remote location. The monitoring mechanism **69** preferably includes certain travel data in the notification command, such

as the MTCU's location. Consequently, the message manager **82** is able to include this travel data with the message sent to the user. For example, the message may indicate that the MTCU **15** (and, therefore, that the MT attached to the MTCU **15**) is a certain amount of time or distance from the destination or the message may indicate the MTCU's specific location, perhaps with reference to street names and/or street blocks.

If the contact information indicates that the user wishes to have map data sent to a computer at the remote location, the message manager **82** sends a request for map data to monitoring mechanism **69**. In response, the monitoring mechanism **69** sends to the mapping system **86** the necessary data (e.g., the coordinates of the MTCU **15** and the destination) for the mapping system **86** to transmit the appropriate mapping data. The mapping system **86** transmits the mapping data to message manager **82** which again utilizes the contact information retrieved from user data base **78** to communicate the mapping data to the appropriate PCD **75** at remote location. The PCD **75** then displays the mapping data in graphical form so that the user can see the MT's location relative to the destination within the map graphically displayed by the PCD **75**.

The notification message sent to the user indicates the impending arrival of the MTCU **15** at the destination previously selected by the user. Accordingly, the user can prepare for the arrival of the MTCU **15** knowing approximately how long it should take for the MTCU **15** to arrive at the destination.

Note that U.S. Pat. No. 6,317,060, which is incorporated herein by reference, describes a communication handler that can be implemented in or in connection with the manager **41** for enabling communication of a large number of concurrent or substantially concurrent notification communications (perhaps due to a large number of vehicles and/or users).

5. Requesting Travel Data

During the monitoring process described hereinabove, the user can discover the status of the MTCU **15** or of the MT attached to the MTCU **15**, on demand, by contacting the BS manager **41** and requesting information pertaining to the travel data stored in the database **94**. In this regard, the user establishes communication with the message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B) via communications devices **72** and **73**. The medium used for communication can be any suitable medium known in the art (e.g., telephone, e-mail, Internet, cellular phone, etc.). The preferred will be discussed hereinafter with the user establishing communication via telephone, although other media of communication are also suitable.

After the telephone connection is established, the message manager **82** prompts the user with a series of recorded questions or options in order to determine the user request. The user responds to these prompts through touch-tone signaling which is well known in current telephony communications systems. Initially, the message manager **82** prompts the user to indicate whether the call is an activation, an update of an activation, or a request for travel data. The user selects the appropriate touch-tone number to indicate that the user is requesting travel data.

The message manager **82** receives and interprets the touch-tone signal to determine that the user is requesting travel data. In response, the message manager **82** prompts the user to transmit an identification number of the MTCU **15** of concern for the user. This prompt can include information to aide the user in selecting an MTCU **15**. The user responds by transmitting a series of touch-tone signals that indicate the identification number or other unique data of the particular MTCU **15** of concern for the user. The message manager **82** receives and interprets the touch-tone signals and determines which MTCU **15** is selected by the user based on the received touch-tone signals.

The message manager **82** can then, if desired, prompt the user to indicate which travel data the user desires to know. For example, it is likely that the user may want to know how far the MTCU **15** is from the destination or how long it should take the MTCU **15** to arrive at the destination. However, the user may want to know other information, such as, but not limited to, how many MT stops the MTCU **15** encounters en route or the type of MT that is en route, etc. The user responds with touch-tone signals, as appropriate, to indicate what information the user is requesting.

The message manager **82** then transmits a request for data to the monitoring mechanism **69**. The request for data includes the unique identification number used to identify the MTCU **15**, as well as any other information needed by the monitoring mechanism **69** to provide the desired information. For example, the message manager **82** may also transmit information indicating that the user wishes to discover information pertaining to the type of MT that is en route. The monitoring mechanism **69**, in turn, retrieves the desired travel data from the database **94**.

After retrieving the desired travel data, the monitoring mechanism **69** transmits the retrieved data to the message manager **82**, which communicates the data information to the user in a message transmitted to the user. The message can include the travel data retrieved by the monitoring mechanism **69** or can be formed to indicate the information contained by the travel data. For example, when communication is over a telephone connection, a recorded message can be formed by the message manager **82** indicating the distance the MTCU **15** is from the destination based on the travel data sent to the message manager **82**. When communication is via modem signals, travel data can be transmitted to the user by the message device **82**. In either case, the contents of the message is based on the travel data retrieved by the monitoring mechanism **69**. Since a communications line between the user and message manager **82** is already established in order for the user to make the request for travel data, the message manager **82** preferably transmits the data to the user over the established communication connection. When the user desires to receive map data (indicated by the selection of an option during the request for travel data or by the user preferences stored in the database **94**), the monitoring mechanism **69** transmits a map generation command and travel data of the selected MTCU **15** to mapping system **86**. Mapping system **86** then transmits graphical data to message manager **82**.

Message manager **82** communicates the graphical data to PCD **75** which is capable of generating a map display based on the graphical data. In order to communicate this data, the message manager **82** retrieves the user contact information from the user data table **68***b*. The contact information indicates the address (and/or other pertinent information) of the PCD **75** so that the message manager **82** knows where to transmit the graphical data. By viewing the map display generated by the PCD **75**, the user can determine the location and estimated time of arrival of the MTCU **15**. The map display preferably shows the intended route of travel by the MTCU **15** and any scheduled MT stops along the route.

Since the notification system **10** stores certain travel information in order to monitor the travel of an MTCU **15** for providing an advance notification of an impending arrival of an MTCU **15**, the notification system **10** can also provide an easy and low cost way for a user to access information pertaining to the MTCU **15**, on demand. Accordingly, the user does not have to wait for preselected preferences to be satis-

fied before learning of the MTCU's (and, therefore, the MT's) location and/or estimated time of arrival. The user can monitor the travel of the MTCU **15** at any time by submitting a request for travel data and can, therefore, know the location and status of the MTCU **15** before receiving an advance notification signal that is based on comparisons between the MTCU's travel data and the user preselected preferences. As a result, the user can better prepare for an arrival of any particular MTCU **15** or MT attached to the MTCU **15** associated with the notification system **10**.

It should be apparent to one skilled in the art that at least a portion of the functionality of the data manager **67** can be implemented by the MT manager **29**, if desired. In this regard, preference data and/or travel data for the MTCU **15** can be stored in the computer system **31***a* coupled to the MTCU **15**. Accordingly, it is possible for the MT manager **29** to determine when to transmit a notification to the user and to transmit a notification to the user via communication device **52** and **72**. However, such an implementation can increase the complexity and cost of the notification system **10** and is therefore generally not desirable.

L. Alternative Embodiment for Communications

U.S. Pat. No. 5,732,074, which is incorporated herein by reference, describes systems for enabling communications between mobile vehicles and a remote computer, via standardized network communications links. In one embodiment, the links include the Internet and a controller area network used in vehicles. A TCP/IP stack is implemented in the controller. In another embodiment, each of the vehicles has an Internet address or designation associated with it.

The systems and methods described in this patent can be employed in connection with a notification system **10** and can be implemented to accomplish the many features described in this document.

M. Response Systems/Methods

Response systems (and methods) are provided for notification systems. Several nonlimiting exemplary embodiments of possible response systems will be described in detail hereafter.

The architecture of one such embodiment, among others, is shown in FIG. **6** and is generally denoted by reference numeral **100**. Although not limited to this particular implementation, this response system **100** is implemented in the notification system **10** of FIG. **1**.

1. Response System Feedback Analyzer

a. First Embodiment

The response system **100**, particularly the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*, can be configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **7**A: causing initiation of or monitoring a notification communication to a PCD **75** associated with a party, as shown in block **101** of FIG. **7**A; and during the notification communication, receiving a response from the party via the party's PCD **75**, indicating that the party associated with the PCD **75** has received notice, as indicated by block **102** in FIG. **7**A. The response can be produced by any system or method that verifies that any party or one or more specific parties received the notification communication. Some such systems and/or methods can accomplish this by verifying or detecting the physical presence of such party(ies) at the PCD **75**. Some such systems and/or methods can accomplish this by having the notification-receiving party exercise a physical action that can be converted to an electronic signal and communicated back to the notification system **10**.

Although not necessary for implementation, the foregoing methodology can be implemented, and in the preferred embodiment is implemented, by software associated with the message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B), the monitoring mechanism **69** (FIG. **5**B) and/or the data manager **67** (FIG. **5**A) associated with the BS manager **41** (FIGS. **1** and **3**). See response system feedback analyzer in FIGS. **1** and **3**. The blocks of FIG. **7**A essentially represent the high level architecture of such software, i.e., the response system feedback analyzer in FIGS. **1** and **3**. Note, however, that it is possible to have special purpose digital or analog hardware designed to implement the same or similar methodology, and such hardware could be associated with the BSCU **40**.

In this embodiment, the initiating step **101** is performed by the transmitter **72** associated with the BSCU **40** (FIG. **1**), under the control of the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41**. The notification communication passes through the network **55** (FIG. **1**) to the receiver **73** (FIG. **1**) associated with the PCD **75**.

The response from the notification-receiving party is first produced by a party associated with the PCD **75**. The response is electronically recognized by a response system feedback mechanism **100***b* of the PCD **75**. The response system feedback mechanism **100***b* causes the transmitter **73** (FIG. **1**), also associated with the PCD **75**, to communicate suitable feedback data, which ultimately is communicated in some form to the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*.

In one embodiment, among other possible embodiments, the PCD **75** is a conventional and commercially available touch-tone telephone, and the response can be accomplished by having the notification-receiving party depress one or more appropriate keys on the keypad associated with the telephone. In this embodiment, the response system feedback mechanism **100***b* is already built into the telephone, in the sense that there are already on-board the phone, system components for recognizing keypad keys that are depressed and for generating dual frequency tones that can be carried across the communications medium. Also, the telephone is equipped with a transmitter **73** for communicating the dual frequency tones. In this embodiment, the BSCU **40** is equipped with a receiver **45** (communicatively coupled to local interface **33***b* of FIG. **3**) for receiving and decoding the dual frequency tone that results from depression of a telephone button. Such receivers/decoders **45** are well known in the art of telephony and are readily commercially available. For instance, the star (*) button could be assigned for indicating that the receiving party has in fact received the notification communication. Once the receiving party depresses this key and once the BS manager **41** recognizes that it has been depressed by detecting this event, then the BS manager **41** can definitively conclude receipt of the notification communication by the party associated with the PCD **75**.

More than one key can be used to convey multiple instructions or indications from the notification-receiving party to the BS manager **41**. The BS manager **41** can be equipped with an instruction lookup mechanism **84**, for example, a lookup table, database, or other mechanism for identifying what each received key stroke means.

In some embodiments, more than one party may have access to the PCD **75**, and it may be desirable to give each party their own personal code of one or more keys, so that when a response is given by a party, the party can enter his/her own personal code, and the BS manager **41** will therefore be advised as to which party actually received the notification.

In another embodiment, the PCD is a conventional telephone and the BSCU **40** is equipped with voice recognition software. The receiving party confirms receipt of the notifi-

cation communication with any suitable voice command, for instance, "notification received." Voice recognition systems (e.g., IVR) are well known in the art.

In another embodiment, when the PCD **75** is a computer, one or more keys on the keyboard, a mouse click on a button provided in a screen image, etc., can be assigned for indicating that the receiving party has in fact received the notification communication. In this embodiment, software associated with the computer recognizes the key depression or mouse click and communicates occurrence of same back to the notification system **10**. The software can be a conventional web browser and the notification communication could involve sending an HTML page (or other markup language) to the computer that can be operated upon by the web browser. An applet(s) associated with the HTML page can cause a window to appear on the computer screen with a selectable button, for example, "Notification Received" and when selected by the mouse, the applet can cause the browser to return an HTML page from the computer back to the notification system **10**, which in this case would have a web server that can accept the HTML page response and analyze the content. As an alternative, the response system **100** could be designed so that any input from an input/output (I/O) peripheral device connected to the notification-receiving party's computer could be recognized as a confirmation of receipt by the party of the notification. Also, note that the response can occur during the same communication session as the notification or in a separate communication within a reasonable time period.

Any response data, including confirmation of receipt of a notification, that is received by the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* can be stored, if desired, with party contact records **86**, as shown in FIG. **6**, which can take the form of a table, database, etc.

It is also possible that the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* can be designed so that the party's response indicates that the party associated with the PCD **75** is willing to accept or refuses a task, or job, associated with the notification. The task can be virtually anything that is to be performed by the party. For example, in the context of a taxi service, a BSCU **40** could send a notification via a telephone to a taxicab, and a message could be played over the telephone asking the party if another party can be picked up at a particular location within a prescribed time period. The party associated with the taxicab could send a response back to the BSCU **40**, indicating either acceptance or refusal of the task, by actuating a key that is coded to each of these responses. Note that U.S. Pat. No. 5,945,919, which is entirely incorporated by reference, describes an automated dispatch system, in which the response system **100** can be employed.

As another example, consider a public bus transit system that communicates bus arrival/departure information to a PCD **75** and wherein a party can send a response indicating receipt of notice and indicating that the party will be a passenger on the bus. This information would be helpful with respect to bus scheduling.

It is also possible, in the context of a notification system **10** employed in connection with a service (e.g., cable installation, telephone line installation, etc.) to be performed at a destination, that the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* can be designed so that the party's response indicates that the party associated with the PCD **75** needs to have an additional service performed at the destination or that additional equipment will be needed at the destination. As an example in the context of a telephone line installation, the notified party could indicate that it wishes two lines to be installed instead of the one which was ordered, so that the telephone service vehicle operator is notified in advance of the requisite additional service/equipment.

It is also possible, in the context of a notification system **10** employed in connection with a service to be performed at a destination, that a work order (of work to be performed at the stop location) is communicated to the PCD **75** during the notification communication. Furthermore, the notification message can indicate to the notified party an option that can be selected by the notified party to connect with and communicate with the driver of a vehicle or a party at the BSCU **40** or another location, in order to enable the notified party to discuss the content of the work order.

b. Second Embodiment

FIG. **7**B is a flow chart illustrating another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer of the present invention, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**. In this embodiment, a notified party can cause a connection to be made with a representative that knows the particulars of or that can access the particulars of a pickup or delivery of an item or service in connection with a stop location.

In this embodiment, the response system **100**, particularly the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*, can be configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **7**B: monitoring travel data in connection with an MT **17** that is destined to pickup or deliver (an item or service) at a stop location, as indicated at block **105**; causing initiation of a notification communication to a PCD **75** based upon the travel data (e.g., when the MT **17** is in close proximity, has just departed a prior stop location, etc.), as indicated at block **106**; and during the notification communication, enabling a party associated with the PCD **75** to select whether or not to communicate, for example, via voice by way of a telephone or via text by way of a computer network link, with a party having access to particulars of the pickup or delivery, as indicated at block **107**, so that a discussion can be had regarding the particulars of the pickup or delivery.

In some embodiments, where there is a BSCU **40** associated with the notification system **10**, the BS manager **41** causes communicative coupling between the PCD **75** of the party and a communications device associated with the party having access to particulars of the pickup or delivery. The latter could be located at a call center, at a place that is local to the BSCU **40**, etc.

In some embodiments, where there is a BSCU **40** associated with the notification system **10**, the BS manager **41** causes communicative coupling between the PCD **75** of the party and a PCD **75** associated with the MT **17** or person in the MT **17**.

A message can be provided during the notification communication that includes a work order or description of the reason why the stop is being made. This can be very useful in connection with, for example, services to be performed at the stop location. The party being called can communicate with somebody associated with the pickup/delivery service to correct information that is in error on the work order, add additional tasks to the work order, delete tasks on the work order, etc.

As a further option, the BS manager **41** can be designed to enable the party to select an option that indicates to the notification system **10** that the work order is proper. For instance, a voice recording over a telephone link may say "Hit the pound key if the work order is accurate or hit the star key to

talk with a representative." Selection of the pound key would confirm to the BS manager **41** the order and the MT **17** would travel to the stop location, as scheduled, and perform the requisite pickup/delivery task. Selection of the star key would cause the BS manager **41** to connect the notified PCD **75** with a communications device of a party having access to particulars of the pickup or delivery.

c. Third Embodiment

FIG. **7**C is a flow chart illustrating yet another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer of the present invention, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**. A response from a notified party is used to change one or more tasks associated with a pickup or delivery of an item or service associated with a stop location.

In this embodiment, the response system **100**, particularly the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*, can be configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **7**C: monitoring travel data in connection with a MT **17** that is destined to pickup or deliver an item or service at a stop location, as indicated at block **108**; causing initiation of a notification communication (which may include a message indicating one or more tasks to be accomplished at the stop location) to a personal communications device based upon the travel data, as indicated at block **109**; and during the notification communication, enabling a party associated with the personal communications device to change one or more tasks associated with the pickup or delivery, as indicated at block **110**.

The tasks can be stored in and changed within database **94** (FIG. **5**A), particularly in tasks table **68***m*. The BS manager **41** can be designed to change any of the tasks, based upon one or more inputs from the notified party. A set of options can be provided by the BS manager **41** to the notified party, for example, via IVR, text, screen prompts, or otherwise, and the party can select one or more of the options. Possible options are as follows: an option that indicates that the one or more tasks are proper or confirmed (so go ahead and follow through with the scheduled pickup or delivery; an option that enables the party to change the one or more tasks or scope thereof; an option to enable adding a task; or an option to enable deletion of a task.

This embodiment has numerous applications. One nonlimiting example (e.g., pizza delivery, package delivery, etc.) involves indicating in a message associated with the notification communication the amount of a bill and enabling the notified party to confirm the amount and/or the intention to pay the amount when the MT **17** reaches the stop location for the pickup or delivery. In some embodiments, the system can be configured so that the notified party can make payment during the notification communication session. The BSCU **40** can be designed to prompt the notified party to enter a credit card number to be used to pay the bill. The card number can also be stored in user preferences and retrieved by the manager **41** pursuant to an appropriate prompt from the notified party during the notification communication session.

As another nonlimiting example of such an application, consider a configuration where a service, such as a telephone installation, is being provided at the stop location. Furthermore, assume that there is a work order for installation of a single telephone line. An advertisement (from table **68***f* of database **94** of FIG. **5**A) could be provided to the notified party during the notification communication that indicates that a second line can be installed for half the price of the first line and for half of the monthly subscription fee. An option to select or deselect the second line installation can be provided to the notified party. Accordingly, the notified party has the ability to add or change the tasks to be performed at the stop location.

This idea can be applied to other contexts: changing the number of goods (e.g., groceries, etc.) to be delivered or picked up; changing the number of rooms to be carpet cleaned, changing the level of service (each having a different price), etc.

d. Fourth Embodiment

FIG. **7**C is a flow chart illustrating still another exemplary implementation of a response system feedback analyzer **100***a*, which is optionally implemented as at least part of the architecture, functionality, and operation of the BS manager of FIGS. **1** and **3**. In essence, a response from a notified party is used to select one of a plurality of times for a pickup or delivery of an item or service to occur at a stop location.

In this embodiment, the response system **100**, particularly the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*, can be configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **7**D: directly or indirectly monitoring travel or travel data in connection with one or more MTs **17** in order to track them, as indicated at block **114**; initiating or engaging in a notification communication session with a PCD **75**, when appropriate, based upon impending arrival or departure of one or more MTs **17** in relation to a location as indicated at block **115**; during the notification communication session, providing a plurality of arrival and/or departure times in relation to the location and enabling selection of at least one of the times (directly or indirectly; the selection can be of an item that is associated in some way with the time so that the selection is essentially indirect), as indicated at block **116**; and causing an MT **17** to arrive at or depart from the location at substantially the selected time, as indicated at block **117**.

As for step **114**, the arrival or departure times associated with MTs **17** can be stored and updated in database **94** (FIG. **5**A), particularly in MT travel data table **68***e*. One or a plurality of MTs **17** can be monitored by the BS manager **41** for purposes of carrying out this embodiment.

With respect to step **115**, the notification communication session can be initiated by the BS manager **41** based upon user or system defined preferences stored in database **94** (FIG. **5**A). User and system defined preferences have been described elsewhere in this document. The predefined preferences may include, for instance, (a) a proximity to the location or (b) a designated location or region that is near the location at issue and that when encountered by one or more MTs **17**, will result in the communication session.

The arrival or departure times of the one or more MTs **17** in relation to the location may be determined, at least in part based upon actual travel status information of the MTs **17** or at least in part based upon existing scheduling of the MTs **17** (which may or may not be updated).

As an example of a mechanism for triggering a notification in accordance with step **115**, the user may indicate that the user would like to receive a notification when a pickup vehicle is one hour from arriving at a particular stop location. The BS manager **41** may determine, based upon the monitoring of travel data, that a particular vehicle **17** can arrive in one hour or, if a stop is skipped by such vehicle **17**, then the vehicle **17** can arrive in 35 minutes instead of one hour. The BS manager **41** can be designed to initiate the notification communication

under these circumstances and provide the different options during the notification communication, one of which can be selected by the notified party.

Thus, as can be seen from the aforementioned example, during the communication session, first and second times may be offered that corresponds substantially with a scheduled time and a sooner time. Moreover, different fees may be charged for selection of the different times. Or, a fee may be charged for selection of the sooner time.

As another example of a mechanism for triggering a notification in accordance with step **115**, the user may indicate via user preferences that the user would like to receive a notification when a vehicle is one hour from departing from a location. The BS manager **41** may determine, based upon the monitoring of travel data, that two different vehicles are available, one departing in 15 minutes and the other departing in one hour. The BS manager **41** can be designed to initiate the notification communication under these circumstances to provide the two different options, one of which can be selected by the notified party.

With respect to step **116**, the BS manager **41** can be easily designed to provide options to the notified party and to receive selections during the notification communication session. The set of options can be provided by the BS manager **41** to the notified party, for example, via voice recording, IVR, text, screen prompts, or otherwise, communicated to the notified PCD **75**. The notified party can select one or more of the options on the notified PCD **75** via, for example, IVR, entering text, pressing touch pad keys to send a DTMF signal that means something to the BS manager **41**, selecting a screen prompt via a mouse or touch screen, selecting a link on an HTML screen communicated by the BS manager **41** or a source controlled by or affiliated with the BS manager **41**, etc.

In the case of a plurality of monitored MTs **17**, a number of times can be provided to correspond respectively with the MTs **17**. Furthermore, the notified party can select one of the plurality of times for an MT **17** to arrive at or depart from the location, which will identify to the BS manager **41** which one of the MTs **17** should be caused to arrive at or depart from the location.

With respect to step **117**, the BS manager **41** can cause, directly or indirectly, an MT **17** to arrive at or depart from the location at the selected time by any of a variety of possible systems and/or methods. One method involves having the selected time communicated to a PCD **75** associated with the appropriate MT **17** so that the operator of the appropriate MT **17** knows of the scheduled arrival or delivery at the location and can make it happen. In alternative embodiments, the steps **114-117** are performed in a PCD **75** associated with a tracked MT **17**, in which case the operator will be advised of the scheduled arrival or delivery at the location and can make it happen.

Another method in which the BS manager **41** can cause the MT **17** to arrive at or depart from the location at the selected time, in a case where the MT **17** can be remotely controlled, would be to communicate appropriate data or control signals to the MT **17**.

This embodiment has numerous applications, but are not all listed here for simplicity.

e. Fifth Embodiment

Another embodiment of a response system feedback analyzer **100***a*, among others, is shown in FIG. **8**. This embodiment envisions more than one notification communication, perhaps regular notifications, occurring between the notification system and a party, and enabling a party to influence how future notification communications are to occur, after the first one. This response system feedback analyzer **100***a* can be summarized by the following steps: initiating a first notification communication to a PCD associated with a party, as indicated by block **111** in FIG. **8**; receiving a response communication from the party's PCD, as indicated by block **112** in FIG. **8**; and modifying the manner in which future notification communications are to be sent to the party, based upon the response, as indicated by block **113** in FIG. **8**. Although not necessary for implementation, the foregoing methodology can be implemented, and in the preferred embodiment is implemented, by software associated with the BS manager **41**. The blocks of FIG. **7** would represent the high level architecture of such software. Note, however, that it is possible to have special purpose digital or analog hardware designed to implement the methodology. Such hardware can be easily associated with the BSCU **40**.

In this embodiment, the initiating step **111** is performed by the transmitter **72** associated with the BSCU **40** (FIG. **1**), under the control of the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* of the BS manager **41**. The notification communication passes through the network **55** (FIG. **1**) to the receiver **73** (FIG. **1**) associated with the PCD **75**.

The response from the receiving party is communicated by the transmitter **73** (FIG. **1**), under the control of the response system feedback mechanism **100***b* associated with the PCD **75** that is associated with the receiving party. In one embodiment, the PCD **75** is a conventional touch-tone telephone, and the response can be accomplished by having the receiving party depress one or more appropriate keys on the keypad of the telephone **75** to communicate one or more instructions. In this embodiment, the BSCU **40** is equipped with a receiver (communicatively coupled to local interface **33***b* of FIG. **3**) for receiving and decoding the dual frequency tone that results from depression of a telephone button. For instance, the star (*) button could be assigned for indicating an instruction from the receiving party. Once the receiving party depresses this key and once the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* of the BS manager **41** recognizes that it has been depressed by detecting this event (with receiver **72** under the control of the BS manager **41**), then the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* of the BS manager **41** can act upon the instruction.

As mentioned previously, more than one key can be used in order to convey one or more instructions from the notification-receiving party to the notification system **10**. Furthermore, the PCD **75** could also be a computer or any of the other devices that have been mentioned, or equivalents thereof.

As indicated at block **113** in FIG. **8**, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* of the BS manager **41** modifies the manner in which future notification communications are to be sent, based upon the response or content in the response, by manipulating data stored in connection with the notification-receiving party contact records **86** (FIG. **6**). The response system feedback analyzer **100***a* of the BS manager **41** can be configured to modify the manner in which future notification communications are to be sent in a number of possible ways.

In one embodiment, among many possible embodiments, when the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* is implemented in software, it is designed to maintain one or more records pertaining to one or more parties and one or more communication methods associated with each party. Any suitable table or database can be maintained to store this information, if desired. In this embodiment, this data is stored in party contacts records **86** (FIG. **6**). At this step in the process, after receiving the response from the notification-receiving party, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*

associated with the BS manager **41** modifies these records, based upon the notification-receiving party's instructions in the response, to store/create modified contact data, in order to affect changes in the manner in which future notification communications are communicated.

By its instructions, the notification-receiving party can, among other things, change the party(ies) to which notification communications are sent in the future, change the MT(s) that is monitored by the notification system **10**, change the proximity parameter that provokes a notification communication, change the MT stop location that is used by the notification system **10** to provoke a notification communication, change the notification communication method and/or PCD, change a notification communication to a later time based upon a time of day or time period, cancel initiation of one or more scheduled future notification communications, etc.

FIGS. **9**A through **9**C illustrate, pictorially, notable non-limiting examples of ways in which the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* of the BS manager **41** can cause the notification system **10** to modify the manner in which future notification communications are communicated by the notification system **10**.

As illustrated in FIG. **9**A, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** may be designed to cause the notification system **10** to modify contact data after receiving the response, as indicated in block **121**, and to cause the notification system **10** to initiate one or more other future notification communications in accordance with, or based upon, the modified contact data resulting from the notification-receiving party's response, as indicated in block **122**.

For example, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** can be configured to cause the notification system **10** to wait a time period before sending another communication to the receiving party. The time period may be predefined or maybe be dynamically programmable. The receiving party may define the time period in his/her response, for example, by selecting an appropriate keypad or keyboard button in the case of a telephone or computer, respectively. The instruction may indicate to the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** that the notification-receiving party cannot handle any further notifications for a predetermined time period, such as 50 minutes, because the party now attends to a task (e.g., unloading or loading an item from an MT) resulting from the first notification. The task may even be identified in the notification-receiving party's response. Accordingly, the notification-receiving party can influence how the BS manager **41** handles future notifications to the particular party.

As another example, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** can be configured to cause the notification system **10** to wait for the MT **17** to move a prescribed distance or come within a predetermined proximity of a location before sending another communication to the notification-receiving party.

As another example, the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* may be designed to enable the notification-receiving party to advise the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* to communicate one or more future notifications to one or more different parties that have assigned devices **75**, in addition to the notification receiving party or instead of same.

As another example, the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* may be designed so that the response may indicate to the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** that the notification-receiving party will be changing locations. Therefore, the BS manager **41** should contact a different PCD **75** in connection with future notifications that is situated where the party will be in the future, for example but not limited to, a different telephone in a different facility.

As another example, the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* may be designed so that an instruction may be used to advise the notification system **10** that the notification-receiving party would like to receive a status message in future notification communications, indicating the status of travel of the MT **17**. For example, in future notifications, the status message may indicate the location of the MT **17** or the proximity (distance and/or time) of the MT **17** with respect to a location.

As another example, the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* may be designed so that an instruction may be used to advise the notification system **10** that the notification-receiving party would like to receive directions to a site associated with the notification or an advertisement played during the notification. In this embodiment, the BSCU **40** can be communicatively coupled to suitable map software. To further illustrate this concept, a couple of specific examples are described hereafter.

As a first example consider a scenario where a telephone message advises a taxicab driver to: "Pick up at 325 East Broad Street. Confirm by pressing pound. If you need directions, press the star key." The system could be configured so that the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* recognizes the # key as a confirmation that the driver has in fact received the notification and recognizes the * key as a desire to receive directions. In this case, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* would access direction information from the map software and forward the direction information, or a part thereof, to the driver, during the original notification communication or in a subsequent communication.

As a second example consider a scenario where a message sent to a computer advises a person that: "Your UPS package has arrived and is ready to be picked up at 325 East Broad Street. Confirm by pressing the one key. Pizza Hut is next door, and if you press the two key now, you will receive a free beverage." The system could be configured so that the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* recognizes depression of the 1 key as a confirmation that the person has in fact received the notification and recognizes depression of the 2 key as a desire to receive the discount. In this case, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* could be designed to subsequently send a coupon electronically to the person via the computer, which could then be printed and taken by the person to the Pizza Hut to receive the discount.

As illustrated in FIG. **9**B, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** may be designed to cause the notification system **10** to modify contact data, as indicated in block **131**, to refrain from sending notification communications to the party's PCD **75** after receiving a response, as denoted in block **132**, and to initiate one or more other future notification communications to the party and/or one or more other parties, using one or more different communication methods, based upon the modified contact data, as denoted in block **133**. The communication methods, may include for example, but not limited to, contacting the same or a different cellular or land-line telephone, sending an internet email, sending a wireless text message to a PDA, sending a navigation screen to a computer, sending a notification signal and/or message to a television (TV) or computer via a cable modem or satellite modem, sending a notification signal and/or message via telex, communicating a message via radio transceiver, etc.

As a specific example of the overall process, the receiving party may indicate in the response that any future communications should be forwarded to a different communications PCD **75**. For example, in the case of a touch-tone telephone, the "#" button may be assigned to indicate that the party has in fact received the notification, and the "5" button could be assigned to the function of indicating that the communication method is to be changed. Furthermore, having the party depress the "2" key after depression of # and 5, could be used to advise the BS manager **41** that communication method **2**, corresponding to a computer, should be used in the future.

As a further option, the response system **100** and the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* can be designed to enable a party to define times (times of day, days of the week, etc.) for use of each future communications method or PCD **75**.

As illustrated in FIG. **9**C, the response system feedback analyzer **100***a* associated with the BS manager **41** may be designed to cause the notification system **10** to modify contact data, as indicated at block **141**, to refrain from sending notification communications to the party's PCD **75** after receiving a response, until the detection of one or more events, as indicated in block **142**, and then to monitor for occurrence of the one or more events, as indicated in block **143**, and then to cause the notification system **10** to initiate one or more other future notification communications to the party and/or one or more other parties, using one or more communication methods, as denoted at block **144**. The one or more events can include, for example but not limited to, detection that the MT **17** is about to arrive at, is at, and has left a particular location or has moved a prescribed distance, manual or automatic actuation of a switch on the MT **17** or at a location where the MT **17** visits, a certain time of the day has been achieved, a time period has lapsed since the last notification communication, cancellation of a package delivery or pickup, cancellation of an expected stop of an MT **17** at a stop location, delay of an expected stop of an MT **17** at a stop location, another communication from the party indicating that future notifications are welcome, etc. Detection may occur by actually monitoring travel of the MT **17** or by reviewing data corresponding with travel.

2. Response System Feedback Mechanism

FIG. **10** shows the high level steps taken by the PCD **75** in connection with the foregoing embodiments of the response system feedback analyzer **100***a*. Some devices **75** may already be configured with the appropriate functionality, while others may need to be configured to exhibit the functionality and operate as shown in FIG. **10**. For example, in the case where a conventional touch-tone telephone is to be used as the PCD **75** and where dual-frequency key stroke tones are to be used to convey instructions to the BSCU **40**, the telephone already has the requisite functionality to perform the steps illustrated in FIG. **10**.

First, the PCD **75** receives the notification communication from the BSCU **40**, as denoted by block **151** in FIG. **10**. Accordingly, the party associated with the PCD **75** is given a notification with respect to the MT, e.g., the mobile MT **17**.

Next, the PCD **75** receives an input response, e.g., depression of one or more keys, a voice command, swiping of a magnetic strip of a card through a card reader, etc., from the party associated with the PCD **75**, as indicated at block **152** of FIG. **10**. The input from the party to the PCD **75** can be manually or automatically accomplished, but it is desirable to implement a mechanism that shows that the party that is supposed to be associated with the PCD **75** has received the notification communication by way of the PCD **75**.

For security, it may be desirable to have the notification-receiving party identified (perhaps even uniquely identified) as one who is authorized or permitted to send a response. For instance, a fingerprint scanner, a retina scanner, and/or key insertion authentication could potentially be employed to verify the appropriateness of the party to produce a response.

Finally, as denoted at block **153** of FIG. **10**, the PCD **75** communicates the party's response to the notification system, or in this example, the BSCU **40**. The response may confirm receipt of the notification, may indicate to the BSCU **40** that the notified party would like to have a discussion (oral, text, or otherwise) with somebody who has access to the particulars of the pickup/delivery, may enable the notified party to change one or more tasks (or scope thereof) associated with the pickup or delivery, and/or may indicate the manner in which future notification communications should be communicated to the party, as will be further described below.

N. Response Failure States

The notification system **10**, such as the manager **41** of the BSCU **40**, can be designed to implement failure states in connection with a request for a response. A failure state occurs when a state of a variable has been reached without receiving a response back from a notified party or PCD **75**. Internally, a failure state causes the system **10** to terminate notification communication attempts and/or to take one or more actions to accommodate the failure to receive a response. A failure state can also be shown on a screen or otherwise indicated to the operator of a PCD **75** (see FIGS. **25**A through **25**D; the one being tracked and/or the one being notified). A failure state can be system-defined or user-defined, and can be stored in user data table **68***b* (FIG. **5**A) and/or failure state data table **68***l*(FIG. **5**A).

A set of nonlimiting examples of failure state variables are as follows: (a) a time period variable (FIG. **25**A) pertaining to the amount of time that has elapsed since invocation of the notification; when the time period variable has expired, it triggers a failure state in the PCD **75***k*; (b) a distance variable pertaining to the distance traveled by the tracked PCD **75***k* (FIG. **25**B) since invocation of the notification; when the PCD **75***k* has traversed a prescribed distance that is monitored with the distance variable, then a failure state can be invoked in the moving/tracked PCD **75***k*; (c) a predetermined location variable (FIG. **25**C) pertaining to a location to be traversed by the moving/tracked PCD **75***k*; in other words, once the PCD **75***k* determines that it has reached this predetermined location, then a failure state will result; and (d) an acceptance variable (FIG. **25**D) which tracks the number of responses and/or acceptances associated with notification communications; this is useful in a configuration where a number of parties have been invited to visit a particular location (e.g., a restaurant), and there are only a limited number of openings; as an example, the system can be set to accept the first party to respond to the notification and invoke a failure state in connection with all other notifications (which can be communicated, if desired, to the other PCDs **75** that responded late).

Once a failure state has been determined by the manager **41**, the manager **41** may be designed to implement one or more of the following actions: look for additional instructions to notify the next person on a contact or route list, try different contact information for the same individual, or utilize this information to re-route drivers to another destination; automatically notify another user of this failure state event; and/or automatically notify third party companies providing additional services, such as but not limited to, transportation services, that there has been a notification failure.

O. Advertisement Methods of Doing Business In Connection With Notification Services

Various advertisement methods of doing business can be implemented in connection with the notification services, for example, those described hereinbefore.

One such advertisement method of doing business, among others, is illustrated in FIG. **11** and can be broadly summarized by the following steps (not necessarily in this order): (a) monitoring travel data associated with an MT **17**, as indicated by reference numeral **161**; (b) contacting a party based upon the travel data, as indicated by reference numeral **162**; (c) providing an advertisement to the party substantially during the contact, as indicated by reference numeral **163**; and (d) charging a fee or monetarily benefiting from providing the advertisement, as indicated by reference numeral **164**. There are various alternatives and optional steps that may be practiced in connection with this method. For example, the fee may be charged for each advertisement in each notification, for a block of advertisements, or for the advertisement service in general. As yet another example, a discount on the advertisement service may be offered or extended based upon a purchase of a predetermined number.

An advertisement database **68***f* (FIG. **5**A) can be disposed within the BS manager **41** or communicatively coupled to same to enable the manager **41** to initiate an advertisement at an appropriate time during a communication with a PCD **75**. The advertisement can be conveyed by voice communication, by text communication, by visual presentation on a screen (e.g., an email with an accompanying advertisement, etc.), or by other means.

Another advertisement method of doing business, among others, is illustrated in FIG. **12** and can be broadly summarized by the following steps (not necessarily in this order): (a) enabling a party to indicate a willingness to receive one or more advertisements during a notification regarding an MT **17**, as indicated by reference numeral **171**; (b) providing a notification communication involving travel status of the MT **17**, as indicated by reference numeral **172**; (c) providing an advertisement as part of or accompanying the notification communication, as indicated by reference numeral **173**; and (d) charging a fee for or monetarily benefiting from providing the advertisement, as indicated by reference numeral **174**. There are various alternatives and optional steps that may be practiced in connection with this method. For example, the fee may be charged for each advertisement in each notification, for a block of advertisements, or for the advertisement service in general. As yet another example, a discount on the advertisement service may be offered or extended based upon a purchase of a predetermined number.

Yet another advertisement method of doing business, among others, is illustrated in FIG. **13** and can be broadly summarized by the following steps (not necessarily in this order): (a) enabling a party to indicate a willingness to receive one or more advertisements during a notification regarding an MT **17**, as indicated by reference numeral **181**; (b) providing a notification communication involving travel status of the MT **17**, as indicated by reference numeral **182**; (c) charging a fee or monetarily benefiting from providing the notification communication, as indicated by reference numeral **183**; (d) providing an advertisement as part of or accompanying the notification communication, as indicated by reference numeral **184**; (e) charging a fee for or monetarily benefiting from providing the advertisement, as indicated by reference numeral **185**; and (f) providing a discount based upon the party's willingness to receive the one or more advertisements, as indicated by reference numeral **186**. There are various alternatives and optional steps that may be practiced in connection with this method. For example, the fee may be charged for each advertisement in each notification, for a block of advertisements, or for the advertisement service in general. As yet another example, a discount on the advertisement service may be offered or extended based upon a purchase of a predetermined number.

In alternative embodiments, the stop location of the MT **17** and/or the location of the user and/or PCD **75** can be determined and taken into account with respect to advertisements. See next section for a discussion of the location determination of the user, PCD **75**, and/or stop location. With this location information, the advertisements can be selected based upon the geographical location of the user, PCD **75**, and/or stop location. As an example, advertisements can be sorted in a database based upon the geographical areas to which they pertain. Then, if it is determined that the PCD **75** or that the stop location is near the intersection of First Street and 10^{th} Street, then the advertisement database can be accessed for those advertisements that pertain to the vicinity around First Street and 10^{th} Street. For instance, the database might include an advertisement about Pizza Hut, and there might be a Pizza Hut that is located one block from this intersection. In this case, the manager **14** may be designed to select the Pizza Hut advertisement and communicate this to the PCD **75** because the PCD **75** is in close proximity to the Pizza Hut that is at issue. Also, the system may be designed to forward directions to the Pizza Hut to the PCD **75** before, during, or after the advertisement is effectuated at the PCD **75**.

In alternative embodiments, the timing of the notification communication may be taken into account when advertisements are selected from a database for communication to the PCD **75**. For example, the hours when a store is open may be tracked in the advertisement database. Further, when a notification communication is initiated, it may be desirable to refrain from communicating those advertisements that pertain to stores that are closed at the time of the notification communication. In this case, the manager **41** could be designed to prevent such advertisements to occur during prescribed time periods. Moreover, the converse could be designed into the system, i.e., the system could be designed so that advertisements pertaining to those stores that are known to be open at the time of the notification communication are communicated to the PCD **75**.

In alternative embodiments, information regarding a notification-receiving party, for example, a personal profile in user data table **68***b* indicating interests, activities, historic information regarding prior purchases, traveling, etc., may be stored in memory and used to make decisions regarding which advertisements to communicate to the PCD **75**.

In alternative embodiments, discount awards can be communicated to the notification-receiving party. For example, an image of a discount coupon could be forwarded to the PCD **75** that has a screen, which can be printed or shown by the user to the business establishment to which it pertains, in order to obtain the discount. As another example, a discount code can be forwarded to the PCD **75** via voice or text, which can be communicated by the user to the business establishment to which it pertains, in order to obtain the discount. The discount code can be predefined by the business establishment and communicated to the notification system **10**, which can store it in the memory **30***b*, such as in association with advertisement data table **68***f*.

In alternative embodiments, the waiting times associated with retail establishments, for example but not limited to, restaurants, are monitored with periodic communications between a PCD **75** associated with such retail establishments and the BS manager **41**. Furthermore, these waiting times can

be communicated with advertisements involving such retail establishments to the notified PCD **75**.

P. Stop Location Determination Systems and Methods Based Upon User And/Or Device Location Feedback

Stop location determination systems (and methods) **190** that utilize user and/or device location feedback can be implemented in connection with the notification systems, for example, those described hereinbefore. Several nonlimiting exemplary embodiments of possible stop location determination systems (and methods) **190** will be described in detail hereafter. Although not limited to this application, such stop location determination systems **190** are particularly useful in connection with transportable PCDs that are carried with a mobile person, as will be clear from the discussion hereafter.

1. First Embodiment

The architecture of one such embodiment, among others, is shown in FIG. **14**A and is generally denoted by reference numeral **190***a*. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the stop location determination system **190***a* is implemented in the notification system **10** of FIGS. **1** and **3**, particularly the BS manager **41**. The stop location determination system **190***a*, can be configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **14**: monitoring travel data associated with an MT **17**, as indicated at block **191**; causing the notification system **10** to communicate a notification involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the MT **17** to a PCD **75** associated with a party, as indicated at block **192**; receiving location data from the PCD **75** (ultimately from the device user, device itself, and/or another source), as indicated at block **193**; determining one or more stop locations, based upon the device location data and the travel data associated with the MT **17**, as indicated at block **194**; and causing the notification system **10** to communicate an identification of the one or more stop locations to the PCD **75** so that the delivery or pickup task can be accomplished at the determined stop location, as indicated at block **195**. Note that these steps can occur as part of the same communication session or link or in more than one communication transaction.

Although not necessary for implementation, the foregoing methodology can be implemented, and in the preferred embodiment is implemented, by software associated with the data manager **67**, such as the monitoring mechanism **69**, of the BS manager **41**. See stop location determination system **190** in FIGS. **1** and **3**. The blocks of FIG. **14** essentially represent the high level architecture of such software. Note, however, that it is possible to have special purpose digital or analog hardware designed to implement the same or similar methodology, and such hardware could be associated with the BSCU **40**.

In this embodiment **190***a*, the BS manager **41** monitors travel of the MT **17**, as previously described, and stores such information in the database **94**. As mentioned, the database **94** can employ an MT travel data table **68***e* for storing such information, along with other fields that relate such information to other data in the same table **68** and in other tables **68**. The tracking can be based upon timing, distance, and/or location information.

The transmitter **72** associated with the BSCU **40** (FIG. **1**), under the control of the BS manager **41**, communicates the notification communication. The notification communication passes through the network **55** (FIG. **1**) to the receiver **73** (FIG. **1**) associated with the PCD **75**. The BS manager **41** can be designed to cause initiation of the notification communication when the MT **17** is an acceptable proximity, perhaps a predetermined proximity or system-defined or user-defined proximity, with respect to one or more stop locations, or has just passed one or more stop locations.

As another alternative, the BS manager **41** can be designed to cause initiation of the notification communication when the MT **17** has already traveled a predefined time period or distance along a predefined route.

As another alternative, the BS manager **41** can be designed to initiate a first notification in order to sense the current location of the PCD **75**, make a selection of the stop location(s) (and perhaps notify the user of the identity of the stop location(s) during this first notification), and then provide a second notification communication at a later time, when the MT **17** is an acceptable proximity to the stop location (and perhaps notify the user, again or for the first time, of the identity of the stop location(s) during the second notification communication).

The location data identifying the location of the PCD **75** is stored in the database **94**, which as mentioned can contain a PCD data table **68***g* for storing this information.

The location data identifying the location of the PCD **75** can be generated by a physical action taken by the party associated with the PCD **75** or can be generated automatically by the PCD **75** itself or by other remote sensing means. As an example of a physical action, the party could be prompted (e.g., by voice recording) by the BS manager **41** to enter a digit on a telephone to indicate a geographical area. For instance, the voice recording could say, "Press one if you are located in northwest Atlanta, press two for northeast Atlanta, press three for southwest Atlanta, and press four for southeast Atlanta." Obviously, many other encoding schemes are possible. In this example, once the party presses one of these telephone buttons, the BS manager **41** via a dual frequency tone decoder is able to determine the location of the party and PCD **75**.

For automatic generation of location data, a location sensor **80** can be associated with the PCD **75** to determine or communicate location data to the BS manager **41** via transmitter **73**, network **55**, and receiver **72**. Although not limited to this configuration, in the preferred embodiment, the location sensor **80** includes a GPS receiver that receives GPS signals from GPS satellites. In at least one configuration, the PCD **75** is a cellular or personal communication system (PCS) device and the network **55** is a cellular network and has computer-based support functionality and processing for receiving location signals from the GPS receiver and communicating location information to the BS manager **41**. Examples of such systems are described in the following patents: U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,360,101; 6,519,466; 6,453,237; and 5,479,482, all of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

In alternative embodiments, for automatic generation of location data, other types of positioning systems may be utilized to determine location information for the PCD **75**. For example, radar could be used to remotely track the PCD **75** and then the radar system could be designed to convey position information to the PCD **75** or the base station control unit (BSCU) **40**, for ultimate consumption and analysis by the BS manager **41**.

The BS manager **41** is designed to determine a stop location(s), based upon the location data provided by the PCD **75** and based upon the travel status of the MT **17**. The stop location(s) can be determined based upon any suitable set of criteria. The database **94** can be provided with a stop location data table **68***d* for storing stop locations and relating them to MTs **17** that are further identified in the MT data table **68***a*.

As an example, the BS manager **41** may be designed to determine an exact or approximate midpoint location between the location of the MT **17** and the location of the PCD **75** to serve as the stop location. The BS manager **41** can be interfaced with or be designed to include mapping software (many versions of which are commercially available at the present time), geographic information system (GIS) software, or an address lookup table to enable the BS manager **41** to perform the foregoing determination. Mapping software and interfaces thereto are well known in the art and are commercially available. Also, see U.S. Pat. No. 5,594,650, which is incorporated herein by reference and which describes an example of mapping software.

As another example, the stop location(s) may be selected from a group of predetermined stops (a collection or along a predetermined route), known intersections, known addresses, detected locations, locations on a map, etc., that are in an acceptable proximity to the PCD **75** and the MT **17**, at the time that the determination is made.

In some embodiments, a selection among of group of possible stops can be made by correlating a maximum device distance requirement (distance between the device and a possible stop location) and a maximum MT distance requirement (distance between the MT **17** and a possible stop location) to the group of possible stop locations. One or more algorithms **98** (FIG. **5**A) can be provided and stored in memory for this purpose. For instance, assume that the maximum device distance requirement is set at a mile and assume that the maximum MT distance requirement is set at 5 miles. Also, assume that the BS manager **41** has determined, based upon its database, address lookup table, mapping programs, or otherwise, that three locations A, B, and C are possible candidates for the device user to pickup from or deliver to the MT **17**. In this scenario, the BS manager **41** can be designed to analyze the locations A, B, and C to determine which meet the requirements. It can be designed to select one or more locations that meets the requirements.

The BS manager **41** communicates an identification of each of the one or more stop locations to the PCD **75** so that the delivery or pickup task can be accomplished at a stop location. The identification can be any suitable information that will enable the device user to travel to the stop location(s), for example but not limited to, street address information, bus stop location or number, street intersection location, longitude and latitude coordinates, audio or visual description of a place, an image of the stop location, a map image, etc. All of the foregoing can be stored, if desired, in and accessed from the stop location data table **68***d* (FIG. **5**A). Directions to the stop location(s) can also be provided by the BS manager **41** over the communications link to the PCD **75**. The directions can be stored in memory and accessed by an appropriate index that is stored in the table **68***d*. Note that computer-based functionality for a notification system for communicating a map image to the PCD is described in U.S. Pat. No. 6,278,936, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, along with an identification(s) of the stop location(s), an identification of the MT **17** to the PCD **75**. For example, the identification could be a bus number, visual or audio description, description of the driver or vehicle type (bus, railroad train, tax, etc.), etc. The foregoing information can be stored in and accessed from the MT data table **68***a* (FIG. **5**A).

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, along with an identification of the stop location(s), a code to the PCD **75** that will be used by the contacted party to indicate to a party associated with the MT **17**, for example, a driver of the MT **17**, for authentication purposes so that the party associated with the MT **17** knows that the party arriving at the stop location is properly authorized to perform the pickup or delivery. The code can be stored in and accessed from, for example, the authentication data table **68***h*.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to receive an indication from the PCD **75** that the party is unwilling to perform the delivery or pickup task associated with the notification; and as a consequence, to initiate another notification communication to another different PCD **75** associated with another party in order to request assistance in the delivery or pickup task from the another party. As an example, the BS manager **41** may prompt the party to press a particular telephone button to indicate a willingness or unwillingness to accept the responsibility of the delivery or pickup. As another example, the BS manager **41** may forward an HTML page (or other markup language) of code to a computer-based PCD **75** that visually prompts the party to make a selection.

2. Second Embodiment

In further alternative embodiments, as is shown in FIG. **14**B, the BS manager **41** may be designed to perform the following steps: monitoring travel data associated with a plurality (two or more) of MTs **17**, for instance, first and second MTs **17**, as shown in block **201**; communicating a notification involving a delivery or pickup task to a PCD associated with a party, as shown in block **202**; receiving location data from the PCD, as shown in block **203**; determining one or more first stop locations and one or more second stop locations, based upon the device location data and the travel data associated with the first and second MTs **17**, as shown in block **204**; and communicating one or more identifications for each of the first and second MTs **17** as well as their respective first and second stop locations to the PCD so that the delivery or pickup task can be accomplished at a stop location, as shown in block **205**.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, an indication of the type of MT **17** that will stop at each location, for example but not limited to, whether the MT **17**, is a bus, railroad train, tax, etc. This would enable the notification-receiving party to select which mode of transportation to utilize.

In alternative embodiments, the manager **41** is designed to enable the user of the PCD **75** to select which of the stop locations and/or which of the MTs **17** that the user wishes to utilize. This can be accomplished using one of the variations of the response system, which have been described in detail previously. Furthermore, this selection or information indicative thereof can be forwarded by the manager **41** to a communications device, for example, device **44** (FIG. **1**), associated with the selected MT **17**, so that the MT **17** is aware of the pickup or delivery by the user at the selected stop location. Also, if desired, the manager **41** can be designed to advise one or more other MTs **17** that they have not been selected.

Q. Stop Location Determination Systems and Methods Based Upon Timing Criteria

Stop location determination systems (and methods) **190** that utilize timing criteria (system defined or user defined via user preferences) can be implemented in connection with the notification systems, for example, those described hereinbefore. Several nonlimiting exemplary embodiments of possible stop location determination systems (and methods) **190** of this type will be described in detail hereafter. Although not

limited to this application, such stop location determination systems **190** are particularly useful in connection with transportable PCDs that are carried with a mobile person, as will be clear from the discussion hereafter.

1. First Embodiment

The architecture of one such embodiment, among others, is shown in FIG. **15**A and is denoted by reference numeral **190***c*. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the stop location determination system **190***c* is implemented in the monitoring mechanism **69** (FIG. **5**B) associated with the notification system **10**, particularly in the software associated with the BS manager **41** (FIG. **3**). This stop location determination system **190***c*, can be configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **15**A, via suitable programming: receiving one or more timing criteria corresponding to a pickup or delivery, as denoted at block **211**; monitoring travel data pertaining to an MT **17**, as denoted at block **212**; determining one or more pickup/delivery locations for the MT **17** based upon the travel status and the timing criteria, as denoted at block **213**; and communicating with a PCD **75** associated with a party and providing the pickup/delivery locations to the communications device, as denoted at block **214**, so that pickup or delivery can be accomplished in accordance with the timing criteria at a stop location.

The timing criteria can be, for example but not limited to, a time of the day, a period of time during the day (e.g., 2:00 pm to 4:00 pm, daytime, nighttime, etc.), days of the week, weeks of the month, a period of time to elapse from the time that the timing criteria are made known to the notification system (e.g., in 3 hours), an indication of ASAP (as soon as possible), etc. In the preferred embodiment, the timing criteria are communicated to the BS manager **41** by the user and are stored in user data table **68***b* of the database **94** (FIG. **5**A).

The entity that owns and/or operates the notification system **10** or notification service could even practice a business method involving charging a user for delivering to or enabling pickup at a location that was not originally scheduled or charging different fees to a user for different degrees of notification immediacy or charging for facilitating a delivery or pickup. For example, the entity could charge more for ASAP service than for a service having a timing requirement of within 24 hours. A stratified billing schedule could be implemented, for example, similar to the manner in which the U.S. Postal Service charges for mail services: overnight is one charge, two-day service is another, etc.

Note that, with the stop location determination system **190***c*, a user can meet a driver of a vehicle at any one of a number of vehicle stops along a route traveled by the vehicle. As an example, a party may wish to meet a driver and obtain a package as soon as possible. This system **190***c* allows the party to interact with the driver/vehicle at an appropriate vehicle stop (address or map based location) that meets the timing criterion, perhaps one that was not originally intended by the party or driver.

In this embodiment **190***c*, the massage manager **82** of the BS manager **41** receives the one or more timing criteria corresponding to a pickup or delivery and stores this information in the user data table **68***b*. The timing criteria can be communicated to the BS manager **41** via any suitable means, for example but not limited to, via a computer over the Internet, in response to screen prompts associated with a graphical user interface displayed on the user's computer screen and generated from HTML (with applets, if desired, in the implementation) communicated from the BSCU **40** to the user computer.

The data manager **67** and/or the monitoring mechanism **69** of the BS manager **41** is designed to monitor travel of the MT **17**, as previously described. The tracking can be based upon timing, distance, and/or location information.

The data manager **67** and/or the monitoring mechanism **69** of the BS manager **41** is further designed to determine a pickup/delivery location(s) for the MT **17** based upon the travel status and the timing criteria (and in alternative embodiments, additionally based upon location data associated with the PCD **75** itself, an originally scheduled pickup/delivery location, or some other location or geographical reference). Any suitable algorithms may be employed by the BS manager **41** to accomplish this determination task.

The stop location(s) may be determined from a group of predetermined eligible stops (a collection or along a predetermined route), from known intersections, from a set of detected locations, from locations on a map, from addresses, etc. The BS manager **41** can be interfaced with or be designed to include conventional mapping software to enable the BS manager **41** to perform the foregoing determination.

As a simple example of a determination process, the BS manager **41** could select the next stop or next two stops along a predetermined route associated with a delivery vehicle when it will arrive at such stop or stops within a specified timing criterion, e.g., 30 minutes.

In some embodiments, a selection among a group of possible stops can be made by correlating a maximum device time requirement (time that it will take a person carrying the device to travel the distance between the device and a possible stop location) and a maximum MT time requirement (time that it will take the MT **17** to travel the distance between the MT **17** and a possible stop location) to the group of possible stop locations. For instance, assume that the timing criterion is set at 15 minutes, that the BS manager **41** has determined, based upon its database, mapping programs, or otherwise, that three locations A, B, and C are possible candidates for the device user to pickup from or deliver to the MT **17**, that the maximum device time requirement for locations A, B, and C are 10, 16, and 20 minutes, respectively, and that the maximum MT time requirement for locations A, B, and C are 5, 11, and 9 minutes, respectively. In this scenario, the BS manager **41** can be designed to select location A, because the timing criterion will be met.

In alternative embodiments, the stop location(s) may be selected from locations that are in an acceptable proximity to the PCD **75** and the MT **17**, at the time that the determination is made, but which would satisfy the one or more timing criteria. In these alternative embodiments, the location of the PCD **75** can be assumed, in general, based upon the home address, work address, telephone number exchange associated with the PCD **75**, etc., associated with the user, could be determined using a location sensor situated on the PCD **75** (as previously described), could be based upon other configuration data provided by the user, etc.

When a notification communication is to occur, the transmitter **72** associated with the BSCU **40** (FIG. **1**), under the control of the BS manager **41**, communicates the notification communication. The notification communication passes through the network **55** (FIG. **1**) to the receiver **73** (FIG. **1**) associated with the PCD **75**. The BS manager **41** can be designed to cause initiation of the notification communication when a suitable MT **17** is an acceptable proximity, perhaps a predetermined proximity or system-defined or user-defined proximity, with respect to one or more stop locations.

As another alternative, the BS manager **41** can be designed to cause initiation of the notification communication when a suitable MT **17** has already traveled a predefined time period along a predefined route.

The BS manager **41** communicates an identification of the stop location(s) to the PCD **75** so that the delivery or pickup task can be accomplished at a stop location. The identification can be any suitable information that will enable the device user to travel to the stop location(s), for example but not limited to, street address information, bus stop location or number, street intersection location, longitude and latitude coordinates, audio or visual description of a place, an image of the stop location, a map image, etc. Directions to the stop location(s) can also be provided by the BS manager **41** over the communications link.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, along with an identification of the stop location(s), an identification of the MT **17** to the PCD **75**. For example, the identification could be a bus number, visual or audio description, description of the driver or vehicle type, etc.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, along with an identification of a plurality of stop locations, an indication of the type of MT **17** that will stop at each location, for example but not limited to, whether the MT **17**, is a bus, railroad train, tax, etc.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, along with an identification of the stop location, a code to the PCD **75** that will be used by the contacted party to indicate to a party associated with the MT **17**, for example, a driver of the MT **17**, for authentication purposes so that the party associated with the MT **17** knows that the party arriving at the stop location is properly authorized to perform the pickup or delivery.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to receive an indication from the PCD **75** that the party is unwilling to perform the delivery or pickup task associated with the notification; and as a consequence, to initiate another notification communication to another different PCD **75** associated with another party in order to request assistance in the delivery or pickup task from the another party. As an example, the BS manager **41** may prompt the party to press a particular device button to indicate a willingness or unwillingness to accept the responsibility of the delivery or pickup. As another example, the BS manager **41** may forward an HTML page of code to a computer-based PCD **75** that visually prompts the party to make a selection.

2. Second Embodiment

As illustrated in FIG. **15**B, the BS manager **41** may be configured to perform the following steps: receiving one or more timing criteria corresponding to a pickup or delivery, as denoted at block **221**; monitoring travel data pertaining to a plurality of MTs **17**, for instance, first and second MTs **17**, as denoted at block **222**; determining a pickup/delivery locations for the first and second MTs **17** based upon the travel status and the timing criteria, as denoted at block **223**; and contacting a communications device associated with a party and providing the pickup/delivery locations for the first and second MTs **17**, respectively, to the communications device, so that pickup or delivery can be accomplished in accordance with the timing criteria, as denoted at block **224**.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** may be designed to communicate, an indication of the type of MT **17** that will stop at each location, for example but not limited to, whether the MT **17**, is a bus, railroad train, tax, etc. This would enable the notification-receiving party to select which mode of transportation to utilize.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** is designed to enable the user of the PCD **75** to select which of the stop locations and/or which of the MTs **17** that the user wishes to utilize. This can be accomplished using one of the variations of the response system, which have been described in detail previously. Furthermore, this selection or information indicative thereof can be forwarded by the BS manager **41** to a communications device, for example, device **44** (FIG. **1**), associated with the selected MT **17**, so that the MT **17** is aware of the pickup or delivery by the user at the selected stop location. Also, if desired, the BS manager **41** can be designed to advise one or more other MTs **17** that they have not been selected.

R. Secure Notification Messaging Systems and Methods

Secure notification messaging systems and methods can be implemented in connection with the notification systems, for example, those described hereinbefore, to give the contacted party confidence that the notification message is genuine and legitimate.

More specifically, the BS manager **41** may be designed to send authentication information to the PCD **75** when a notification is in progress to indicate to the user that the notification is originating from the proper source. The authentication information can be, for example but not limited to, any of the following: a logo, trademark, coat of arms, symbol, predefined symbol or text or numeric code that has been made known to or selected by the party being contacted, specific sound or sounds or music, a distinctive ring as described in U.S. Pat. No. 6,313,760 that is selected by the user, image of a vehicle or driver, live image of vehicle or driver, a telephone number that can be called to verify the notification, such as the telephone number associated with a telephone situated on the MT **17** or associated with a verification entity, part of a credit card number, such as the last four digits, an image of a signature, such as the signature of the notified party, a public official, or another party, etc.

The authentication information can be preset or dynamically programmable. It can be user defined or system defined.

When the PCD **75** is equipped with a screen (e.g., a Sanyo Model 8100 wireless PCS vision picture phone distributed by Sprint, a Sony Ericsson T300 wireless picture phone distributed by T-Mobile, etc.), an image can be sent. When the PCD **75** is equipped with audio capabilities, a signal that causes an audible signal at the user end can be sent. When the PCD **75** is equipped with motion or vibration capabilities, a signal can be sent that causes a particular motion or vibration signal to occur at the user end.

The authentication data can be stored in authentication data table **68***h* of the database **94** or the data can be accessed remotely, even dynamically during a communication with PCD **75**.

FIG. **16** shows graphically the secure notification messaging system and is generally denoted by reference numeral **210**. As an exemplary implementation, the system **210** is implemented in software in the monitoring mechanism **69** associated with the BS manager **41**. The software is configured to perform or cause performance of the following steps: monitoring travel data associated with an MT **17**, as indicated at block **231**; communicating a notification involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the MT **17** to a PCD associated with a party, as indicated at block **232**; and providing authentication information **234** to the PCD that indicates to the party that the notification is from an authorized source, as indicated at block **233**. The providing step can be

performed before, during (as part of the same step), or after the communicating step. As is shown in FIG. **16**, the authentication information **234** can be stored in the memory **30***b*, can be accessed by the BS manager **41**, and communicated by the BS manager **41** to the PCD **75**.

In alternative embodiments, among others, a party can predefine one or more authentication indicia to be sent to the PCD **75** during a notification. The BS manager **41** is designed with functionality to permit a party to communicate with the BS manager **41** and provide configuration information, such as an identification of the authentication indicia. Such configuration information can be stored and accessed by the BS manager **41** in the user data table **68***b* and/or the authentication data table **68***h*.

As an example, the contact can occur by having the party use a computer or computer-based device to communicate with the BS manager **41** over the Internet, particularly the WWW. Any suitable graphical user interface can be employed to enable communications. U.S. Pat. No. 6,411,891 describes systems and methods for enabling interactions between a party using a computer and a base station computer associated with a notification system, the description of which is incorporate herein by reference. These systems and methods can be employed in the context of this example.

As another example, the contact can occur by having the party use a conventional telephone to communicate with the BS manager **41** over the PSTN. In connection with such a telephone link, any suitable interactive voice response (IVR) system or dual-tone encoding scheme may be utilized to communicate information. U.S. Pat. No. 5,657,010 describes systems and methods for enabling interactions between a party using a telephone and a base station computer associated with a notification system, the description of which is incorporate herein by reference. These systems and methods can be employed in the context of this example.

In further alternative embodiments, a link may be provided by the BS manager **41** with the authentication information to enable the party to certify that the authentication information is from an authorized source. For example, the link may be a hyperlink to a server on the Internet. The party can select the link to communicate with the server to certify that the authentication information is from the authorized source.

As an example, a certifiable image may be utilized. More specifically, an image is communicated to the PCD **75** and the user of the PCD **75** can have the content of the image certified or verified as originating from an authorized source. In one such embodiment, the image (captured live via digital camera or prerecorded) is a picture of a mobile vehicle driver that is communicated to a computer-based PCD **75** during the notification communication. The image is embedded in HTML, XML, or some other markup language with java applets. A hyperlink is provided so that the device user can click on, or select, the image or select the hyperlink, which causes the image to be sent to a remote certification/verification server on the Internet. The certification/verification server can be part of the notification system or a separate entity. The server compares the image with an image of the driver that is stored in a local accessible database. When it matches or does not match, the server is designed to communicate such message back to the PCD **75** indicating the match or nonmatch, respectively.

As another example, a certifiable code may be utilized. In this example, the certification/verification server has a list of authorized codes in its database that are authorized to be used by the notification system/service. The server compares the incoming code with a code that is stored in an accessible database. When it matches or does not match, the server is designed to communicate such message back to the PCD **75** indicating the match or nonmatch, respectively.

As another alternative embodiment, the MT **17** may be equipped with one or more digital cameras (or the cameras may be disposed remote from the MT **17**) for capturing an image, series of images, and/or video (real time live or delayed) of the MT **17**, of a person (e.g., a driver) or thing situated within the MT **17**, or of something outside the MT **17** and for communicating the image or video to a website server on the World Wide Web (WWW) of the Internet. Moreover, the authentication information may include a hyperlink to the website server on the WWW of the Internet so that the notification-receiving party can view the image or video taken from the MT **17**.

FIG. **16**A shows a possible screen message that can be driven to (such as over the internet) and shown on a notified PCD **75** during a notification communication. The screen has an image **235** of the party associated with the MT **17** who will be arriving at the stop location. Also, with this example, a response system, as described previously in this document, is implemented. More specifically, the notified party is prompted: "Please reply to this message for additional verification, to cancel the arrival, or to reschedule." Hyperlinks can be associated with each of the foregoing sentence elements, so that when the recipient selects one, the BSCU **40** receives the selection and can act accordingly.

S. Mobile Thing Determination Systems And Methods

1. First Embodiment

Mobile thing determination systems (and methods) **250** can be implemented in connection with the notification systems, for example, those described hereinbefore. Several nonlimiting exemplary embodiments of possible MT determination systems (and methods) **250** will be described in detail hereafter. Although not limited to these applications, such determination systems **250** are particularly useful in connection with transportable PCDs that are carried with a mobile person and in connection with transportation services, like taxicab services, that have a number of vehicles and stop locations that can be anywhere, as will be clear from the discussion hereafter.

The architecture of one such embodiment, among others, is shown in FIG. **17**A and is generally denoted by reference numeral **250***a*. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the MT determination system **250***a* is implemented in the notification system **10**, particularly the BS manager **41**. The MT determination system **250***a*, is configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **17**A: permitting a party to identify a pickup location, a dropoff location, and one or more user notification preferences, as indicated at block **251**; identifying an MT **17** based upon the identity of the pickup location, the dropoff location, or both, as indicated at block **252**; and communicating an identity of the MT when appropriate, pursuant to the one or more notification preferences, as indicated in block **253**. Note that these steps can occur as part of the same communication session or link or in more than one communication transaction.

Additionally and optionally, the MT determination system **250***a* (or system **250***b*) can be further designed to receive an identification or characteristic of a thing during a communication session between the BSCU **40** and the PCD **75**, for example but not limited to, an identity or characteristic of a package or person, to be picked up at the pickup location. This information can be used for planning and/or verification pur-

poses. Further, if desired, the system **250***a* (or system **250***b*) can be configured to cause the BSCU **40** to communicate this identification or characteristic of the thing to be picked up to a communications device associated with the MT **17**, so that a party associated with the MT **17** can verify the thing at the pickup location. The identity or characteristic can be any of a number of possibilities, such as a number (e.g., bar code number, Federal Express number, etc.) associated with a package, the weight or size of a package, or the name of a person.

Although not necessary for implementation, the foregoing methodology can be implemented, and in the preferred embodiment is implemented, by software associated with the data manager **67** and/or the monitoring mechanism **69** (FIG. **5**B) of the BS manager **41**. See stop location determination system **250** in FIGS. **1** and **3**. The combination of blocks of FIG. **17**A essentially represents the high level architecture of such software. Note, however, that it is possible to have special purpose digital or analog hardware designed to implement the same or similar methodology, and such hardware could be associated with the BSCU **40**.

Pickup and dropoff locations can be stored and accessed in the stop location data table **68***d*. Identification of MTs can be stored and accessed in the MT data table **68***a*. Further, user notification preferences can be stored and accessed in the user data table **68***b*.

More specifically, with respect to step **251**, the BS manager **41** is designed to permit a party to identify a pickup location, a dropoff location, and one or more notification preferences. The communication can occur via any suitable communications device and with any suitable user interface, but in the preferred embodiment, the communication is accomplished through a portable computer-based PCD **75**, such as a wireless telephone or PDA. The notification preferences may include, for example but not limited to, a proximity of the MT to the pickup location (e.g., a distance between the MT and the pickup location that is to be met before a notification will occur, a telephone number to be used when making the notification communication, a time period that it will take the MT to reach the pickup location, the arrival or departure of the MT from a location, the entry of the MT into a geographic region, etc.), a particular time that the passenger must arrive at the dropoff location, a time period that the user is willing to expend on the trip (several selections could be provided pertaining to the same or different vehicles), the type or location of seat that the passenger would like to reserve, whether a pickup vehicle has air conditioning, the type of security or care that is to be taken with respect to a package that is being picked up, an identification and/or when to use one or more communications methods, a specification to attempt another communications device if a first one fails, any of those preferences mentioned previously in this document, etc. The communications methods may involve, for example but not limited to, communicating a signal and/or a message to a land-line telephone, cellular, satellite, or wireless telephone, facsimile machine, computer, television, cable TV transceiver, satellite transceiver, personal data assistant (PDA), pager, any addressable communications device on the internet, etc. Both a signal and a message may be sent to the target communications device, for example, a ring signal and a text message could be communicated to a PDA, pager, or computer.

With respect to step **252**, any of a number of possible criteria may be used by the BS manager **41** to identify and/or select an MT **17** to accomplish the pickup and dropoff task, while complying with the user preferences. As an example of the MT identification process in the context of taxicabs, consider a scenario where the user has indicated that one of his/her preferences is to get picked up within fifteen minutes and that another one of his, her preferences is that the taxicab must have air conditioning. Further assume that the BS manager **41** knows that a taxicab having air conditioning is currently available in the geographical area of the pickup location and can travel to the pickup location within the specified fifteen minutes. In this example, the BS manager **41** can be designed to assign the taxicab to the task of picking the user up at the pickup location and dropping the user off at the dropoff location. A communication can be sent by the BSCU **40** to a communications device associated with the taxicab, indicating the pickup particulars.

With respect to step **253**, the BS manager **41** is designed to initiate a notification communication and communicate an identity of the MT **17**, when appropriate, pursuant to the one or more notification preferences. In the preferred embodiment, the notification communication session is initiated by the BS manager **41** when the MT **17** is at a particular location, is within a particular geographical region, or is within a particular proximity of the dropoff location, using the monitoring systems and algorithms described previously in this document.

During the notification communication session, the MT **17** can be identified with a vehicle number, with a description of a vehicle type, color, etc., with reference to a logo on the MT, with a digitized picture or video of the MT, or in some other way.

The BS manager **41** can be designed to enable the party to accept or deny the pickup and dropoff using the identified MT **17** during the notification communication session or during a subsequent communication session. This can be accomplished with a suitable graphical user interface, assuming the PCD **75** has display capabilities, with an IVR, by touch tone commands pressed by the device user, by other means of communication described elsewhere in this document, etc.

The BS manager **41** can be designed to provide information concerning the capacity of the MT **17** during the notification communication session, for example but not limited to, the number of passengers, packages, or other items currently residing on the MT **17**, the number of vacant spaces, seats, slots, etc.

The BS manager **41** may be designed to receive information regarding an item, for example but not limited to, a package, that is placed on the MT **17**, based upon it being placed on the MT **17** at the pickup location, based upon it being dropped off at the dropoff location, or both. This information is useful for tracking the item as well as the capacity of the MT to handle new items. Furthermore, a machine readable code, for example, a bar code or electronic tag (see U.S. Pat. No. 6,144,301), could reside on or in or be placed on or in the item and read by a suitable reader, such as a bar code scanner or electronic tag reader, at some time when the item is matched up with the MT **17**. Moreover, this code or a derivative thereof (e.g., an indicator of less bit size, a coded representation, an index in a lookup table, etc.) could be communicated from the MT, using a suitable communications device on the MT **17**, to the BSCU **40** for further processing and analysis, if desired.

2. Second Embodiment

The architecture of another embodiment of the MT determination system **250**, among others, is shown in FIG. **17**B and is generally denoted by reference numeral **250***b*. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the MT determination system **250***b* is implemented in the

notification system **10**, particularly the BS manager **41**. The MT determination system **250***b*, is configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **17**B: establishing a first communication session between the system **10** and a PCD **75**, as indicated at block **261**; during the first communication session, permitting a party associated with the PCD **75** to identify (a) a communications method for providing a notification, (b) a pickup location and (c) a dropoff location, as indicated at block **262**; identifying an MT that will arrive at the pickup location for pickup and that will travel to the dropoff location for dropoff, based upon the identity of the pickup location, the dropoff location, or both, as indicated at block **263**; establishing a second communication session in accordance with the communications method for providing a notification, as indicated at block **264**; and during the second communications session, identifying the MT, as indicated at block **265**. In the preferred embodiment, the second communication session is initiated by the BS manager **41** when the MT **17** is at a particular location, is within a particular geographical region, or is within a particular proximity of the dropoff location, using the monitoring systems and algorithms described previously in this document.

Although not necessary for implementation, the foregoing methodology can be implemented, and in the preferred embodiment is implemented, by software associated with the BS manager **41**. See stop location determination system **250** in FIGS. **1** and **3**. The combination of blocks of FIG. **17**B essentially represents the high level architecture of such software. Note, however, that it is possible to have special purpose digital or analog hardware designed to implement the same or similar methodology, and such hardware could be associated with the BSCU **40**.

During the first and/or second communication sessions, the MT **17** can be identified with a vehicle number, with a description of a vehicle type, color, etc., with reference to a logo on the MT, with a digitized picture or video of the MT, or in some other way.

The BS manager **41** can be designed to enable the party to accept or deny the pickup and dropoff using the identified MT **17** during the first communication session, during the second communication session, or during a subsequent communication session. This can be accomplished with a suitable graphical user interface, assuming the PCD **75** has display capabilities, with an IVR, by touch tone commands pressed by the device user, by other means of communication described elsewhere in this document, etc.

Note that the second communication session can occur between the BSCU **40** and a different PCD **75**, that is, different from the one involved in the first communication session, based upon user notification preferences. The user can specify in the first communication session or in some other communications session with the BS manager **41**, which communication method(s) should by used for the second communication session (which is the notification session).

The BS manager **41** can be designed to provide information concerning the capacity of the MT **17** during the first communication session, second communication session, or both, for example, the number of passengers, packages, or other items, the number of vacant spaces, seats, slots, etc.

The BS manager **41** can be designed to receive information regarding an item, for example, a package, that is placed on the MT **17**, based upon it being placed on the MT **17** at the pickup location, based upon it being dropped off at the dropoff location, or both. This information is useful for tracking the item as well as the capacity of the MT to handle new items. Furthermore, a machine readable code, for example, a bar code, could reside on or in or be placed on or in the item and read by a suitable reader, such as a bar code scanner, at some time when the item is matched up with the MT **17**. Moreover, this code or a derivative thereof could be communicated from the MT, using a suitable communications device, to the BSCU **40** for further processing and analysis, if desired.

3. Third Embodiment

The architecture of yet another embodiment of the MT determination system **250**, among others, is shown in FIG. **17**C and is generally denoted by reference numeral **250***c*. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the MT determination system **250***c* is implemented in the notification system **10**, particularly the BS manager **41**. The MT determination system **250***c*, is configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **17**C: during a communication session with a PCD **75**, determining a location (can be a geographic area or an approximate location, depending upon the precision needed to effect pickup or delivery) of the PCD **75**; and identifying an MT **17** to travel to the location or another location that is near the determined location for a pickup or delivery based upon the determined location of the PCD **75**.

Note that, in this embodiment **250***c*, the communication session that is used to enable detection of the location of the PCD **75** can be a notification communication initiated from the system **10** to the PCD **75**, based upon one or more criteria defined by a user in user notification preferences, or can be a communication initiated by the PCD **75** to the system **10**. When the latter is implemented, the system **250***c* may be designed to cause a subsequent notification communication session to the PCD **75** and/or a different PCD **75** (defined by user preferences) from the system **10** based upon travel status of the MT **17**, e.g., when the determined MT is at a particular location, is within a particular geographical region, or is within a particular proximity of the location.

The location of the PCD **75** can be determined automatically, using any of the techniques described previously, or can be determined by prompting the device user to manually enter an identification (e.g., an address, region, stop number, etc.) or description of the device location. As an example, the device user could be prompted to enter a text message that includes the post office address that is nearest the PCD **75** or to enter the zip code in which the PCD **75** resides.

Further, when the MT **17** is identified, it may be selected, if necessary, from a plurality of possible MTs **17**, based upon user notification preferences in addition to the determined location of the PCD **75**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, although not in this context, this embodiment **250***c* can be further designed to communicate an identification of the location of the PCD **75** to a communications device associated with the MT **17**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***c* can be further designed to communicating an identification of the MT **17**, such as a number or description, to the PCD **75**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***c* can be further designed to enable the party associated with the PCD **75** to accept or deny the responsibility of the pickup or the delivery using the identified MT during the communication session or during a subsequent communication session with an appropriate response from the user of the PCD **75**. See response

systems and methods described earlier in this document. Furthermore, the BS manager **41** can be designed to forward the detected location of the PCD **75** back to the PCD **75**, so that the user of the PCD **75** is aware of the system detected location and can confirm it.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***c* can be further designed to provide information concerning a capacity of items situated on the MT **17** that is to travel to the pickup or delivery location.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***c* can be further designed to receive information from the PCD **75** regarding an item that is to be placed on the MT **17** at the location or dropped off at the location, or both. With respect to the former, the item may be equipped with a human readable code or machine readable code that can be read or scanned and sent to the system **10**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***c* can be further designed to receive an identification or characteristic of a thing to be picked up by the MT **17** at the location, and to communicate the thing identification or characteristic to a communications device, personal or otherwise, associated with the MT **17**.

In other alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** can also be designed to communicate a location to the PCD **75** that is different than the detected location or approximate detected location of the PCD **75** or that is in an area that the PCD **75** is detected to be within or near. For example, if the PCD **75** is detected to be near an already existing scheduled stop location for an MT **17**, then the PCD **75** may be advised of the stop location. An identity of, description of, and/or directions thereto can be communicated to the PCD **75**. The device user can be given the opportunity to accept or deny a pickup or delivery at the different location. As another example, the zip code associated with the area in which the PCD **75** presently resides may have been manually communicated to the system **10** by the user of PCD **75**. In this example, the BS manager **41** may be configured to select any suitable stop location that is within the geographic region corresponding to the zip code.

The user can even be given the opportunity to select between the determined or the different location. The user could even be charged a fee or a higher rate for causing the MT **17** to travel to the device location as opposed to the different location (the one that may correspond to an already scheduled stop).

4. Fourth Embodiment

The architecture of still another embodiment of the MT determination system **250**, among others, is shown in FIG. **17**D and is generally denoted by reference numeral **250***d*. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the MT determination system **250***d* is implemented in the notification system **10**, particularly the BS manager **41**. The MT determination system **250***d*, is configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **17**D: causing or establishing a first communication session between the system **10** and a PCD **75**; during the first communication session, determining a location (can be a geographic area or an approximate location, depending upon the precision needed to effect pickup or delivery) of the PCD **75**; selecting an MT **17** from among a plurality to travel to the determined location or another location for a pickup or delivery at one of the locations; and causing or monitoring establishment of a second communication session between the system **10** and the PCD **75** when one or more user preferences criteria relating to travel status of the selected MT **17** have been satisfied to notify the user of the PCD **75** of the impending arrival of the MT **17** at one of the locations.

Note that, in this embodiment **250***d*, the communication session that is used to enable detection of the location of the PCD **75** can be a notification communication initiated from the system **10** to the PCD **75**, based upon one or more criteria defined by a user in user notification preferences, or can be a non-notification communication initiated by the PCD **75** to the system **10**.

The system **250***d* can be designed to cause the second communication session to the PCD **75** (and perhaps to a different PCD **75** pursuant to user preferences) from the system **10** based upon travel status of the MT **17** and predefined user preferences, e.g., when the determined MT is at a particular location, is within a particular geographical region, or is within a particular proximity of the location with respect to timing or distance.

Further, when the MT **17** is identified, it may be selected, if necessary, from a plurality of possible MTs **17**, based upon user notification preferences in addition to the determined location of the PCD **75**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, although not in this context, this embodiment **250***d* can be further designed to communicate an identification of the location of the PCD **75** to a communications device associated with the MT **17**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***d* can be further designed to communicate an identification of the MT **17**, such as a number or description, to the PCD **75**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***d* can be further designed to enable the party associated with the PCD **75** to accept or deny the responsibility of the pickup or the delivery using the identified MT during the communication session or during a subsequent communication session with an appropriate response from the user of the PCD **75**. See response systems and methods described earlier in this document. Furthermore, the BS manager **41** can be designed to forward the detected location of the PCD **75** back to the PCD **75**, so that the user of the PCD **75** is aware of the system detected location and can confirm it.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***d* can be further designed to provide information concerning a capacity of items situated on the MT **17** that is to travel to the pickup or delivery location.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***d* can be further designed to receive information from the PCD **75** regarding an item that is to be placed on the MT **17** at the location or dropped off at the location, or both. With respect to the former, the item may be equipped with a human readable code or machine readable code that can be read or scanned and sent to the system **10**.

As with the other embodiments of the system **250**, and as previously described, this embodiment **250***d* can be further designed to receive an identification or characteristic of a thing to be picked up by the MT **17** at the location, and to communicate the thing identification or characteristic to a communications device, personal or otherwise, associated with the MT **17**.

In other alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** can also be designed to communicate a location to the PCD **75** that is different than the detected location or approximate detected location of the PCD **75** or that is in an area that the PCD **75** is detected to be within or near. For example, if the PCD **75** is detected to be near an already existing scheduled stop location for an MT **17**, then the PCD **75** may be advised of the stop location. An identity of, description of, and/or directions thereto can be communicated to the PCD **75**. The device user can be given the opportunity to accept or deny a pickup or delivery at the different location.

The user can even be given the opportunity to select between the determined or the different location. The user could even be charged a fee or a higher rate for causing the MT **17** to travel to the device location as opposed to the different location (the one that may correspond to an already scheduled stop).

T. Combined Mobile-Thing-To-Location (MTTL) And Device-To-Location (DTL) Notification Systems and Methods

Systems (and methods) can be implemented in connection with the notification systems, for example, those described hereinbefore, including system **10**, wherein a notification is communicated to the PCD **75**, based upon the proximity of the MT **17** to a location or region, and another notification is communicated to the PCD **75**, based upon the proximity of the PCD **75** itself to the same location or region (or a location or region that is in close proximity to or based upon the same location or region). Several nonlimiting exemplary embodiments of such systems (and methods), which will generally be denoted by reference numeral **290**, will be described in detail hereafter. Although not limited to these applications, such systems **290** are particularly useful in connection with transportable PCDs **75** that are carried with a mobile person and in connection with transportation services, like taxicab services, that have a number of vehicles and stop locations that can be anywhere, as will be clear from the discussion hereafter.

The architecture of one such embodiment, among others, is shown in FIG. **18** and is generally denoted by reference numeral **290**. Although not limited to this particular configuration, in this embodiment, the system **290** is implemented in the notification system **10**, particularly the BS manager **41**. The system **290** is configured to implement the following methodology, as is summarized by flow chart in FIG. **18**: (a) monitoring travel data associated with an MT **17** in relation to a location or region, as indicated at block **291**; (b) monitoring travel data associated with a PCD **75** in relation to the location or geographic region (or a location or region that is in close proximity to or based upon the same location or region), as indicated at block **292**; (c) causing a notification communication to be initiated to the PCD **75** when the PCD **75** is at or is within a predetermined proximity of the location or region, as indicated at block **293**; and before, during, or after the forgoing causing step, causing a different notification communication to be initiated to the PCD **75** when the MT **17** is at or within a predefined proximity of the location or region, as indicated at block **294**.

The stop location or region can be predetermined or dynamically determined while the MT **17** and/or the PCD **75** are in motion. The user can selectively predetermine the stop location or region via user preferences. The system **290** can be designed to give the user a stop location or region or to give a number of stop locations or regions to choose from. The system **290** can also be designed to permit the user to enter longitude and latitude values to specify a particular stop location.

The system **290** can be designed to determine a stop location based upon the location of the PCD **75**. Techniques for determining the location of the PCD **75** have been described herein.

Note that the aforementioned steps **293** and **294** can occur as part of the same communication session or link or in more than one communication transaction. As an example of the former scenario, a text communication can be generated by the system **290** and communicated to a pager or PDA that indicates (a) that the device is within 10 yards of the stop location and (b) that the MT **17** is within 10 minutes of arriving at the stop location. As another example of the former scenario, two telephone numbers associated with a telephone could be called, substantially concurrently, by the notification system **10**. Further, each could have their own distinctive ring.

The notification system **10** can track the location of the PCD **75** and the MT **17** by using any of the location tracking techniques that have been previously described. Travel data associated with the MT **17** can be stored in a table **68***e*, while travel data associated with the PCD **75** can be stored in a PCD travel data table **68***i* of database **94** (FIG. **5**A). Furthermore, the notifications can be triggered using any of the previously described techniques and user preferences.

In alternative embodiments, the system **290** can be designed to communicate an identification of the MT **17** to the PCD **75** during one or both of the notification communications (blocks **293**, **294**). Furthermore, the system **290** can be configured to enable the party associated with the PCD **75** to accept or deny a pickup or a delivery using the identified MT **17** during the communication session using any of the response techniques described previously in this document.

In alternative embodiments, the system **290** can be designed to enable a party associated with the PCD **75** to define user preferences in connection with the notification communications and to operate in accordance with the user preferences. For example, among other things, the party can define the predetermined proximity between the MT **17** and the stop location or region for triggering a notification to the PCD **75** and/or the predetermined proximity between the PCD **75** and the stop location or region for triggering a notification communication to the PCD **75**. The predetermined proximities can be defined as a point when the MT **17** is at a particular location, is within a particular geographical region, or is within a particular proximity of the stop location in terms of timing, distance, or a combination thereof.

In alternative embodiments, the system **290** can be designed to provide information concerning a capacity of items situated on the MT **17**. This type of information would be communicated from the MT **17** to the system **10**, directly or indirectly.

In alternative embodiments, the system **290** can be designed to receive information regarding an item that is placed on the MT **17** at the stop location or dropped off of the MT **17** at the stop location, or both. A machine readable code can be disposed on the item and can be read when the item is introduced onto or dropped off of the MT **17**. The information communicated to the system **10** can be the code or a derivative thereof.

In alternative embodiments, the system **290** can be designed to select the MT **17** from a plurality of MTs **17**, based upon user-defined or system-defined notification preferences.

In alternative embodiments, the system **290** can be designed to receive from the PCD **75** an identification or characteristic of a thing to be picked up at the stop location. Moreover, the system **290** can optionally be designed to com-

municate the thing identification or characteristic to a communications device associated with the MT **17**.

In alternative embodiments, the notification system **10** can employ the functionality described in U.S. Pat. No. 6,360,101 for tracking the proximity of the PCD **75** to the location or region and issuing a notification to the PCD **75**. U.S. Pat. No. 6,360,101, which is incorporated herein by reference, describes a GPS-receiver-equipped mobile communications device, such as a cellular telephone, that determines its current location and compares the current location of one or more target locations. When the device is at or near one of the target locations, then the device annunciates its arrival by generating an audible alarm, or displays or transmits a predetermined arrival message. The target location(s) can be entered manually at the device with the keypad, can be obtained via a positioning receiver, or can be loaded via a server connected to a communications network.

U. Notifications Based Upon Traffic Flow Predicament Data

The notification system **10** may be designed to take into account traffic flow and anything that can influence traffic flow when determining when and if notification communications should be initiated.

Although not limited to this application, this feature is particularly useful when the system **10** is to initiate a notification when an MT **17** is a predefined proximity in terms of time from a stop location. This predefined proximity can be system-defined via any suitable programming mechanism or user-defined via predefined user preferences. This feature is also useful to trigger a notification to a user to enable the user to plan for a best transmit route (see third embodiment, hereafter).

1. First Embodiment

In one possible embodiment, among others, the BS manager **41** can be configured to implement the following algorithm, as denoted by reference numeral **210***a* in FIG. **19**A: monitoring travel data associated with an MT **17**, as denoted at block **311**; scheduling a notification communication, such as in a call queue in message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B), as denoted at block **312**; analyzing traffic flow predicament data associated with a travel path (e.g., a road) to be traveled by the MT **17**, as denoted at block **313**; and rescheduling the notification communication, such as in the call queue of message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B), based at least in part upon the traffic flow predicament data, as denoted at block **314**. As can be appreciated by this methodology, the internal scheduling of the notification communication can be initiated later, or delayed, or in the alternative, initiated earlier, based upon the influence of heavy or light traffic, adverse or favorable environmental conditions, etc., so that the system-defined or user-defined advance notification is more accurately timed and implemented.

As with this embodiment and the others described in this section, the traffic flow predicament data can be stored in a traffic flow predicament data table(s) **68***j* in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A) and accessed by the message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B). The traffic flow predicament data can take a variety of forms, and it can be system-defined, user-defined, or a combination thereof.

As a nonlimiting example, the traffic flow predicament data can take the form of time periods during the day correlated to a road segment, indicating how long it should take a motor vehicle under normal circumstances to traverse that road segment during the different time periods. As one way to accomplish this, in a traffic flow predicament data table(s) **68***j* (FIG. **5**A), the following could be a record of fields (or this information could be related and retrieved from several tables or sub-tables): ROAD-SEGMENT-**044**, TIME-OF-DAY-**6-7**, TRAVERSAL-TIME-PERIOD. The first of the foregoing fields identifies the road segment as number **044**, which is Main Street in this example. The second field identifies the time period of the day, i.e., 6:00 am to 7:00 am, and this information is correlated with the road segment **044**. The third field identifies the time period to traverse the segment **044** when this type of traffic flow is in existence.

As a specific example of traffic flow predicament data and how it can be used to effect the timing of a notification, consider the following. It may take 10 minutes to traverse Main Street at between 6:00 am and 7:00 am, but it may take 30 minutes to traverse Main Street between 7:00 am and 9:00 am. So, continuing this example, assume that the stop location for the vehicle is at the end of Main Street, assume that the user preferences indicate that the user would like to be notified 10 minutes prior to arrival of the vehicle at the stop location, assume that the vehicle has just arrived at the beginning of Main Street, and assume that it is 8:30 am. With these assumptions, the BS manager **41**, particularly, the message manager **82** (FIG. **5**B) can be designed to wait to make the notification until it is detected that the vehicle is ⅔ of the way through Main Street. However, if the time of day were 6:30 am, then the BS manager **41** can be designed to make the notification, at once, when it is detected that the vehicle started on Main Street.

Carrying this example further, the BS manager **41** could be designed to, recognize that Main Street is wet and slick, and therefore, initiate five minutes later any notification communication corresponding to any MT **17** that must traverse Main Street (because it will take five minutes longer for the MT **17** to traverse Main Street.

As a further example of traffic flow predicament data, the traffic flow predicament data could include the real time detection of an accident, the knowledge of construction work, the knowledge of a reduced speed limit due to road work or some other reason on a road segment and its effect on traffic flow (e.g., one of three lanes may be blocked, so it will take 33% longer for a motor vehicle to traverse the road segment, the speed limit is now 25 mph instead of 45 mph, etc.). As one way to accomplish this, in a traffic flow predicament data table(s) **68***j* (FIG. **5**A), the following could be a set of fields that can be related and retrieved: ROAD-SEGMENT-**044**, TRAFFIC-FLOW-**02**, TRAVERSAL-TIME-PERIOD. The first of the aforementioned fields identifies the road segment as number **044**. The second field identifies the number of lanes that are open, i.e., two of three lanes are open for traffic flow (there are other entries that include TRAFFIC-FLOW-**01** and TRAFFIC-FLOW-**03**), and this information is correlated with the road segment **044**. The third field identifies the time period to traverse the segment **044** when this type of traffic flow is in existence.

As yet another example of traffic flow predicament data, the traffic flow predicament data could include information concerning the environmental or physical conditions associated with a road segment and the effect of such conditions on traffic flow. For instance, the environmental conditions could be whether the road segment is exhibited by fog, rain, snow, darkness, sun, dryness, slickness, numerous pot holes, etc. This information can be obtained via a variety of sources, including weather report data from a weather reporting source, inspection via camera or physical human presence, etc., and this information can be entered into the notification system **10**, either automatically or manually. As one way to accomplish this, in a traffic flow predicament data table **68***j*

(FIG. **5**A), the following could be a retrievable set of fields: ROAD-SEGMENT-**044**, ENVIRONMENT-**05**, TRAVERSAL-TIME-PERIOD. The first of the foregoing fields identifies the road segment as number **044**. The second field identifies the type of environmental condition of the road segment, which in this case is number **05**, which corresponds to foggy. The third field identifies the time period to traverse the segment **044** when there is fog.

As with this embodiment and others to be described in this section, the travel path to be monitored by the notification system **10** can be determined by the notification system **10** or entered/selected by a user. Furthermore, the parameters or metrics that can be used to trigger a notification communication can be system-defined, user-defined (in user preferences data, such as in table **68***b*), or a combination thereof.

2. Second Embodiment

In another possible embodiment, among others, the BS manager **41** can be configured to implement the following algorithm, as denoted by reference numeral **310***b* and illustrated in FIG. **19**B: monitoring travel data associated with an MT **17**, as indicated at block **321**; determining a notification time period, as indicated at block **322**, by reading a system-defined or user-defined time period (in user preferences data); analyzing traffic flow predicament data associated with a travel path (e.g., a road) to be traveled by the MT **17** (for example, based upon the current location of the MT **17**, the ultimate stop location, and the known travel path or travel path data, such as map data from a mapping system showing how the MT **17** is expected to travel), as indicated at block **323**; and determining when a notification communication should be initiated (earlier or later), based upon the notification time period, the influence of traffic that is derived from the traffic flow predicament data, and other user preferences, if any, as indicated at block **324**.

3. Third Embodiment

Although not limited to this application, the following embodiment is particularly useful in a case where a party would like to know if and when travel flow is being hindered, is acceptable, or is being expedited on a road segment, so that the party in a vehicle can better plan his/her route, for example, enable the party to take an alternative route or, enable the party to take the travel path at issue, if and when travel flow is acceptable or is sufficiently expedited.

In this possible embodiment, the BS manager **41** is configured to implement the following algorithm, as denoted by reference number **310***c* and as illustrated in FIG. **19**C: analyzing traffic flow predicament data associated with a travel path to be traveled by a party or MT **17**, as indicated at block **331**; initiating a notification communication session with a PCD **75**, based upon the traffic flow predicament data, as indicated at block **332**; and during the notification communication session, providing a message indicating a state of traffic flow along the travel path (e.g., there will be a delay and perhaps to what extent, traffic is flowing at an acceptable level and perhaps to what extent, etc.), as indicated at block **333**.

The BS manager **41** can be configured to store the travel path at issue, which can be, for example, one or more road segments (but could also be waterways, airspace, etc., in the case of other vehicles) and can be configured to receive and store traffic flow predicament data associated with the travel path.

In some embodiments, the BS manager **41** can be designed to receive (via entry or selection from available options; data can be stored in user preferences data) user preferences from a user, for example but not limited to, an identification of the travel path, a delay acceptance threshold, which is a metric that can be used to determine whether the travel path is acceptable or unacceptable and which is used by the BS manager **41** to trigger a notification communication, an identification of a time of day or time period during the day, etc. The BS manager **41** initiates the notification communication based upon, not only the travel flow predicament data, but also upon one or more other user-defined preferences.

More specifically, in regard to the delay acceptance threshold, the delay acceptance threshold can be expressed in any suitable terms to enable the determination of whether or not a delay is acceptable. For example, the delay acceptance threshold could be expressed in terms of percentages: if traffic traveling along the path will take 50% longer than usual, then initiate the notification communication. As another example, the threshold could be expressed in terms of delay time: if traffic traveling along the path will be delayed by an additional 10 minutes, then initiate the notification communication. As still another example, the threshold could be expressed in terms of speed: if traffic traveling along the path is 45 mph or greater, then initiate the notification communication.

In alternative embodiments, the notification communication session can be initiated or triggered based upon, not only traffic flow predicament data, but also upon one or more other parameters, for example but not limited to, at a predetermined time (e.g., at 5:00 pm) or during a time period of the day (e.g., between 5:00 pm and 6:00 pm, after 7:00 pm, in the evening, etc.). As an example, the BS manager **41** can be designed to initiate the notification communication at 5:00 pm, or in the alternative, between 5:00 pm and 6:00 pm, only if and when traffic traveling along the path will take 50% longer than usual. As another example, the BS manager **41** can be designed to initiate the notification communication at 5:00 pm, or in the alternative, between 5:00 pm and 6:00 pm, only if traffic traveling along the path will be delayed by at least 10 minutes. As yet another example, the BS manager **41** can be designed to initiate the notification communication at 5:00 pm, or in the alternative, between 5:00 pm and 6:00 pm, only if and when traffic flow is at an acceptable rate along the path as determined by the delay acceptance threshold, which can be system-defined or user-defined.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** can be designed to determine a location or region of the PCD **75** in accordance with techniques described previously in this document (see Response Systems). From this information, the BS manager **41** can be equipped with suitable algorithms for determining the travel path to be traveled by the party or the PCD **75**.

The BS manager **41** can determine direction of travel by receiving two or more location values from the PCD **75** that are spaced in time. The BS manager **41** can also determine direction of travel based upon a known destination of the PCD **75**. From this location and direction information, the BS manager **41** can anticipate travel paths, such as road segments, that will be traversed by the party or MT **17**.

As a specific nonlimiting example, assume that a party has given instructions to the notification system **10** to advise the party of any unacceptable road segments when the party starts to return home after work at 5:00 pm. Further assume that the party can take two different routes (which can be communicated to the notification system **10** by the user or determined by the notification system **10** based upon a knowledge of the user destination): (a) from the workplace to First Street to Elm Street to 416 Barker Street, or (b) from the workplace to

McClelland Avenue to West Morton Street to 416 Barker Street, or (c) from the workplace to McClelland Avenue to Domino Avenue to 416 Barker Street. In this scenario, further assume that the party and PCD **75** commence onto McClelland. When the notification system **10** determines the location of the PCD **75** to be McClelland, then the BS manager **41** can be designed to select the next one or more road segments that correspond to the one or more possible routes that have been taken and to analyze those one or more road segments in terms of traffic flow predicament data. In the present scenario, further assume that the notification system **10** has determined that West Morton Street is unacceptable based upon the delay acceptance threshold and the present traffic flow predicament data associated with West Morton Street. In this situation, the BS manager **41** will advise the party via the PCD **41** of this fact, in which case the party can decide to travel route (c) instead of route (b) to get home.

V. Systems and Methods For Monitoring Travel of PCDs And Communicating Messages Between PCDs

The notification system **10** may be designed to implement systems and methods for monitoring travel of MTs **17** that are PCDs **75** and communicating notifications and responses among the PCDs **75**, as more particularly described hereafter.

1. First Embodiment

One embodiment, among others, can be practiced by the notification system **10**, particularly in the manager **41**, and involves the following methodology, which is shown in FIG. **20**A and denoted by reference numeral **340***a*: monitoring travel data associated with a first PCD **75**, as indicated at block **341**; causing a notification communication session to be initiated to a second PCD **75**, the notification communication session including a message requesting a response and a travel status report indicating a proximity of the first PCD **75** to a location, as indicated at block **342**; receiving the response from the second PCD **75**, as indicated at block **343**; and communicating the response to the first PCD **75** (the one being tracked by the notification system **10**), as indicated at block **344**.

Note that the travel data in this embodiment, as well as the others described herein, can be directly related to the device **75**, e.g., data that directly relates to the location of the device **75** itself or can be indirectly related to the device **75**, e.g., data that directly relates to the location of an MT that transports or is closely associated with the device **75**. Further note that in this embodiment, as well as the others described herein, although the concepts are described for simplicity in connection with a first device **75** (the tracked device that receives a response) and a second device **75** (the notified device), the concepts can be employed in connection with one or more first devices **75** and one or more second devices, in virtually any combination thereof.

In alternative embodiments, the notification system **10** can be designed to enable a first party associated with the first PCD **75** (the one being tracked) to select whether or not a response is requested at all during the notification communication session initiated by the system **10** to the second PCD **75**. This can be useful in many circumstances, such as when a delivery vehicle needs a signature in order to drop off a package, and therefore, the delivery vehicle driver, who is associated with the first PCD **75** needs to know whether a party associated with the second PCD **75** will be available at the stop location to sign for the package. A response by the party that gets communicated eventually to the driver will enable the driver to schedule deliveries accordingly.

In alternative embodiments, the notification system **10** can be equipped with functionality to determine whether or not a response is necessary from the second PCD **75**. For example, the notification system **10** could track whether or not deliveries need a signature in database **94** (FIGS. **5**A and **5**B), such as in a package data table(s) **68***k*. For those requiring a signature, the system **10** would invoke a requirement for a response. For those not requiring a signature, the system **10** would not invoke a requirement for a response.

The notification system **10** can be designed to communicate the status of one or more responses to the first PCD **75**. For example, the status could be "Confirmed" for the situation where a response has been received and the notified party is willing to commit to the pickup/delivery, "Unconfirmed" for the situation where a response has been received and the notified party does not want to commit to the pickup/delivery or it is unclear whether the notified party wishes to commit, and "Waiting" for the situation where a response that has not been received at all from the notified party.

In a design where the first PCD **75** is shown the status of multiple notifications, the system **10** can be designed to enable the party associated with the first PCD **75** to make a selection of one of the entries, such as by touch tone, touching a screen, voice recognition (IVR), etc. The system **10** can be designed to communicate an indication of the selection to the selected ones of the PCDs **75**. This feature would be useful in the context of a delivery vehicle **17** so that the driver can notify the prospective package recipients of the driver's intention to deliver a package to them.

In alternative embodiments, the notification system **10** can be designed to receive a message from the first PCD **75** and communicate the message to the second PCD **75** during the notification communication session. The message can be virtually anything, for example, "Can you meet me at Pizza Hut in 20 minutes."

In alternative embodiments, the notification system **10** can be equipped with functionality to enable the party associated with the second PCD **17** (notified party) to select or enter a time for a pickup or delivery at the stop location. The time can then be communicated to the first PCD **17** (tracked party).

2. Second Embodiment

Another embodiment, among others, can be practiced by the notification system **10**, particularly in the manager **41**, and involves the following methodology, which is shown in FIG. **20**B and denoted by reference numeral **340***b*: monitoring travel data of a first PCD **75**, as denoted at block **351**; receiving a message from the first PCD **75**, the message including a request for a response, as denoted at block **352**; initiating a notification communication having the message and a travel status report of the first PCD **75** to a second PCD **75**, as denoted at block **353**; receiving the response from the second PCD **75**; and communicating the response to the first PCD **75**, as denoted at block **354**.

The travel status report can indicate a proximity (in terms of time, distance from, etc.) of the first PCD **75** to a stop location, that the first PCD **75** has left a location, that the first PCD **75** has arrived at a location, that the first PCD **75** is in a particular geographic region, etc.

The response from the second PCD **75** can indicate a number of possibilities, including but not limited to, whether or not a second party associated with the second PCD **75** is willing to meet a first party associated with the first PCD **75** at the stop location, whether or not a second party associated with the second PCD **75** is willing to accept responsibility for a pickup or delivery at the stop location.

The stop location can be remote from the locations of the first and second PCD **75***s*. The second PCD **75** could also be located at or in close proximity to the stop location.

In alternative embodiments, first PCD **75** or the notification system **10** can communicate another message during the notification communication session that indicates to the second party associated with the second PCD **75** one or more criteria for a response to be effective. For example, the one or more criteria may include one or more of the following: a time limit to respond, a travel distance limit associated with travel of the first PCD **75**, a limit based upon the first PCD **75** traveling to a particular location or region, or a limit based upon one or more acceptance responses from other PCD **75***s*.

In alternative embodiments, the one or more criteria can be communicated to the notification system **10** from a suitable communications device, such as but not limited to, the first PCD **75**, and stored in user preference data in user data table **68***b* (FIG. **5**A). Or, the criteria can be system-defined via suitable programming.

3. Third Embodiment

Yet another embodiment, among others, can be practiced by the notification system **10**, particularly in the manager **41**, and involves the following methodology, which is shown in FIG. **20**C and denoted by reference numeral **340***c*: monitoring travel data associated with a first PCD **75**, as indicated at block **361**; initiating a notification communication session to a plurality of PCD **75***s*, the notification communication including a message requesting a response, as indicated at block **362**; receiving responses from one or more of the plurality of PCDs **75**, as indicated at block **363**; and producing a list of stops for the first PCD **75**, based upon the responses, the lack of responses, or a combination thereof, as indicated at block **364**. Although not limited to this application, the foregoing methodology is particularly useful in connection with package delivery services.

The stop list can be produced at the notification system **10**, such as in the BSCU **40**, at the first PCD **75** that is being tracked (see FIG. **26** and accompanying discussion), or at a computer that is communicatively coupled to either. If produced remote from the first PCD **75**, then the list can be communicated to the first PCD **75**, stored therein, and displayed, if desired, to enable a party associated with the first PCD **75** to take appropriate delivery/pickup action.

The stop list can be a list of predetermined stop locations or stop numbers, can be street address, longitude/latitude designations, etc.

In alternative embodiments, functionality for accepting a reply from the first PCD **75** and communicating the reply to the one or more plurality of PCDs **75** that have responded can be implemented in the BSCU **40** or in the first PCD **75** (which would push the reply back to the relevant notified PCD(s)). As an example, this would be a useful feature in a case where a first PCD **75** associated with a delivery vehicle wishes to confirm or advise a notified PCD **75** or party that the party has been officially placed on a delivery list. Furthermore, a party can indicate in user preferences in table **68***b* of database **94** (FIG. **5**A) that the party would like to have a confirmation reply.

The travel status report can indicate any of a number of things, for example but not limited to, a proximity (in terms of time, distance, or number of stops) of the first PCD **75** to a location or region, can indicate that the first PCD **75** has left a location, region, or scheduled stop location, etc.

The notification communication session can be initiated when the first PCD **75** is within a predetermined proximity of a stop location, region, or a location of the one or more plurality of PCD **75***s*, can be initiated when the first PCD **75** has left a location, region, or stop location, can be initiated when the plurality of PCDs are within a prescribed number of stops or distance of the first PCD **75**, etc.

In alternative embodiments, the BSCU **40**, particularly the BS manager **41**, can be configured to determine whether or not a response to a notification communication is necessary based upon the nature of the delivery/pickup (e.g., a package requiring a signature would like to be delivered, and therefore, a person needs to be at the stop location to sign for the package, a package does not require a signature and therefore a party need not be present to deliver the package, business or residential delivery, inside service or outside service, etc.). When a stop does not require a response, it can be scheduled with the other stops that do require a response. As an example, see FIG. **26**.

The responses from the notified PDC(s) **75** can indicate (via suitable text messaging, voice commands, depression of keys on a keypad to emit tones, etc.) whether or not a party associated with a notified PCD **75** is willing to accept responsibility for a pickup or delivery at a stop location or meet a first party associated with the first PCD **75** at the stop location. The stop location can be remote from the locations of the first and second PCD **75***s*.

Another message can be communicated by the BSCU **40** to the notified PCD(s) **75** during the notification communication that indicates one or more criteria for a response to be effective. The one or more criteria could include, for example but not limited to, one or more of the following: a time limit (FIG. **25**A), a travel distance limit associated with travel of the first PCD **75** (FIG. **25**B), a limit based upon the first PCD **75** traveling to a particular location or region (FIG. **25**C), or a limit based upon one or more acceptance responses from other PCD **75***s* (FIG. **25**D).

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** can be designed to receive the one or more criteria from a communications device, for example, the first PCD **75**. Such criteria can be stored in user preference data.

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** can be configured to enable a party associated with the first PCD **75** to select whether or not a response is requested of a notified party during a notification communication session.

In the preferred embodiment, the software architecture associated with the BS manager **41** implements failure states in connection with the request for a response. A failure state occurs when a state of a variable has been reached without receiving a response back from the notified party. Internally, a failure state causes the system to terminate notification communication attempts and to ensure that a stop associated with the failed communication attempts is not scheduled on the stop list. A failure state can also be shown on a screen or otherwise indicated to the operator of the first PCD **75**, as is shown in FIGS. **25**A through **25**D. A failure state can be system-defined or user-defined, and can be stored in table **68***b* (FIG. **5**A) and/or failure state data table **68***l* (FIG. **5**A).

As illustrated in FIGS. **25**A through **25**D, a set of nonlimiting examples of failure state variables are as follows: (a) a time period variable (FIG. **25**A) pertaining to the amount of time that has elapsed since invocation of the notification; when the time period variable has expired, it triggers a failure state; (b) a distance variable pertaining to the distance traveled by the tracked first PCD **75** (FIG. **25**B) since invocation of the notification; when the first PCD **75** has traversed a prescribed distance that is monitored with the distance variable, then a failure state can be invoked; (c) a predetermined location variable (FIG. **25**C) pertaining to a location to be

traversed by the moving/tracked first PCD **75**; in other words, once the PCD **75** has reached this predetermined location, then a failure state will result; and (d) an acceptance variable (FIG. **25**D) which tracks the number of responses and/or acceptances associated with notification communications; this is useful in a configuration where a number of parties have been invited to visit a particular location (e.g., a restaurant), and there are only a limited number of openings; as an example, the system can be set to accept the first party to respond to the notification and invoke a failure state in connection with all other notifications (which can be communicated, if desired, to the other PCDs **75** that responded late).

In alternative embodiments, the BS manager **41** can be designed to communicate an additional message to the plurality of one or more PCDs **75**. As an example, this could be a description of the MT **17** or of the driver.

In alternative embodiments, a status of the responses can be communicated by the BSCU **40** to the first PCD **75**. As an example of a possible scheme for indicating status, the following text coding cold be employed and could be displayed on a display associated with the first PCD **75**: "w" for waiting for a response, "c" for confirmed indicating that a response was received and delivery/pickup is to occur, and "u" for unconfirmed indicating that a response was received and a delivery/pickup is not to occur)

In alternative embodiments, the BSCU **40** can be designed to enable a party associated with one or more of the plurality of PCD **75***s* to select or enter a time for a pickup or delivery at a stop location, and then this information can be communicated to the first PCD **75**.

4. Example Implementations of Tracked Pcd to Notified Pcd Communications

FIG. **21** is a graphical illustration of an example of a notification system **10** having a base station control unit **40** monitoring travel of PCDs **75** and capable of communicating notifications and responses among the various PCDs **75**. A PCD **75** in the form of a person's networked computer **75***d* is shown receiving a notification communication from one of the tracked PCDs **75***a*-**75***c*, which asks for a response, i.e., in this example, the party associated with the tracked PCD **75** at issue is attempting to make a reservation at a restaurant having the networked computer **75***d*.

FIG. **22** is a graphical illustration of possible ways in which communications can occur between a tracked PCD **75** and a notified PCD **75**. As shown, one embodiment involves indirect communications using the BSCU **40**, while the other involves direct communications between the PCDs **75**. In the latter case, the functionality that would have been associated with the BSCU **40** is incorporated in one of the devices **75** or the functionality is distributed across the devices **75**.

FIG. **23** is a graphical illustration of a possible architecture for implementing the direct communications configuration between a tracked PCD **75** in the form of an in-vehicle navigation system and one or more other PCDs **75***d*-**75***h*. The in-vehicle navigation system **75** has functional blocks **425**-**428** and optional functional blocks **431**-**433**, which can be implemented as part of the MT manager **29** or as separate software routines, as is shown in FIG. **23**. The MT manager **29** (also see FIGS. **1** and **2**) is designed to cause the navigation system **75***k* to provide a list of locations of interest, such as local restaurants in this example. At present, such technology is known in the art. The user is permitted to select a listed item, in this case, the XYZ Italian Restaurant has been selected via the user interface buttons that are shown. As shown, the display indicates that a response is being waited upon. Also, the expected time of arrival (ETA) is shown on the screen in terms of both time (20 minutes) and distance (12 miles). Either or both of the foregoing ETAs can be communicated to the PCD **75***d*, depending upon the desired design.

A PCD **75** in the form of a person's networked computer **75***d* at the XYZ Italian Restaurant is shown receiving a the notification communication from the in-vehicle navigation system **75***k*, which asks for a response, i.e., in this example, the party associated with the tracked PCD **75***k* at issue is attempting to make a reservation at a restaurant having the networked computer **75***d*.

The text content of the message that is sent by PCD **75***k* to PCD **75***d* can be entered by the user of the PCD **75***d* using any suitable graphical user interface (GUI) and screen prompts and any suitable hardware input devices, such as buttons **441**-**443**. The content is communicated in packetized manner with the other content associated with the notification communication.

The text content could also be pre-stored in the memory associated with the PCD **75***k* and selected by the user using any suitable GUI and screen prompts and user interface buttons **441**-**443**.

FIG. **24** is a continuation of the example in FIG. **23** and shows implementation of response requests and failure states, both of which have been discussed previously.

As illustrated in FIG. **24**, the PCD **75***d* at the XYZ Italian Restaurant is used to send a response message back to the in-vehicle navigation system **75***k*. In this case, the person operating the PCD **75***d* creates a message indicating receipt of the notification and confirming the reservation at a particular time, i.e., 6:40 pm., and communicates this message back to the PCD **75***k*, so that the party associated with the PCD **75***k* knows that the reservation is properly scheduled.

Another part of the software architecture associated with the PCD **75***k* is shown at blocks **451**-**457**. Although not limited to this configuration, this functionality in this example is implemented in the MT manager **29** (FIGS. **1** and **2**). As is clear, the user of the PCD **75***k* can indicate that a response should be requested (in user preferences stored in PCD **75***k* or otherwise during interaction with PCD **75***k*). The PCD **75***k* can also be configured to determine that a response is necessary based upon the type of notification communication (e.g., a package requiring a signature would like to be delivered, and therefore, a person needs to be at the stop location to sign for the package).

The software architecture further implements failure states in connection with the request for a response. A failure state occurs when a state of a variable has been reached without receiving a response back from the notified party. Internally, a failure state causes the system to terminate notification communication attempts. A failure state can also be shown on a screen or otherwise indicated to the operator of the PCD **75***k*, as is shown in FIGS. **25**A through **25**D. A failure state can be system-defined or user-defined, and can be stored in table **68***b* (FIG. **5**A) and/or failure state data table **68***l* (FIG. **5**A).

As illustrated in FIGS. **25**A through **25**D, a set of nonlimiting examples of failure state variables are as follows: (a) a time period variable (FIG. **25**A) pertaining to the amount of time that has elapsed since invocation of the notification; when the time period variable has expired, it triggers a failure state in the PCD **75***k*; (b) a distance variable pertaining to the distance traveled by the tracked PCD **75***k* (FIG. **25**B) since invocation of the notification; when the PCD **75***k* has traversed a prescribed distance that is monitored with the distance variable, then a failure state can be invoked in the moving/tracked PCD **75***k*; (c) a predetermined location vari-

able (FIG. **25**C) pertaining to a location to be traversed by the moving/tracked PCD **75***k*; in other words, once the PCD **75***k* determines that it has reached this predetermined location, then a failure state will result; and (d) an acceptance variable (FIG. **25**D) which tracks the number of responses and/or acceptances associated with notification communications; this is useful in a configuration where a number of parties have been invited to visit a particular location (e.g., a restaurant), and there are only a limited number of openings; as an example, the system can be set to accept the first party to respond to the notification and invoke a failure state in connection with all other notifications (which can be communicated, if desired, to the other PCDs **75** that responded late).

FIG. **26** illustrates an embodiment that can be implemented, if desired, in connection with a vehicle having a route-or-stop-list device **75***c* (FIG. **21**) that determines whether a response to a notification is needed, based upon user preferences, system preferences, and/or the nature/type (e.g., business or residential, inside service or outside service, etc.) of the stop.

In this nonlimiting example, a determination is made as to whether the stop is associated with (a) inside service (IS; for example, a signature must be obtained to drop off a package, a person must inspect an item before dropoff, a person must personally provide an item for pickup, a user has requested that a response from the user must be received before the user is scheduled for a delivery/pickup, etc.) or (b) outside service (OS; for example, an item can be dropped off without signature, an item is waiting outside a building to be picked up and nobody needs to be present to give the item to the pickup vehicle, etc.).

The functionality associated with this embodiment, as defined at blocks **471-478**, can be implemented in the BSCU **40** and/or the tracked PCD **75***c*. In this embodiment, it is implemented solely in the PCD **75***c*, and the route or stop list that is generated and periodically changed by the PCD **75***c* is periodically communicated to the BSCU **40**. Furthermore, in terms of external controls and user interfacing, the PCD **75***c* has, as shown in FIG. **26**, a screen for listing stops and the type of stop, a notify button to initiate a notification communication, a retry button to retry a notification communication, a move button to move a cursor on the screen and/or to move through the stop list, a menu button to move through various menus and submenus, and a cursor movement control with arrows in the center, which can be also be used to scroll through the listing of stops.

In terms of internal programming, as shown in blocks **471-474**, there is a looping process for creating, determining, and/or changing the route or stop list, and as illustrated in blocks **475-478**, there is looping process for determining whether a response is needed for the stop, based upon whether the stop is associated with IS or OS, and for determining whether a response has in fact been received from those stops that require a response. In this example, the two foregoing processes execute concurrently.

In this example, the PCD **75***c* can be designed to retrieve all stops within a particular distance of the PCD **75***c* (e.g., a 3 mile radius), the location of which is known, as indicated at blocks **471-472**. Then, a list is created and iteratively updated, at blocks **473** and **474**. Once a stop is tentatively added to the route or listing of stops, via blocks **471-474**, then the looping process associated with blocks **475-478** analyzes the stop type to determine if the stop requires a response and if the required response has been received. In this example, if a stop is OS or if a stop is IS (requires a response) and the response was received, then blocks **473-474** cause the stop to be officially added to the stop list. Otherwise, when the stop is IS and no response was received, then the stop is removed per block **474**. Furthermore, system or user preferences can be set so that a stop is classified as IS or OS.

FIG. **27** is an illustration showing an embodiment involving a delivery vehicle with tracked PCD **75***c* that has a predetermined route **505**, or stop list, with a number of prescheduled delivery stops, for example, destinations #**01** through #**03**. In this embodiment, the BS manager **41** or PCD **75***c* has functionality **500** that is designed to cause a notification communication to be initiated to a PCD **75***d* at a point when the tracked PCD **75***c* is a predefined proximity, for example, at or about 30 minutes, from a delivery destination. Also, the BS manager **41** is designed so that a failure state will occur if a response is not received from the PCD **75***d* within predefined time period, for example, 20 minutes, of the notification. Furthermore, the driver associated with the tracked PCD **75***d* is notified of the occurrence of the failure state or confirmation, for example, via suitable text (e.g., "Confirmed" or "No Response" in the event of a failure state) on a screen associated with the PCD **75***d*, so that the driver associated with the PCD **75***c* knows whether or not to make the stop at destination #**03**.

FIG. **28** is an illustration showing an embodiment involving a delivery vehicle with tracked PCD **75***c* that has a predetermined route **506**, or stop list, with a number of prescheduled delivery stops, for example, destinations #**04** through #**06**. In this embodiment, the BS manager **41** or PCD **75***c* has functionality that is designed to cause a notification communication to be initiated to a PCD **75** at a point when the tracked PCD **75***c* is a predefined proximity in terms of distance from a delivery destination. Also, the BS manager **41** is designed so that a failure state will occur if a response is not received from the notified PCD **75** based upon one or more failure state criteria. Furthermore, the driver associated with the tracked PCD **75***d* is notified of the occurrence of the failure state or confirmation, for example, via suitable text (e.g., "Confirmed" or "No Response" in the event of a failure state) on a screen associated with the PCD **75***d*, which in this case, is in the form of an in-vehicle navigation system, so that the driver associated with the PCD **75***c* knows whether or not to make particular stops.

As shown on the screen, two deliveries have been confirmed, and the system still awaits a response involving the delivery for destination #**04**. The PCD **75***c* can be equipped with suitable programming to enable the driver to scroll through and select (e.g., via arrows on menu button and select buttons, as shown) or otherwise enter the deliveries that the driver intends to make, based upon the confirmation/no-response information pertaining to each destination as well as the distance information provided to the driver on the screen. This selection or entry, or information indicative thereof, can be communicated from the PCD **75***c* to the appropriate confirmed PCD, directly or indirectly via the BSCU **40**, depending upon the notification system implementation. In some implementations, the selection or entry information is communicated only to the BSCU **40** for tracking purposes and is not forwarded to the confirmed PCD.

FIG. **29** is an illustration of another embodiment involving a delivery vehicle having a PCD **75***c*, which shows functionality at blocks **511-515** that can be programmed into the PCD **75***c* for updating a stop list based upon whether or not responses were received. The software can be designed to show confirmed and unconfirmed (no response) stops or to show only confirmed stops, as desired, on the screen of the PCD **75***c*.

FIG. **30** is an illustration of an embodiment that can be implemented at the BSCU **40**, such as the BS manager **41**

(FIGS. **1** and **3**) or at the MTCU **15**, such as the MT manager **29** (FIGS. **1** and **3**), showing implementation of failure states in connection with responses and nonresponses to notification communications in the context of a delivery vehicle. As shown at respective blocks **542** and **543** and as described previously, failure states can be user defined and/or system defined. Furthermore, failure states can be defined in a number of ways, a few examples of which are indicated at blocks **544-548**.

FIG. **31** is an illustration of another embodiment that can be implemented at the BSCU **40**, such as the BS manager **41** (FIGS. **1** and **3**) or at the MTCU **15**, such as the MT manager **29** (FIGS. **1** and **3**), showing implementation of failure states in connection with responses and nonresponses to notification communications in the context of a delivery vehicle. Blocks **561-568** represent the high level architecture of the software. As illustrated, the stop list can be determined and changed dynamically, based upon responses and nonresponses. Also, a request for a pickup can be introduced into the stop list of scheduled deliveries at any point.

FIG. **32** is an illustration of an embodiment of route data **471** and corresponding driver display data that can be maintained and implemented in connection with a delivery or pickup service. The route data **471** can be maintained at the BSCU **40**, at the MTCU **15**, or at both. The driver display data **472** is displayed to the driver of the delivery/pickup vehicle **17**.

As indicated at reference numeral **477** in the driver display data **472**, the status of response and nonresponses to notifications is monitored and shown to the driver. In this example embodiment, the status is "C" for confirmed for the situation where a response has been received and the notified party is willing to commit to the pickup/delivery, is "U" for unconfirmed for the situation where a response has been received and the notified party does not want to commit to the pickup/delivery or it is unclear whether the notified party wishes to commit, and is "W" for waiting for the situation where a response that has not been received at all from the notified party.

Preferably, although not necessarily, the BSCU **40**, particularly the BS manager **41**, is equipped with a suitable graphical user interface (GUI), denoted by reference numeral **46** in FIG. **3**, to enable a party to communicate with the BSCU **40** via the Internet. FIG. **33** shows an example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI **46** and pushed to the remote communications device via, for example, HTML over the Internet. Other examples of user interface screens to be described in paragraphs to follow can also be generated and communicated to a party in this manner.

As shown in FIG. **33**, the screen prompts the party to make a decision as to whether or not the party wishes a response to a notification communication. This screen can be used in connection with the response systems and methods that have been described previously in this document. This selection can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*.

FIG. **34** shows another example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods). This screen can be used separately or in addition to the one of FIG. **33**.

As shown, this screen can be used to solicit selections from a party that will be used by the BS manager **41** in connection with nonresponses (failure states). These selections can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*. Reference numerals **605-607** illustrate questions relating to when failure states should occur after a notification and response request have been communicated to a notified party, while reference numeral **608** illustrates a selection for enabling the party to define what will occur when no response is received by the BSCU **40**. An example of a screen for enabling a party to select such options is shown in FIG. **39**.

Referring now to FIG. **35**, FIG. **35** shows another example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods). This screen can be used separately or in addition to those screens of FIGS. **33** and **34**.

As shown, this screen can be used to solicit selections from a party that will be used by the BS manager **41** in connection with nonresponses (and occurrence of failure states). These selections can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*. Reference numeral **608** illustrates a question relating to when a failure state should occur after a notification and response request have been communicated to a notified party, while reference numeral **609** illustrates a selection for enabling the party to define what will occur when no response is received by the BSCU **40**. An example of a screen for enabling a party to select such options is shown in FIG. **39**.

Note that, in this example, the party can set the system so that a failure state will occur in the event that a notified party does not respond before the vehicle **17** travels to within a preset number of stops from a scheduled stop location, or destination.

With reference to FIG. **36**, FIG. **36** shows another example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods). This screen can be used separately or in addition to those of FIGS. **33-35**.

As shown, this screen can be used to solicit selections from a party that will be used by the BS manager **41** in connection with failure states. These selections can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*. Reference numerals **621** and **622** illustrate questions relating to when failure states should occur after a notification and response request have been communicated to a notified party.

FIG. **37** shows another example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods). This screen can be used separately or in addition to those of FIGS. **33-36**.

As shown, this screen can be used to solicit selections from a party that will be used by the BS manager **41** in connection with failure states. These selections can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*. Reference numeral **631** illustrates a marker that can be moved across a map of streets, for example, via a mouse, and used to select one or more locations on the map pertaining to when a failure state should occur for nonresponsiveness on the part of the notified party. The marked location(s) pertains to the moving vehicle **17** that is headed for the stop location, or destination, which, in this example, is 1010 Oak Lane.

U.S. Pat. No. 6,618,668, which is incorporated herein by reference, describes a mapping system for a notification system that can be used to implement the input-via-map functionality illustrated in FIG. **37** (as well as FIG. **38**).

FIG. **38** shows another example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods). This screen can be used separately or in addition to those of FIGS. **33-37**.

As shown, this screen can be used to solicit selections from a party that will be used by the BS manager **41** in connection with failure states. These selections can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*. Reference numeral **632** illustrates a circle perimeter that can be moved, expanded in size, and/or reduced in size in relation to the map of streets, for example, via a mouse, and used to select a geographic region on the map pertaining to when a failure state should occur for nonresponsiveness on the part of the notified party. The marked area(s) pertains to the moving vehicle **17** that is headed for the stop location, or destination, which, in this example, is 1010 Oak Lane.

FIG. **39** shows another example of a possible user interface screen that can be generated by the GUI of FIG. **3** and used in connection with the response systems (and methods). This screen can be used separately or in addition to those of FIGS. **33-38**.

As shown, this screen can be used to solicit selections from a party that will be used by the BS manager **41** in connection with failure states. This screen enables a party to define what will occur in the event of occurrence of a failure state in connection with nonresponsiveness by a notified party. These selections can be stored in the database **94** (FIG. **5**A), such as in users preferences in user data table(s) **68***b*. Reference numerals **644-648** illustrate possible options that can be selected by the party.

FIG. **40** shows an example of another type of computer network message. As shown in FIG. **40**, an electronic mail (email) message can be generated and sent by the BSCU **40** (FIG. **3**) over the Internet and used in connection with the response systems (and methods).

As illustrated, a party can be sent an email by the BSCU **40** during a notification communication to indicate impending arrival of a delivery vehicle at a stop location, such as the party's street address. In this example, the notification communication, in the form of an email sent over the Internet to the party by the BSCU **40** asks the party to identify when the party is available for the delivery. The information input by the party can be utilized to fine tune the scheduling of the delivery vehicle **17**.

There are many possible variations of this concept. For example, the email could provide a plurality of options, one of which can be selected by the party. Furthermore, there could be different charges associated with different delivery time options (e.g., more expensive options for faster service, etc.).

Further note that this information from the notified party can be communicated to a PCD **75***c* associated with the delivery vehicle **17** and correlated with other scheduling information at the PCD **75***c*.

W. Notification Failure Detection Systems (And Methods) That Cause Implementation of One or More Tasks when a Scheduled Notification Communication is not Received

A notification failure detection system can be implemented in connection with a PCD **75** (FIG. **1**) that is scheduled to be notified that will cause one or more tasks to be performed in the event that such PCD **75** does not in fact receive a scheduled notification communication.

As an example of an application of the notification failure detection system, among numerous possible scenarios, consider an implementation where a service provider (e.g., maid, pool maintenance worker, lawn care worker, etc.) is scheduled to provide service at a residential home, and the service provider is to initiate a notification communication to a PCD **75** at the house. A notification failure detection system situated in or communicatively coupled to the PCD **75** can be designed to monitor for the incoming notification communication. If one does not occur as scheduled, then the notification failure detection system can be designed to perform one or more tasks, for instance, communicating with another service provider to request service from the another instead, communicating with the home owner to advise the home owner of the failure state, communicating with the service provider office, communicating with a security company that can check on the service provider, or communicating with another party or system, etc.

As another example of an application, among numerous possible scenarios, consider an implementation where a home owner, after completing work each day, is scheduled to provide a notification communication to a PCD **75** at his/her home within a prescribed time period, indicating impending arrival. When the notification communication is received during the prescribed time period, then the notification failure detection system can be designed to do nothing or perform one or more steps, such as adjust the air conditioning or heater down or up. However, when the notification communication is not received during the prescribed time period, then the notification failure detection system can be designed to perform one or more tasks, such as turn on light switches (because it will be dark when the home owner approaches since the home owner will be late). When the notification communication is received during the prescribed time period, then the notification failure detection system can be designed to do nothing or perform one or more steps. Moreover, when the notification communication is not received during the prescribed time period, then the notification failure detection system can be designed to perform one or more tasks, such as communicate with another fire or police station.

As yet another example of an application, among numerous possible scenarios, consider an implementation where the notification failure detection system is designed to monitor a fire or security alarm system associated with a facility and to determine whether a notification communication is received from a fire or police station within a prescribed time period after the alarm is triggered. When the alarm gets triggered and no notification communication is received indicating that the fire or police department is on their way, then the notification failure detection system can be designed to contact another party, such as the owner, another fire department, another police department, etc.

As still another example of an application, among numerous possible scenarios, the notification failure detection system can be implemented in connection with cargo ships, tankers, or other ships. An incoming vessel to a harbor can be scheduled to send a notification communication (which can include the ship identity and/or other particulars pertaining to the ship and/or its cargo) to the harbor master (which typically determines when the vessel will dock and sends out tug boats) when the incoming vessel is near and ready to dock. The notification failure detection system can be designed to contact the coast guard or other security group if a ship is approaching and no notification communication is received after the ship has come within a predefined proximity of the harbor or dock location. In an alternative embodiment, the notification failure detection system can be designed to contact providers of services (unloaders, customs personnel, crane operators, truck drivers, etc.) that were intending to meet the ship at the dock at a prescribed time or time period, so that the service providers can cancel their trips to the dock and/or take other remedial actions.

The notification failure detection system can be implemented in software (e.g., firmware), hardware, or a combination thereof. In the currently contemplated best mode, the notification failure detection system is implemented with a

computer-based system that is a combination of hardware and software. An example of a general purpose computer that can implement the notification failure detection system is shown in FIG. **41**. In FIG. **41**, the notification failure detection system is denoted by reference numeral **701**.

Generally, in terms of hardware architecture, as shown in FIG. **41**, the computer-based system **701** includes a processor **712**, memory **714**, and one or more input and/or output (I/O) devices **716** (or peripherals) that are communicatively coupled via a local interface **718**. The local interface **718** can be, for example but not limited to, one or more buses or other wired or wireless connections, as is known in the art. The local interface **18** may have additional elements, which are omitted for simplicity, such as controllers, buffers (caches), drivers, repeaters, and receivers, to enable communications. Further, the local interface may include address, control, and/or data connections to enable appropriate communications among the aforementioned components.

The processor **712** is a hardware device for executing software, particularly that stored in memory **714**. The processor **712** can be any custom made or commercially available processor, a central processing unit (CPU), an auxiliary processor among several processors associated with the system **701**, a semiconductor based microprocessor (in the form of a microchip or chip set), a macroprocessor, or generally any device for executing software instructions. Examples of suitable commercially available microprocessors are as follows: a PA-RISC series microprocessor from Hewlett-Packard Company, an 80×86 or Pentium series microprocessor from Intel Corporation, a PowerPC microprocessor from IBM, a Sparc microprocessor from Sun Microsystems, Inc, or a 68xxx series microprocessor from the Motorola Corporation.

The memory **714** can include any one or combination of volatile memory elements (e.g., random access memory (RAM, such as DRAM, SRAM, SDRAM, etc.)) and nonvolatile memory elements (e.g., ROM, hard drive, tape, CDROM, etc.). Moreover, the memory **714** may incorporate electronic, magnetic, optical, and/or other types of storage media. Note that the memory **714** can have a distributed architecture, where various components are situated remote from one another, but can be accessed by the processor **712**.

The software in memory **714** may include one or more separate programs, each of which comprises an ordered listing of executable instructions for implementing logical functions. In the example of FIG. **41**, the software in the memory **714** includes notification failure detection software **710** and a suitable operating system (O/S) **722**. A nonexhaustive list of examples of suitable commercially available operating systems **722** is as follows: (a) a Windows operating system available from Microsoft Corporation; (b) a Netware operating system available from Novell, Inc.; (c) a Macintosh operating system available from Apple Computer, Inc.; (e) a UNIX operating system, which is available for purchase from many vendors, such as the Hewlett-Packard Company, Sun Microsystems, Inc., and AT&T Corporation; (d) a LINUX operating system, which is freeware that is readily available on the Internet; (e) a run time Vxworks operating system from WindRiver Systems, Inc.; or (f) an appliance-based operating system, such as that implemented in handheld computers or personal data assistants (PDAs) (e.g., PalmOS available from Palm Computing, Inc., and Windows CE available from Microsoft Corporation). The operating system **722** essentially controls the execution of other computer programs, such as the notification failure detection software **710**, and provides scheduling, input-output control, file and data management, memory management, and communication control and related services.

The notification failure detection software **710** is a source program, executable program (object code), script, or any other entity comprising a set of instructions to be performed. When a source program, then the program needs to be translated via a compiler, assembler, interpreter, or the like, which may or may not be included within the memory **714**, so as to operate properly in connection with the O/S **722**. Furthermore, the notification failure detection software **710** can be written as (a) an object oriented programming language, which has classes of data and methods, or (b) a procedure programming language, which has routines, subroutines, and/or functions, for example but not limited to, C, C++, Pascal, Basic, Fortran, Cobol, Perl, Java, and Ada.

The optional I/O devices **716** may include input devices, for example but not limited to, a keyboard, mouse, scanner, microphone, etc. Furthermore, the I/O devices **716** may also include output devices, for example but not limited to, a printer, display, etc. Finally, the I/O devices **716** may further include devices that communicate both inputs and outputs, for instance but not limited to, a modulator/demodulator (modem; for accessing another device, system, or network), a radio frequency (RF) or other transceiver, a telephonic interface, a bridge, a router, etc.

If the computer-based notification failure detection system **711** is a PC, workstation, or the like, the software in the memory **714** may further include a basic input output system (BIOS) (omitted for simplicity). The BIOS is a set of essential software routines that initialize and test hardware at startup, start the O/S **722**, and support the transfer of data among the hardware devices. The BIOS is stored in ROM so that the BIOS can be executed when the system **701** is activated.

When the system **701** is in operation, the processor **712** is configured to execute software stored within the memory **714**, to communicate data to and from the memory **714**, and to generally control operations of the computer **711** pursuant to the software. The notification failure detection software **710** and the O/S **722**, in whole or in part, but typically the latter, are read by the processor **712**, perhaps buffered within the processor **712**, and then executed.

The notification failure detection software **710** (as well as any other software that is described in this document), as is shown in FIG. **41**, can be stored on any computer readable medium for transportation or use by or in connection with computer related systems. In the context of this document, a computer readable medium is an electronic, magnetic, optical, or other physical device or means that can contain or store a computer program for use by or in connection with a computer related system or method. In the context of this document, a "computer-readable medium" can be any means that can store, communicate, propagate, or transport the program for use by or in connection with the instruction execution system, apparatus, or device. The computer readable medium can be, for example but not limited to, an electronic, magnetic, optical, electromagnetic, infrared, or semiconductor system, apparatus, device, or propagation medium.

In an alternative embodiment, where the notification failure detection system **701** implemented in hardware, the notification failure detection system can be implemented with any or a combination of the following technologies, which are each well known in the art: a discrete logic circuit(s) having logic gates for implementing logic functions upon data signals, an application specific integrated circuit (ASIC) having appropriate combinational logic gates, a programmable gate array(s) (PGA), a field programmable gate array (FPGA), etc.

An example of a possible architecture, among others, of the notification failure detection software **710**, is shown in FIG. **42**. As illustrated by way of flow chart in FIG. **42**, the notifi-

cation failure detection software **710** is designed to perform the following steps: storing information in memory **714** pertaining to timing (e.g., a time of day, time period, etc.) associated with the scheduled notification communication, as indicated at block **731**; determining that the scheduled notification communication failure has occurred, based upon the timing information, as indicated at block **732**; and causing one or more tasks to be performed using I/O device(s) **716** and/or using PCD **75** based upon the scheduled notification communication failure, as indicated at block **733**. The tasks can include, for example but not limited to, initiation of voice and/or data communications to other parties or systems, actuation or adjustment of switches or transducers, etc.

Note that failure in the context of the notification failure detection system **701** can be defined as failing to receive a notification communication at a scheduled time or time period, failing to receive a notification communication when the system **701** knows or is advised that the system **701** should have based upon the MT **17** reaching a location or region or distance from the stop location, or as failing to receive proper authentication indicia (which can be stored, accessed, and analyzed in memory **714**) during the notification communication session. The authentication indicia, or information, can be any of a number of things, for example, a caller's telephone number, which can be compared with an incoming telephone caller ID to determine if there is a match. For other examples, see the section in this document relating to secure notification messaging systems and methods.

X. Further Variations and Modifications

In concluding the detailed description, it should be noted that the terminology "preferred embodiment" herein means the one example embodiment currently believed by the inventor(s) to be the best embodiment of a plurality of possible embodiments. Moreover, it will be obvious to those skilled in the art that many variations and modifications may be made to the preferred embodiment(s) without substantially departing from the principles of the present invention. All such variations and modifications are intended to be included herein within the teachings of the present invention in this document and to be protected by the scope of the following claims. A few examples of possible variations and/or modifications are set forth hereafter.

With respect to variations, note that although not specifically described for simplicity, any combination of the various systems/methods that have been described under headings above may be employed in connection with a notification system. For example, use of authentication data for secure notification messaging can be employed in connection with one of the versions of the response system.

As another example of a variation, it is possible to implement the systems and methods of this patent application in connection with notification systems where notifications are made from the moving thing itself (those systems that do not utilize a BSCU **40** to implement the notifications). Essentially, the functions associated with the BSCU **40** are implemented in the tracked MT **17**. One such system is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,444,444, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

As another example of a variation, MTCU **15** and/or the BSCU **40** can be implemented within a single computer system, across a plurality of computers that are communicatively coupled, or within a computer system having a distributed architecture.

As another example of a variation, the notification system can be one that notifies a party or PCD **75** after an MT **17** leaves or while an MT **17** is located at a location, as opposed to a notification system that notifies a party or PCD **75** in advance of arrival of the MT **17** at the location, as with the notification system **10** described herein.

As another example of a variation, the BS manager **41** can be designed to cause the notification system **10** to notify the user based upon a arrival time and/or departure time data in a schedule or route of one or more stops associated with the MT **17**, as opposed to basing the notifications on real time monitoring of the location of the MT **17**.

As another example of a variation, the BS manager **41** can be designed to cause the notification system **10** to notify the user when the MT's schedule has been changed or the MT's stop at a location has been cancelled, as opposed to waiting on tracking information to determine delay in arrival or departure of the MT **17**. This information could be input manually by a person or it could come from another computer system. The software associated with the BS manager **41** could also be configured to enable a user to configure the system so that the user is notified upon a change and/or cancellation.

As another example of a variation, the notification system (as well as the inventions claimed herein) can be employed in connection with an amusement park ride, for instance, a roller coaster, water vehicle, etc. PCDs **75** can be handed out to prospective passengers of the ride, and when appropriate, one or more of the devices **75** can be notified to alert one or more prospective passengers their departure time (or arrival time of their pickup mobile vehicle) is near. Any suitable form of tracking can be utilized. For example, a passenger wait list or queue can be maintained and tracked (which leads to an indirect way of monitoring the mobile vehicles).

As another example of a variation, the notification system (as well as the inventions claimed herein) can be employed in connection with electronic tags on assets (e.g., packages, luggage, containers, etc.) that are being warehoused or shipped to notify a party concerning the travel status of such assets. Typically, an electronic tag has a controller, a transceiver controlled by the controller, and a memory that is controlled by the controller and that stores an identification that can be communicated by the transceiver. U.S. Pat. No. 6,144,301, which is incorporated by reference, describes an example of a tag and U.S. Pat. No. 5,774,876, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, describes a system for monitoring assets with electronic tags. The BS manager **41** can be designed to communicate with the operations center **13** and/or the computer **14**, both described in the '876 patent, to track the assets and make notifications pertaining to the assets. However, note that any design of electronic tag can be utilized.

U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,408,108 and 6,211,781, which are both also incorporated by reference, disclose systems that utilize tags to track articles. A notification system (and the systems/methods claimed herein) can be implemented in the context of these tag systems. As an example, notification communications can be initiated from computer **118** in these patents.

The invention claimed is:

1. A method for a computer-based notification system, comprising:

enabling a party to provide or select authentication information for use in connection with a notification communication session involving a delivery or pickup task associated with a mobile thing;

storing the authentication information;

monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing;

initiating the notification communication session with a personal communications device associated with the party;

providing the stored authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification communication session was initiated by an authorized source.

2. The method of claim **1**, further comprising the step of enabling the party to contact the system with the personal communications device or another communications device and define the authentication information.

3. The method of claim **1**, wherein the engaging step is performed when the mobile thing is a predetermined proximity with respect to a stop location, another predetermined location, or a geographic region.

4. The method of claim **1**, wherein the steps are performed with a single computer system, a plurality of computer systems that are communicatively coupled, or a computer system having a distributed architecture.

5. The method of claim **1**, further comprising the step of enabling the party to select a link to communicate over the Internet to verify the authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

6. The method of claim **1**, further comprising the step of enabling the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving an image from the personal communications device;

comparing the image with a stored image; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

7. The method of claim **1**, further comprising the step of enabling the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving a code from the personal communications device;

comparing the code with a stored code; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

8. The method of claim **1**, wherein the providing step is performed before, during, or after the initiating step.

9. The method of claim **1**, wherein the steps are performed by computer software residing on a non-transitory computer readable medium or media.

10. The method of claim **1**, wherein authentication information comprises a telephone number and wherein the telephone number corresponds to a communications device situated on the mobile thing.

11. The method of claim **1**, wherein authentication information comprises a telephone number and wherein the telephone number corresponds to a verification entity.

12. The method of claim **1**, wherein the authentication information is an image or video of the mobile thing, a person or thing in the mobile thing, or something outside of the mobile thing.

13. The method of claim **1**, further comprising the step of receiving a response from the personal communications device to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task.

14. The method of claim **1**, further comprising the step of enabling the party to provide or select a communication method associated with the notification communication session.

15. The method of claim **14**, wherein the communication method is a telephone, a text, or an email communication.

16. A computer-based notification system, comprising:

means for enabling a party to provide or select authentication information for use in connection with a notification communication session involving a delivery or pickup task associated with a mobile thing;

means for storing the authentication information;

means for monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing;

means for initiating the notification communication session with a personal communications device associated with the party; and

means for providing the stored authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification communication session was initiated by an authorized source.

17. The system of claim **16**, further comprising means for enabling the party to communicate to the system with the personal communications device or another communications device and define the authentication information.

18. The system of claim **16**, wherein the initiating means initiates the notification communication session when the mobile thing is a predetermined proximity with respect to a stop location, other predetermined location, or geographic region.

19. The system of claim **16**, wherein the authentication information includes a telephone number that can be called to verify authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

20. The system of claim **19**, wherein the telephone number corresponds to a communications device situated on the mobile thing.

21. The system of claim **19**, wherein the telephone number corresponds to a verification entity.

22. The system of claim **16**, wherein the authentication information comprises at least one of the following: a password, a symbol, a text or numeric code, a number, a sound, music, a distinctive ring, a video, or an image.

23. The system of claim **16**, wherein the authentication information is an image or video of the mobile thing, a person or thing in the mobile thing, or something outside of the mobile thing.

24. The system of claim **16**, further comprising means for enabling the party to select a link to communicate over the Internet to verify the authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

25. The system of claim **16**, further comprising a means for enabling the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving an image from the personal communications device;

comparing the image with a stored image; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

26. The system of claim **16**, further comprising a means for enabling the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving a code from the personal communications device;

comparing the code with a stored code; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

27. The system of claim 16, wherein the providing means performs the providing function before, during, or after the initiating means performs the initiating function.

28. The system of claim 16, further comprising means for receiving a response from the personal communications device to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task.

29. The system of claim 16, further comprising means for enabling the party to provide or select a communication method associated with the notification communication session.

30. The system of claim 29, wherein the communication method is a telephone, a text, or an email communication.

31. A computer-based notification system implementing secure notification messaging, comprising:

means for storing and accessing authentication information;

means for permitting a party to communicate with the system and provide or select the authentication information and provide or select a communication method;

means for monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing;

means for initiating a notification communication session involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the mobile thing to a personal communications device associated with the communication method, based upon the travel data; and

means for, during the notification communication session, providing the authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates that the notification is from a source authorized by the party.

32. The system of claim 31, further comprising means for enabling the party to select a link to communicate over the Internet to verify the authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

33. The system of claim 31, further comprising a means for enabling the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving an image from the personal communications device;

comparing the image with a stored image; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

34. The system of claim 31, further comprising a means for enabling the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving a code from the personal communications device;

comparing the code with a stored code; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

35. The system of claim 31, wherein the authentication information comprises a telephone number and wherein the telephone number corresponds to a communications device situated on the mobile thing.

36. The system of claim 31, wherein the authentication information comprises a telephone number and wherein the telephone number corresponds to a verification entity.

37. The system of claim 31, further comprising means for enabling the party to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task by enabling receipt of a response from the personal communications device to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task.

38. The system of claim 31, wherein the communication method is a telephone, a text, or an email communication.

39. A computer system, comprising:

(a) a memory storing authentication information and a computer program;

(b) a processor that executes the computer program to:

(1) enable a party to provide or select the authentication information for use in connection with a notification communication session involving a delivery or pickup task associated with a mobile thing;

(2) monitor travel data associated with a mobile thing;

(3) initiate the notification communication session with a personal communications device associated with the party; and

(4) provide the stored authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification communication session was initiated by an authorized source.

40. The system of claim 39, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to communicate to the system with the personal communications device or another communications device and define the authentication information.

41. The system of claim 39, wherein the notification communication session is initiated by the computer program when the mobile thing is a predetermined proximity with respect to a stop location, other predetermined location, or geographic region.

42. The system of claim 39, wherein the authentication information includes a telephone number that can be called to verify authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

43. The system of claim 42, wherein the telephone number corresponds to a communications device situated on the mobile thing.

44. The system of claim 42, wherein the telephone number corresponds to a verification entity.

45. The system of claim 39, wherein the authentication information comprises at least one of the following: a password, a symbol, a text or numeric code, a number, a sound, music, a distinctive ring, a video, or an image.

46. The system of claim 39, wherein the authentication information is an image or a video of the mobile thing, a person or a thing in the mobile thing, or something outside of the mobile thing.

47. The system of claim 39, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to select a link to communicate over the Internet to verify the authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

48. The system of claim 39, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving an image from the personal communications device;

comparing the image with a stored image; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

49. The system of claim 39, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving a code from the personal communications device;

comparing the code with a stored code; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

50. The system of claim **39**, wherein the computer program is further designed to provide the authentication information before, during, or after initiating the notification communication session.

51. The system of claim **39**, wherein the computer program is further designed to receive a response from the personal communications device to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task.

52. The system of claim **39**, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to provide or select a communication method associated with the notification communication session.

53. The system of claim **52**, wherein the communication method is a telephone, a text, or an email communication.

54. A computer system, comprising:

(a) a memory storing authentication information, a communication method, and a computer program;

(b) a processor that executes the computer program to:

(1) permit a party to communicate with the system and provide or select the authentication information and provide or select the communication method;

(2) monitor travel data associated with a mobile thing;

(3) initiate a notification communication session involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the mobile thing to a personal communications device associated with the communication method, based upon the travel data; and

(4) providing the authentication information to the personal communications device that indicates that the notification is from a source authorized by the party.

55. The system of claim **54**, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to select a link to communicate over the Internet to verify the authenticity of the notification communication session and/or the authentication information.

56. The system of claim **54**, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving an image from the personal communications device;

comparing the image with a stored image; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

57. The system of claim **54**, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to verify whether an arriving mobile thing is the mobile thing that is authorized for the delivery or pickup task by:

receiving a code from the personal communications device;

comparing the code with a stored code; and

communicating a message back to the personal communications device, the message indicating a match or mismatch.

58. The system of claim **54**, wherein the authentication information comprises a telephone number and wherein the telephone number corresponds to a communications device situated on the mobile thing.

59. The system of claim **54**, wherein the authentication information comprises a telephone number and wherein the telephone number corresponds to a verification entity.

60. The system of claim **54**, wherein the computer program is further designed to enable the party to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task by enabling receipt of a response from the personal communications device to cancel, reschedule, or modify the delivery or pickup task.

61. The system of claim **54**, wherein the communication method is a telephone, a text, or an email communication.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT B

US007119716B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Horstemeyer

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,119,716 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: Oct. 10, 2006**

(54) **RESPONSE SYSTEMS AND METHODS FOR NOTIFICATION SYSTEMS FOR MODIFYING FUTURE NOTIFICATIONS**

(75) Inventor: **Scott A. Horstemeyer**, Atlanta, GA (US)

(73) Assignee: **LegalView Assets, Limited**, Tortola (VG)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 328 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **10/706,591**

(22) Filed: **Nov. 12, 2003**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2004/0254985 A1 Dec. 16, 2004

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/473,738, filed on May 28, 2003, provisional application No. 60/473,742, filed on May 28, 2003, provisional application No. 60/473,949, filed on May 28, 2003, provisional application No. 60/486,768, filed on Jul. 11, 2003, provisional application No. 60/498,819, filed on Aug. 29, 2003.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
G08G 1/123 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **340/994**; 340/928; 340/539.11; 340/502; 340/504; 340/506

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 340/994, 340/928, 539.11, 502, 504, 506
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,568,161	A	3/1971	Knickel	340/994
3,644,883	A	2/1972	Borman et al.	340/23
3,845,289	A	10/1974	French	235/151.2
3,886,515	A	5/1975	Cottin et al.	340/994
3,934,125	A	1/1976	Macano	235/150.2
4,220,946	A	9/1980	Henriot	340/23
4,297,672	A	10/1981	Fruchey et al.	340/23
4,325,057	A	4/1982	Bishop	340/539
4,350,969	A	9/1982	Greer	340/23
4,525,601	A	6/1985	Barnich et al.	379/7 MM
4,585,904	A	4/1986	Mincone et al.	179/7.1 TP
4,713,661	A	12/1987	Boone et al.	340/994

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0219859 A2 4/1987

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Moriok, et al., "Advanced Vehicle Monitoring and communication Systems for Bus Transit—Benefits and Economic Feasibility", Final Report—U.S. Department of Transportation, Sep. 1991, Revised Mar. 1993, Dot-T-94-03.

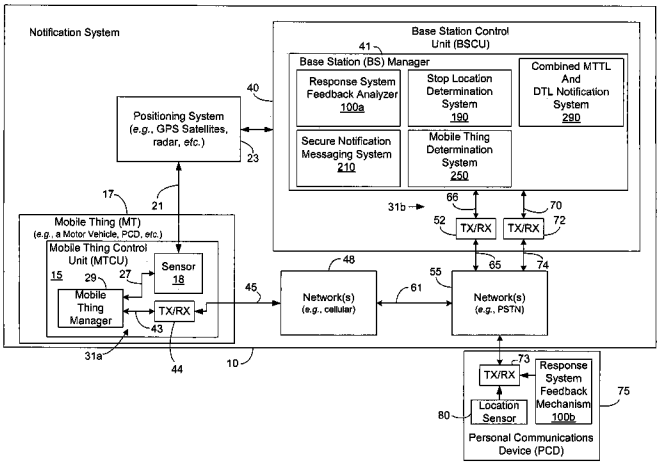
(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Tai Nguyen
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Thomas, Kayden, Horstemeyer & Risley LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

Response systems and methods are disclosed for communications in connection with a computer-based notification system and a personal communications device (e.g., telephone, pager, computer, PDA, etc.) associated with a party. One such representative response method, among others, can be summarized by the following steps: initiating a notification communication to a personal communications device associated with a party; receiving a response communication from the party's personal communications device; and modifying a manner in which future notification communications are implemented, based upon the response. A representative response system, among others, has mechanisms for implementing the foregoing steps.

92 Claims, 50 Drawing Sheets



U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,791,571	A		12/1988	Takahashi et al. 364/436
4,799,162	A		1/1989	Shinkawa et al. 364/436
4,804,837	A		2/1989	Farley 250/251
4,804,937	A		2/1989	Barbiaux et al. ..... 340/52 F
4,812,843	A		3/1989	Champion, III et al. 340/905
4,813,065	A		3/1989	Segala 379/112
4,857,925	A		8/1989	Brubaker 340/994
4,894,649	A		1/1990	Davis 340/825.44
4,956,777	A		9/1990	Cearley et al. 364/424.02
5,003,584	A		3/1991	Benyacar et al. 379/119
5,006,847	A		4/1991	Rush et al. 340/994
5,014,206	A		5/1991	Scribner et al. 364/449
5,021,780	A		6/1991	Fabiano et al. 340/994
5,021,789	A		6/1991	Fabiano et al. 264/436
5,048,079	A		9/1991	Harrington et al. 379/112
5,068,656	A		11/1991	Sutherland 340/989
5,097,429	A		3/1992	Wood et al. 364/569
5,103,475	A		4/1992	Shuen 379/115
5,113,185	A		5/1992	Ichikawa 340/995
5,121,326	A		6/1992	Moroto et al. 364/449
5,122,959	A		6/1992	Nathanson et al. 364/436
5,131,020	A		7/1992	Liebesny et al. 379/59
5,144,301	A		9/1992	Jackson et al. 340/994
5,146,491	A		9/1992	Silver et al. 379/114
5,155,689	A		10/1992	Wortham 364/460
5,168,451	A		12/1992	Bolger 364/436
5,179,584	A		1/1993	Tsumura 379/114
5,218,629	A		6/1993	Dumond, Jr. et al. 379/59
5,218,632	A		6/1993	Cool 379/126
5,223,844	A		6/1993	Mansell et al. 342/357
5,243,529	A		9/1993	Kashiwazaki 364/449
5,271,484	A		12/1993	Bahjat et al. 187/29.1
5,299,132	A		3/1994	Wortham 364/460
5,323,456	A		6/1994	Oprea 379/375
5,351,194	A		9/1994	Ross et al. 364/449
5,361,296	A		11/1994	Reyes et al. 379/96
5,381,338	A		1/1995	Wysocki et al. 364/449
5,381,467	A		1/1995	Rosinski et al. 379/121
5,394,332	A		2/1995	Kuwahara et al. 364/449
5,398,190	A		3/1995	Wortham 364/460
5,400,020	A		3/1995	Jones 340/994
5,420,794	A		5/1995	James 364/436
5,424,727	A	*	6/1995	Shieh 340/928
5,428,546	A		6/1995	Shah et al. 364/449
5,432,841	A		7/1995	Rimer 379/59
5,440,489	A		8/1995	Newman 364/426.05
5,444,444	A		8/1995	Ross 340/994
5,446,678	A		8/1995	Saltzstein et al. 364/514
5,448,479	A		9/1995	Kemner et al. 365/424.02
5,461,374	A		10/1995	Lewiner et al. 340/994
5,483,234	A		1/1996	Correel et al. 340/994
5,483,454	A		1/1996	Lewiner et al. 364/443
5,485,520	A	*	1/1996	Chaum et al. 705/74
5,493,295	A		2/1996	Lewiner et al. 340/994
5,493,694	A		2/1996	Vlcek et al. 455/53.1
5,506,893	A		4/1996	Buscher et al. 379/114
5,513,111	A		4/1996	Wortham 364/460
5,515,421	A		5/1996	Sikand et al. 379/67
5,519,621	A		5/1996	Wortham 364/460
5,526,401	A		6/1996	Roach, Jr. et al. 379/59
5,539,810	A		7/1996	Kennedy, III et al. 379/59
5,544,225	A		8/1996	Kennedy, III et al. 379/59
5,546,444	A		8/1996	Roach, Jr. et al. 379/59
5,552,795	A		9/1996	Tayloe et al. 342/357
5,559,871	A		9/1996	Smith 379/115
5,570,100	A		10/1996	Grube et al. 364/446
5,577,101	A		11/1996	Bohm 379/58
5,579,376	A		11/1996	Kennedy, III et al. 379/60
5,587,715	A		12/1996	Lewis 342/357
5,594,650	A		1/1997	Shah et al. 364/449.1
5,594,787	A		1/1997	Ohshima et al. 379/114
5,602,739	A		2/1997	Haagenstad et al. 364/436
5,623,260	A		4/1997	Jones 340/994
5,648,770	A		7/1997	Ross 340/994
5,652,707	A		7/1997	Wortham 364/460
5,657,010	A		8/1997	Jones 340/994
5,668,543	A		9/1997	Jones 340/994
5,673,305	A		9/1997	Ross 379/58
5,680,119	A		10/1997	Magliari et al. 340/904
5,694,322	A		12/1997	Westerlage et al. 364/464
5,694,459	A		12/1997	Backaus et al. 379/427
5,699,275	A		12/1997	Beasley et al. ..... 364/514 R
5,712,908	A		1/1998	Brinkman et al. 379/119
5,715,307	A		2/1998	Zazzera 379/265
5,719,771	A		2/1998	Buck et al. 364/443
5,724,243	A		3/1998	Westerlage et al. 364/446
5,724,584	A		3/1998	Peters et al. 395/671
5,729,597	A		3/1998	Bhusri 379/115
5,732,074	A		3/1998	Spaur et al. 370/313
5,734,981	A		3/1998	Kennedy, III et al. 455/445
5,736,940	A		4/1998	Burgener 340/994
5,739,774	A		4/1998	Olandesi 340/994
5,742,672	A		4/1998	Burk 379/198
5,751,245	A		5/1998	Janky et al. 342/357
5,760,742	A		6/1998	Branch et al. 342/457
5,771,282	A		6/1998	Friedes 379/121
5,771,455	A		6/1998	Kennedy, III et al. 455/456
5,774,825	A		6/1998	Reynolds 364/449.7
5,781,156	A		7/1998	Krasner 342/357
5,784,443	A		7/1998	Chapman et al. 379/119
5,793,853	A		8/1998	Sbisa 379/120
5,796,365	A		8/1998	Lewis 342/357
5,799,073	A		8/1998	Fleischer, III et al. 379/113
5,799,263	A		8/1998	Culbertson 701/117
5,805,680	A		9/1998	Penzias 379/118
5,808,565	A		9/1998	Matta et al. 340/994
RE35,920	E		10/1998	Sorden et al. 342/457
5,835,580	A		11/1998	Fraser 379/115
5,841,847	A		11/1998	Graham et al. 379/114
5,852,659	A		12/1998	Welter, Jr. 379/116
5,864,610	A		1/1999	Ronen 379/127
5,875,238	A		2/1999	Glitho et al. 379/116
5,881,138	A		3/1999	Kearns et al. 379/114
5,910,979	A		6/1999	Goel et al. 379/120
5,912,954	A		6/1999	Whited et al. 379/115
5,915,006	A		6/1999	Jagadish et al. 379/127
5,920,613	A		7/1999	Alcott et al. 379/114
5,922,040	A		7/1999	Prabhakaran 701/117
5,937,044	A		8/1999	Kim 379/121
5,943,320	A		8/1999	Weik et al. 370/259
5,943,406	A		8/1999	Leta et al. 379/120
5,943,657	A		8/1999	Freestone et al. 705/400
5,945,919	A		8/1999	Trask 340/825.491
5,946,379	A		8/1999	Bhusri 379/115
5,950,174	A		9/1999	Brendzel 705/34
5,955,974	A		9/1999	Togawa 340/994
5,956,391	A		9/1999	Melen et al. 379/114
5,982,864	A		11/1999	Jagadish et al. 379/115
5,987,103	A		11/1999	Jagadish et al. 379/114
5,987,377	A		11/1999	Westerlage et al. 701/204
5,991,377	A		11/1999	Malik 379/114
5,991,380	A		11/1999	Bruno et al. 379/115
5,991,381	A		11/1999	Bouanaka et al. 379/115
5,995,602	A		11/1999	Johnson et al. 379/116
6,006,159	A		12/1999	Schmier et al. 701/200
6,094,149	A		7/2000	Wilson 340/904
6,097,317	A		8/2000	Lewiner et al. 340/994
6,111,538	A		8/2000	Schuchman et al. 342/357
6,124,810	A		9/2000	Segal et al. 340/994
6,134,501	A		10/2000	Oumi 701/209
6,137,425	A		10/2000	Oster et al. 340/994
6,144,301	A		11/2000	Frieden 340/572.8
6,178,378	B1		1/2001	Leibold 701/202
6,184,802	B1		2/2001	Lamb 340/994

6,191,708	B1	2/2001	Davidson	340/994
6,222,462	B1	4/2001	Hahn	340/904
6,240,362	B1	5/2001	Gaspard, II	701/209
6,253,146	B1	6/2001	Hanson et al.	701/202
6,253,148	B1	6/2001	Decaux et al.	701/204
6,278,936	B1	8/2001	Jones	701/201
6,313,760	B1	11/2001	Jones	340/994
6,317,060	B1	11/2001	Jones	340/994
6,360,101	B1	3/2002	Irvin	445/456
6,363,254	B1	3/2002	Jones et al.	455/456
6,363,323	B1	3/2002	Jones	701/213
6,374,176	B1	4/2002	Schmier et al.	701/200
6,400,956	B1	6/2002	Richton	455/456
6,411,891	B1	6/2002	Jones	701/201
6,415,207	B1	7/2002	Jones	701/1
6,486,801	B1	11/2002	Jones	340/994
6,492,912	B1	12/2002	Jones	
6,510,383	B1	1/2003	Jones	
6,618,668	B1	9/2003	Laird	701/204
6,683,542	B1	1/2004	Jones	340/994
6,700,507	B1	3/2004	Jones	340/994
6,882,334	B1 *	4/2005	Meyer	345/156
6,943,679	B1 *	9/2005	Sebanc et al.	340/505
2002/0016171	A1	2/2002	Doganata et al.	455/456
2002/0069017	A1	6/2002	Schmier et al.	701/213
2002/0082770	A1	6/2002	Jones	
2002/0099500	A1	7/2002	Schmier et al.	701/200
2003/0091158	A1 *	5/2003	Puchek et al.	379/38
2003/0093218	A1	5/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0098802	A1	5/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0146854	A1	8/2003	Jones	340/988
2003/0193412	A1	10/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0193413	A1	10/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0193414	A1	10/2003	Jones	340/994
2003/0195696	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0195697	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0195698	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0195699	A1	10/2003	Jones	701/201
2003/0233188	A1	12/2003	Jones	701/200
2003/0233190	A1	12/2003	Jones	701/207

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0805427	A1	11/1997
EP	0889455	A1	1/1999
FR	2 559 930		8/1985
FR	2674355		9/1992
GB	WO 93/13510	A1	7/1993
GB	WO 9313510	A1	7/1993
JP	52066175		6/1977
JP	63288400		11/1988
JP	11034872	A	2/1999
WO	WO 90/01236		2/1990
WO	WO 93/13503		7/1993
WO	WO 94/02922		2/1994
WO	WO 94/27264		11/1994
WO	WO 96/04634		2/1996
WO	WO 96/16386		5/1996
WO	WO 98/07128		2/1998
WO	WO 98/08206		2/1998
WO	WO 98/14926		4/1998
WO	WO 98/40837		9/1998

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Brynielsson, Thore, Step by Step Development Towards Attractive Public Transport, Chalmers University of Technology, Gotebord, Sweden, Department of Transportation, 1976.

"Public Transporation Information and Management Ssytems", IEE Colloquium, Computing and Control Division, May 25, 1993, pp. 9/1-9/4, 12/1-12/2, 7/1-7/3.

"Vehicle Location and Fleet Management Systems", IEE Colloquium, Computing and Control Division, Jun. 8, 1993.

The 3rd International Conference on Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems (VNIS) Norway, Sep. 2-4, 1992, pp. 312-315.

Preiss, George; Jenson, Lillian; "The Satref and GPS Information Projects", 1992 IEEE—3rd International Conference on Vehcile Navigation Information Systems, pp. 648-655.

"Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings" (P-253), Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc., Oct. 1991, pp. 789-796.

"1992 Compendium of Technical Papers", Institute of Transportation Engineers—INRAD: A Deminostration of Two-Way Roadway to Vehicle Communication for use in Traffic Operations, Annual Meeting, Washington, D.C. pp. 214-218.

"Paving the Way for GPS in Vehicle Tracking", Showcase World, Dec. 1992.

"Advanced Vehicle Monitoring and Communication Systems for Bus Transit", Federal Transit Administration, Sep. 1991, Revised Mar. 1993.

Koncz, et al., "GIS-Based Transit Information Bolsters Travel Options", GIS World, Jul. 1995, pp. 62-64.

Helleker, Jan, Real-Time Traveller Information—in everyone's pocket?!—a pilot test using hand-portable GSM terminals, IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 49-52.

Burgener, E.C., et al., "A Personal Transit Arrival Time Receiver", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 54-55.

Peng, Zhong-Ren, "A Methodology for Design for a GIS-Based Automatic Transit Traveler Information System", Computer, Environment and Urban Systems, vol. 21, No. 5, pp. 359-372, 1997.

Lessard, Robert, "The Use of Computer for Urban Transit Operations", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 586-590.

Sommerville, Fraser, et al., "Reliable Information in Everyone's Pocket—a Pilot Test", IEEE, vol. 1927, Mar. 1994, pp. 425-428.

"PROMISE—Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Specification of Promise Services, Ver. 7", Telematics Application Programme A2, Transport, Jul. 1, 1996.

"PROMISE—Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Generic Promise System Architecture, Ver. 2", Telematics Application Programme A2, Transport, Sep. 10, 1996.

"PROMISE—Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Summary of Promise Public Relation Activities, Ver. 1", Telematics Application Programme A2, Transport, Feb. 12, 1999.

"PROMISE—A Personal Mobile Traveller and Traffic Information Service—Abstract", The Institution of Electrical Engineers, 1997.

Sommerville, Fraser, et al., "The Promise of Increased Patronage", The Institution of Electrical Engineers, 1993, pp. 3/1-3/4.

"Automatic Transit Location System", Washington State Department of Transportation, Final Report, Feb. 1996.

"Advanced Traveler Aid Systems for Public Transportation", Federal Transit Administration, Sep. 1994.

"Advanced Vehicle Monitoring and Communications Systems for Bus Transit: Benefits and Economic Feasibility", U.S. Department of Transportation, Urban Mass Transportation Administration, Sep. 1991.

Leong, Robert, et al., "An Unconventional Approach to Automatic Vehicle Location and Control for Urban Transit", IEEE 1989, pp. 219-223.

"1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings", Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 807-810.

"Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings—P-253, Part 2", Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc., Oct. 1991.

Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems—Conference Record of Papers presented at the 3rd Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference 1992., Reso Hotel, Osio Plaza., pp. 49-52.

Nelson, J. Richard, "Experiences Gained in Implementing an Economical Universal Motorist System", , IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 67-71.

"The Cassiope/Eurobus Approach", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 79-81.

Kihl, Mary, "Advanced Vehicle Location System for Paratransit in Iowa", IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 381-384.

Gault, Helen, et al., "Automatic Vehicle Location and Control at OC Transpo",, IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 596-600.

Vehicle navigation & Information System—Conference Record of Papers presented at the First Vehicle Navigation and Information Systems Conference (VNIS '89), Sep. 11-13, 1999, pp. 602-605.

Heti, Gabriel, "Travelguide: Ontario's Route Guidance System Demonstration",, IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. A13-A18.

Jeffery, D.J., et al., "Advanced Traveller Information Systems in the UK: Experience from the Pleiades and Romanse Projects",, IEEE—IEE Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference, Ottawa, VNIS 1993, pp. 309-313.

Sweeney, Lawrence, E., et al., "Travinfo: A Progress Report", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 315-320.

Shimamura, Yta, et al., "Combined Position Detection System for Pedestrian/Train Mode", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 603-606.

Zavoli, Walt, "Customer Location Services", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 613-617.

Tanaka, Yoshimi, et al., "Automatic Traffic AlAnformation Provision System Utilizing Facsimile and Telephone (Now Operating in Osaka), 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings", Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. 627-632.

McDonald, Mike, et al., "Romanse (Road Management System for EuropeProject", 1994 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Yokahama, Japan, Aug. 31-Sep. 2, 1994, pp. A-11-A-14.

Scott III, Robert H., "Computer-Aided Dispatch,", 1998, pp. 46-50.

Moore, Rodney J., "Hold the Phone!", American Demographics, Ithaca, Jan./Feb. 1996, p. 68.

Delong, Jr., Edgar S., "Making 911 even better", Telephony, Dec. 14, 1987, pp. 60-63.

Bruzek, Frank J., "Class Calling Service—A Consumer Service Perspective", Globecom '85 IEEE Global Telecommunications Conference, Dec. 2-5, 1985, vol. 1 of 3, pp. 11.4.1-11.4.4.

Powell, R., et al., "Real Time Passenger Information System for the Romanse Project", Colloouin Digest—IEE, Boston, Sep. 1993, pp. 9/1-9/3.

Huber, Paul, "Public Transport Information Systems in Munich", Intelligent Transport Systems World Congress '95—Second Wold Congress on Intelligent Transport Systems, Yokohama, Japan, Nov. 9-11, 1995, pp. 2362-2366.

Ronez, Nicholas, et al, "GIS-Based Transit Information Bolsters Travel Options", GIS World, vol. 6, part 7, Jun. 1995, pp. 62-64.

Catling, Ian, et al., "TABASCO—Improving Transport Systems in Europe", Pacific Rim TransTech Conference, Jul. 30-Aug. 2, 1995, 995 Vehicle Navigation & Information Systems Conference Proceedings, Washington State Convention and Trade Center, Seattle, Washington, USA, pp. 503-507.

Dailey, D.J., "Demonstration of an Advance Public Transportation System in the Context of an IVHS Regional Architecture", Proceedings of the First World Congress on Applications of Transport Telematics and Intelligent Vehicle-Highway Systems, Nov. 30-Dec. 3, 1994, Paris, France, pp. 3024-3031.

Hubner, Paul, "Advance Public Transportation Information in Munich", International Conference on Public Transport Electronic Systems, Conference Publication No. 42, Jun. 1996.

Thompson, S.M., et al., "Exploiting Telecommunications to Delivery Real Time Transport Information", Road Transport Information and Control, Apr. 21-23, 1998, pp. 59-63, Conference Publication No. 454 IEE 1998.

Kaminitzer, David, et al., Driver Information Systems: Influencing your Route, IEE Seminar, Mar. 3, 1999, pp. 5/1-5/5.

"Board Cites ATC in Spokane Near Miss", Article in Aviation Week & Space Technology, Mar. 28, 1977, URL: http://www.aviationnow.com.

Shifrin, Carole A., "Gate Assignment Expert System Reduces Delays at United's Hubs", Article in Aviation Week & Space Technology, Jan. 25, 1988.

"United Airlines applies TI's advance technologies to improve gate management at major airports", Article in Business Wire, Inc., Nov. 19, 1987.

Musich, Paula, "Airline Designs Software to move planes, people; Unite Airline's use of Covia Corp.'s Open Systems Manager, Connectivity Section", Article in PC Week, Jun. 7, 1988, vol. 5, No. 23, p. C11.

Stoll, Marilyn, "Systems help Airlines Manage Gate Schedules; Connectivity Supplement", PC Week, Jul. 25, 1988, vol. 5, No. 30, p. C4.

Reddy, Shyamala, "Traveling LAN: United Airlines Networks Its Terminals", Article in The Local Area Network Magazine, Jan. 1990, vol. 5, No. 1, p. 108.

Fisher, Sharon, "Networked Airport Systems help Travelers find their way; United Airlines subsidiary Covia Corp. devices integrated network.", Article in Software Magazine, Mar. 15, 1990, vol. 10, No. 4, p. 31.

Henderson, Danna K., "Automation Takes aim at airports: the power of the networked PC is being unleashed on passenger handling and ramp activities worldwide.", Article in Air Transport Wold, Aug. 1990., Vol. 27, No. 8, p. 52.

"United Airlines introduces United Cargo Plug I, a new cargo computer system to serve freight forwarders", Business Wire, Oct. 22, 1990.

Miller, Barry, "Special Report: Airline Equipment, Service Center", Aviation Week & Space Technology, Aug. 25, 1975, p. 51.

Lyon, Mark W., "Cargo Net Debate Splits Industry", Journal of Commerce, Specials, p. 4, Jul. 27, 1992.

Davies, I.L., et al., "Electronics and the Aeroplane", Proceedings of the Institution of Electrical Engineers, Paper No. 7604, delivered before the IEE Electronics Division, Oct. 29, 1975.

"Global Niche", Flight International, Sep. 26, 1990.

"Real-Time Briefings", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Oct. 13, 1986.

Flanagan, Mike, et al., "Amelia Earhart—Mystery Still Clouds Soaring Achievements", Chicago Tribune, Jul. 5, 1987, Final Edition, p. 5, Tempo Woman.

"Official Airline Guides", Airports®, Nov. 20, 1990, Around Airports, vol. 7, No. 47, p. 485.

"Automation System Gains Acceptance", Aviation Week & Space Technology, Nov. 23, 1992, vol. 137, No. 21, p. 97.

Klass, Philip, "French Testing Ground-Derived MLS ", Aviation & Space Technology, Avionics, p. 56, Dec. 15, 1975.

"Forecast Realized for ATC System", Aviation & Space Technology, Mar. 17, 1975, Avionics, p. 168.

Henderson, Danna, et al., "Ionworks: America West Automates New Phoenix Terminal Fully Integrated System to Hamdle Customer-Service Demands (America West Airlines Inc) (Includes Related Article Automation of passenger Service at Airports)", Airport Transport World, May 1, 1991. vol. 62.

3 Pages from a web site search under http://mit.edu/afs/net.mit/edu/project/attic/usa-today/tech/37, Jun. 12, 2003.

"What's New in passenger Handling Equipment", Air Transport World, vol. 24, p. 62, Sep. 1987.

"Senator Urges Acceleration of Navstar", Aviation & Space Technology, Avionics, p. 153, Oct. 3, 1983.

"AFSC Broadens Joint Program Efforts", Aviation & Space Technology, System Acquisition, p. 83, Ju. 19, 1976.

Herskovitz, Don, "GPS Insurance Antijamming the System; Brief Article", Journal of Electronic Defense, Dec. 1, 2000, No. 12, vol. 23, p. 41.

Hambly, Richard M., et al., "Aircraft Traffic Management on the Airport Surface Using VHF Data Link for CNS", IEEE AES Systems Magazine, Mar. 1995, pp. 9-13.

Berzins. G., et al., "INMARSAT: Worldwide Mobile Satellite Services on Seas, in Air and on Land", Space Technology, vol. 10, No. 4, pp. 231-237, 1990.

Jenney, L.L., et al., "Man as Manager of Automated Resources in an Advanced Air Traffic System", J. Aircraft, vol. 12, No. 12, Dec. 1975.

"Routing & Scheduling System improvements from RTSI; Routing Technology Software, Inc.; Product Announcement", Modern Brewery Age, vol. 43, No. 3, p. 11S, Jan. 20, 1992.

Yanacek, Frank, "Hitching to the stars; satellites for shipment tracking", Research Information Transportation Journals, Combined, No. 6, vol. 29, p. 16.

Stoll, Marilyn, "For on-the-road firms, hand-held terminals are pivotal. Connectivity", Research Information Transportation Journals, Combined, No. 34, vol. 5, p. C11.

"IBM and Hunt to Market New Truck Tracker; International Business Machines", J.B. Hunt Transport Services; Brief Article, No. 210, vol. 101, p. 4.

Klass, Philip J., "Two Carriers Plan Automatic Data Link", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Air Transport Section, May 23, 2977, p. 36.

"Data Link Evolved Over Three Decades", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Air Transport Section, May 23, 1977, p. 36.

Klass, Philip J., "American to Install Printers in Cockpits", Aviation Week and Space Technology, Avionics, Jul. 21, 1980, p. 56.

Lefer, Henry, "Computers on a boon to E&M, but at a price", Air Transport World, vol. 23, p. 53, Feb. 1986.

Donaghue, J.A., "Choice of Data Link Systems Expands as New Generation Hits the Market", Air Transport World, vol. 20, p. 58, Apr. 1983.

Klass, Philip J., "Digital Network Could Improve Aircraft Links to Operations, ATC", Aviation Week and Space Technology, International Air Transport Section, vol. 131, No. 21, p. 121, Nov. 20, 1989.

Board Cites ATC in Spokane Near Miss, Article in Aviation Week & Space Technology, Safety Section, Mar. 28, 1977, p. 59.

"Vicorp Interactive Systems", Aviation Daily, Aviation Suppliers Section, vol. 309, No. 17, p. 147.

Neumann, Dr. Horst, "ATC Concepts with Extensive Utilization of Automatic Data Processing", pp. 4-1 to 4-9; no Publication Information or Date Information Provided.

Balke, Kevin,, et al., Collection and Dissemination of Real-Time Travel Time and Incident Information with In-Vehicle Communication Technologies, pp. 77-82, no Publication Information or Date Information Available.

* cited by examiner

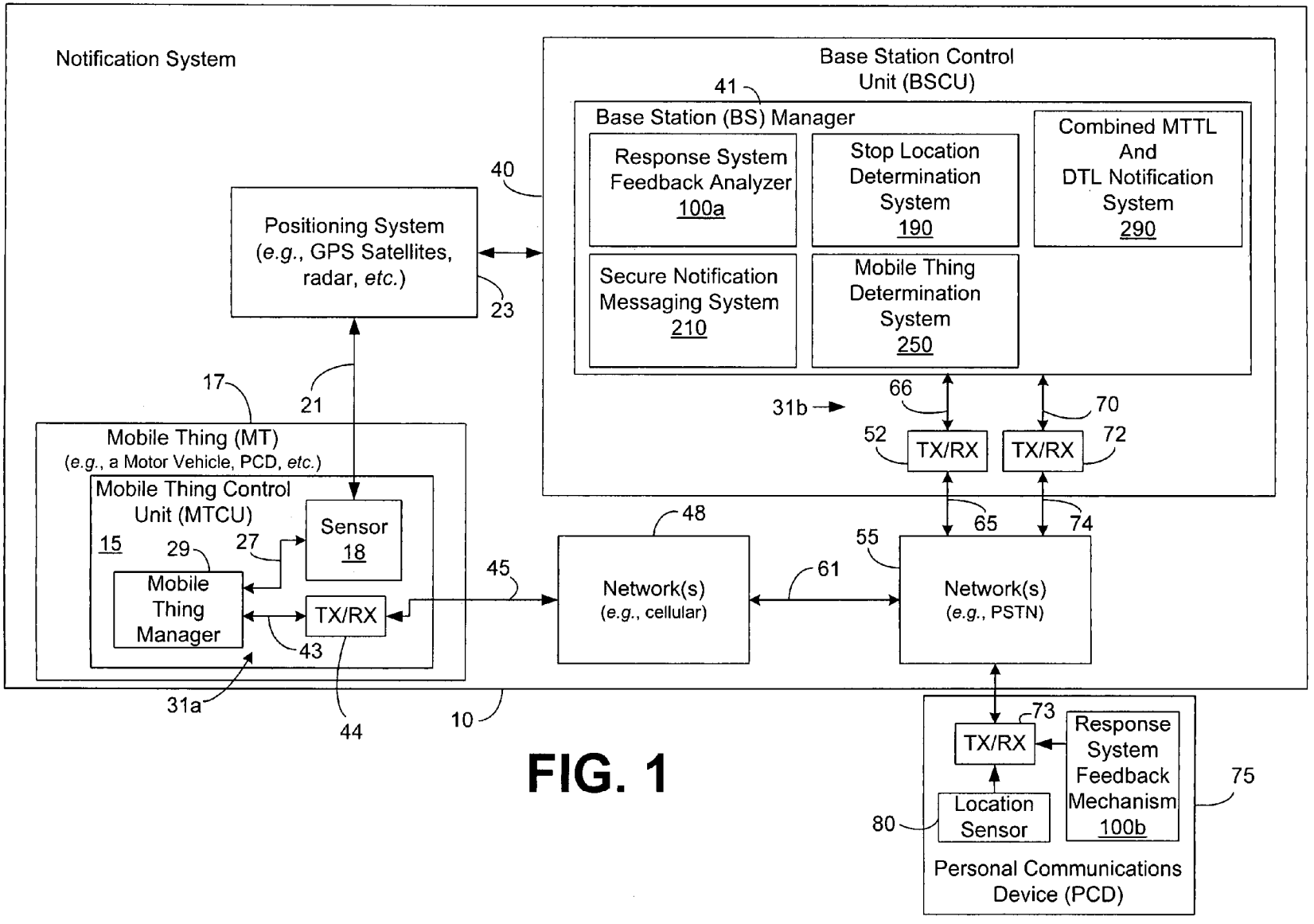

Notification System
Base Station Control Unit (BSCU)
41
Base Station (BS) Manager
Response System Feedback Analyzer 100a
Stop Location Determination System 190
Combined MTTL And DTL Notification System 290
Secure Notification Messaging System 210
Mobile Thing Determination System 250
40
Positioning System (e.g., GPS Satellites, radar, etc.)
23
17
21
31b
66
70
52
TX/RX
TX/RX
72
Mobile Thing (MT)
(e.g., a Motor Vehicle, PCD, etc.)
Mobile Thing Control Unit (MTCU)
15
29
27
Sensor 18
Mobile Thing Manager
TX/RX
43
45
48
65
74
55
61
Network(s) (e.g., cellular)
Network(s) (e.g., PSTN)
31a
44
10
73
TX/RX
Response System Feedback Mechanism 100b
75
80
Location Sensor
Personal Communications Device (PCD)

FIG. 1

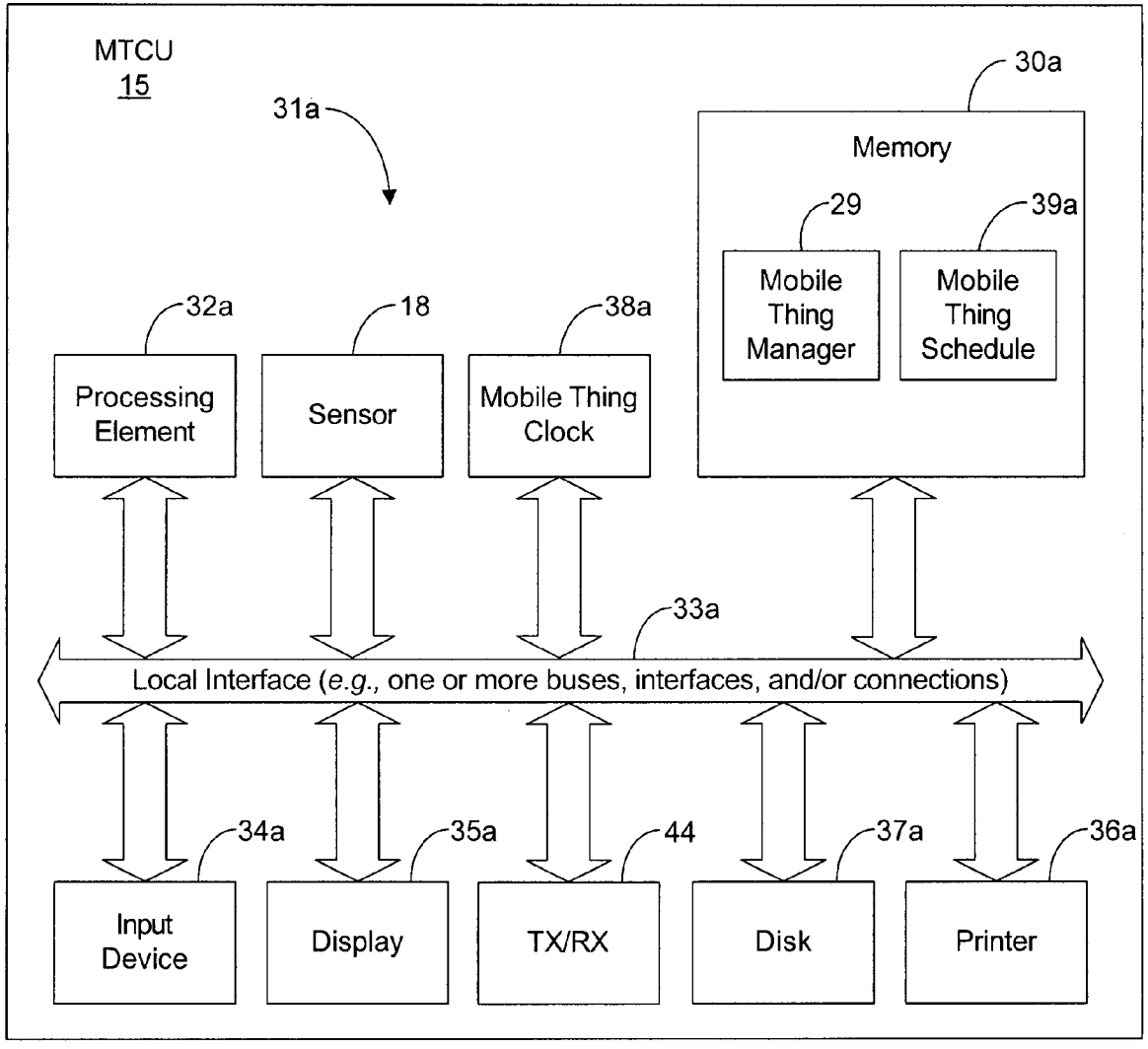

MTCU
15
31a
30a
Memory
29
39a
Mobile Thing Manager
Mobile Thing Schedule
32a
18
38a
Processing Element
Sensor
Mobile Thing Clock
33a
Local Interface (e.g., one or more buses, interfaces, and/or connections)
34a
35a
44
37a
36a
Input Device
Display
TX/RX
Disk
Printer

FIG. 2

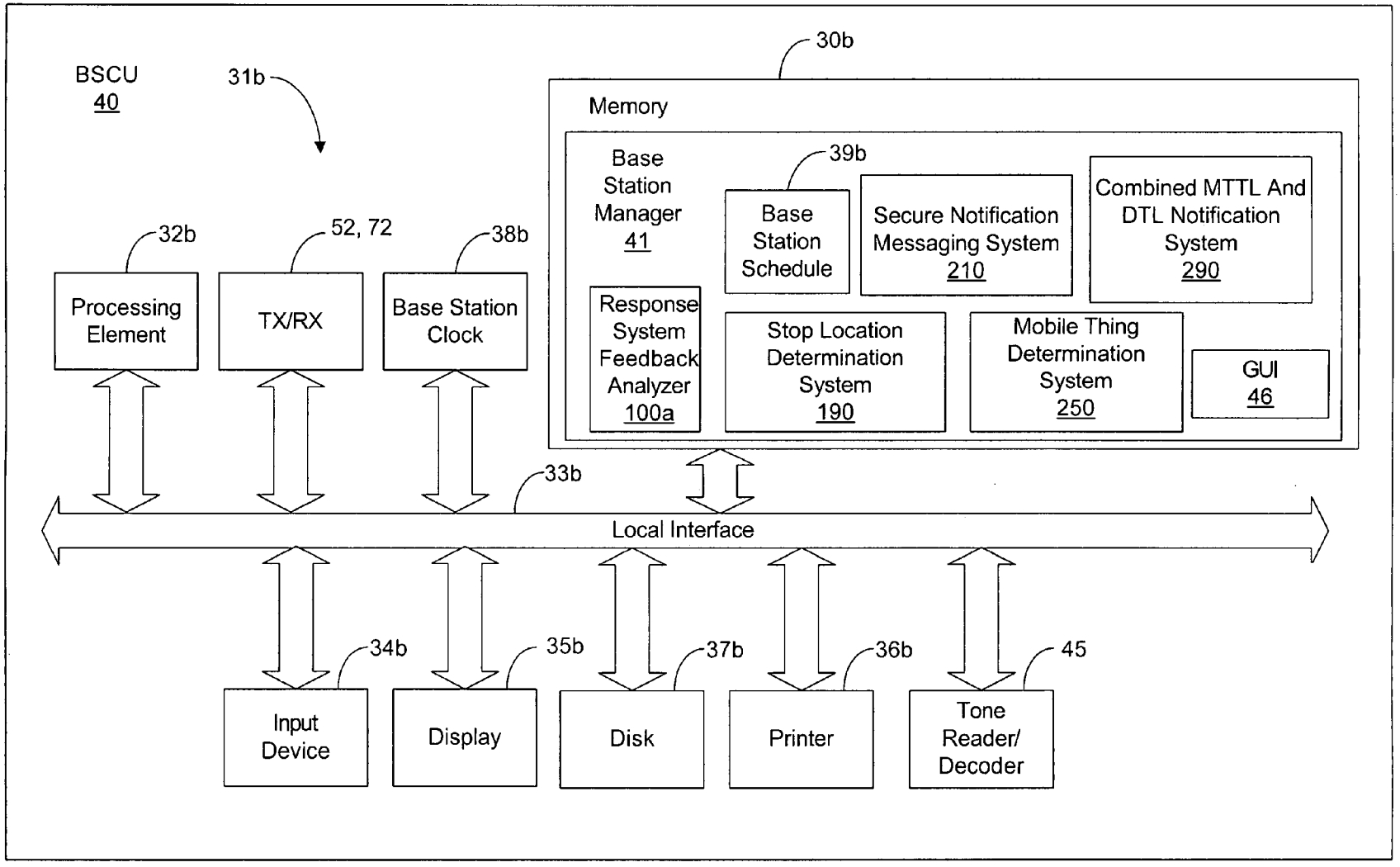

BSCU
40
31b
30b
Memory
Base Station Manager
41
39b
Base Station Schedule
Secure Notification Messaging System
210
Combined MTTL And DTL Notification System
290
Response System Feedback Analyzer
100a
Stop Location Determination System
190
Mobile Thing Determination System
250
GUI
46
32b
52, 72
38b
Processing Element
TX/RX
Base Station Clock
33b
Local Interface
34b
35b
37b
36b
45
Input Device
Display
Disk
Printer
Tone Reader/ Decoder

FIG. 3

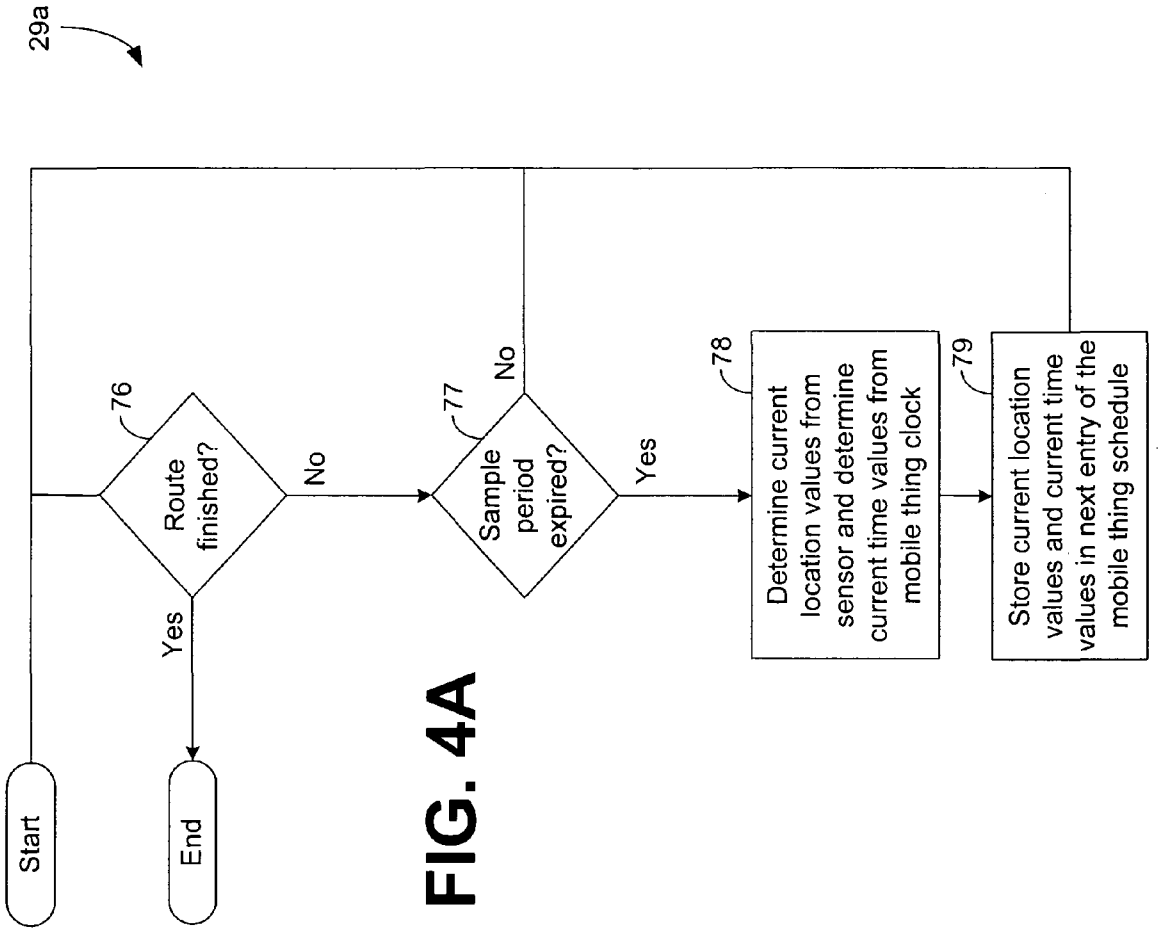

29a
Start
End
Route finished?
76
Yes
No
Sample period expired?
77
No
Yes
Determine current location values from sensor and determine current time values from mobile thing clock
78
Store current location values and current time values in next entry of the mobile thing schedule
79

FIG. 4A

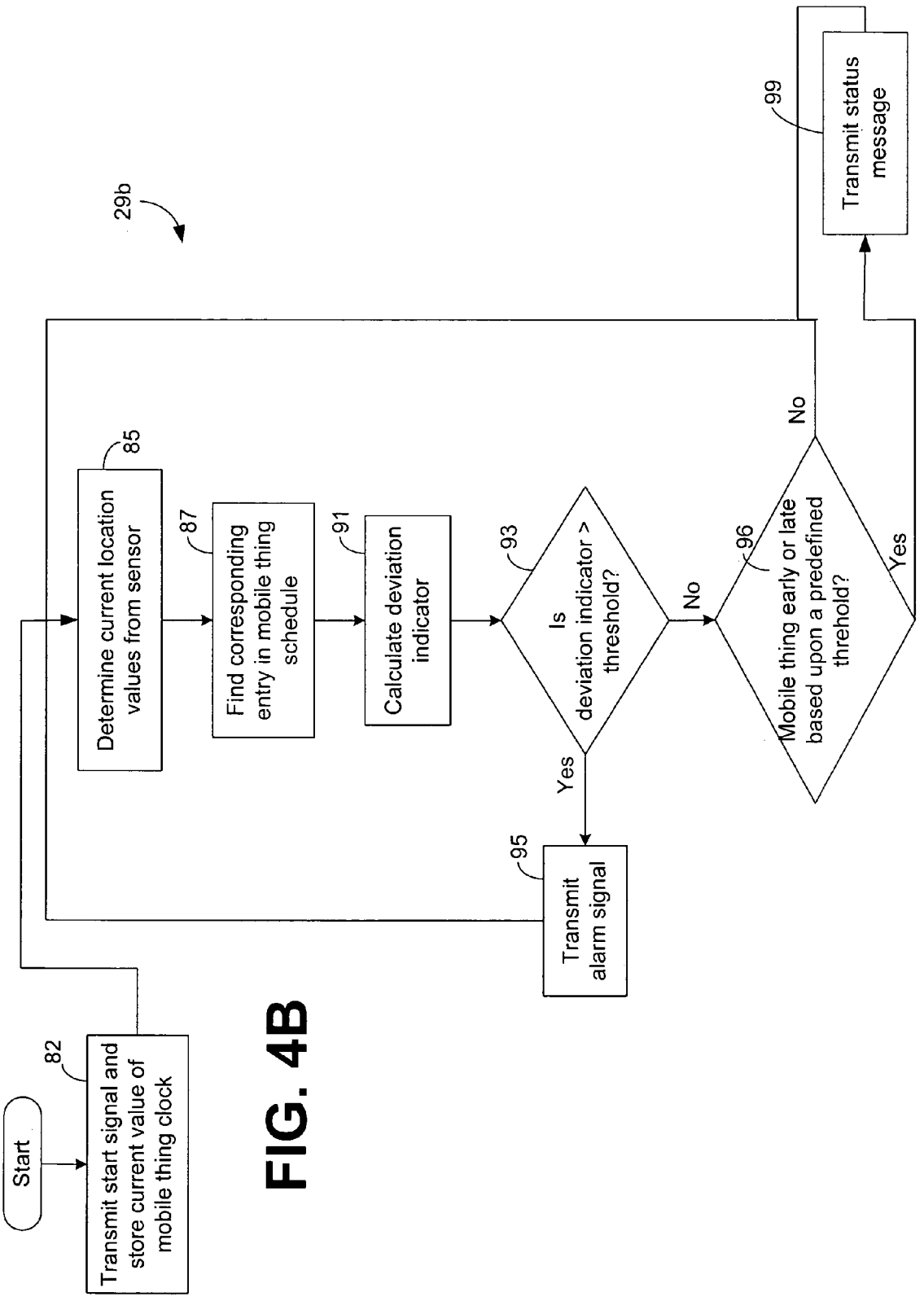

29b
Start
82
Transmit start signal and store current value of mobile thing clock
85
Determine current location values from sensor
87
Find corresponding entry in mobile thing schedule
91
Calculate deviation indicator
93
Is deviation indicator > threshold?
Yes
95
Transmit alarm signal
No
96
Mobile thing early or late based upon a predefined threhold?
Yes
No
99
Transmit status message

FIG. 4B

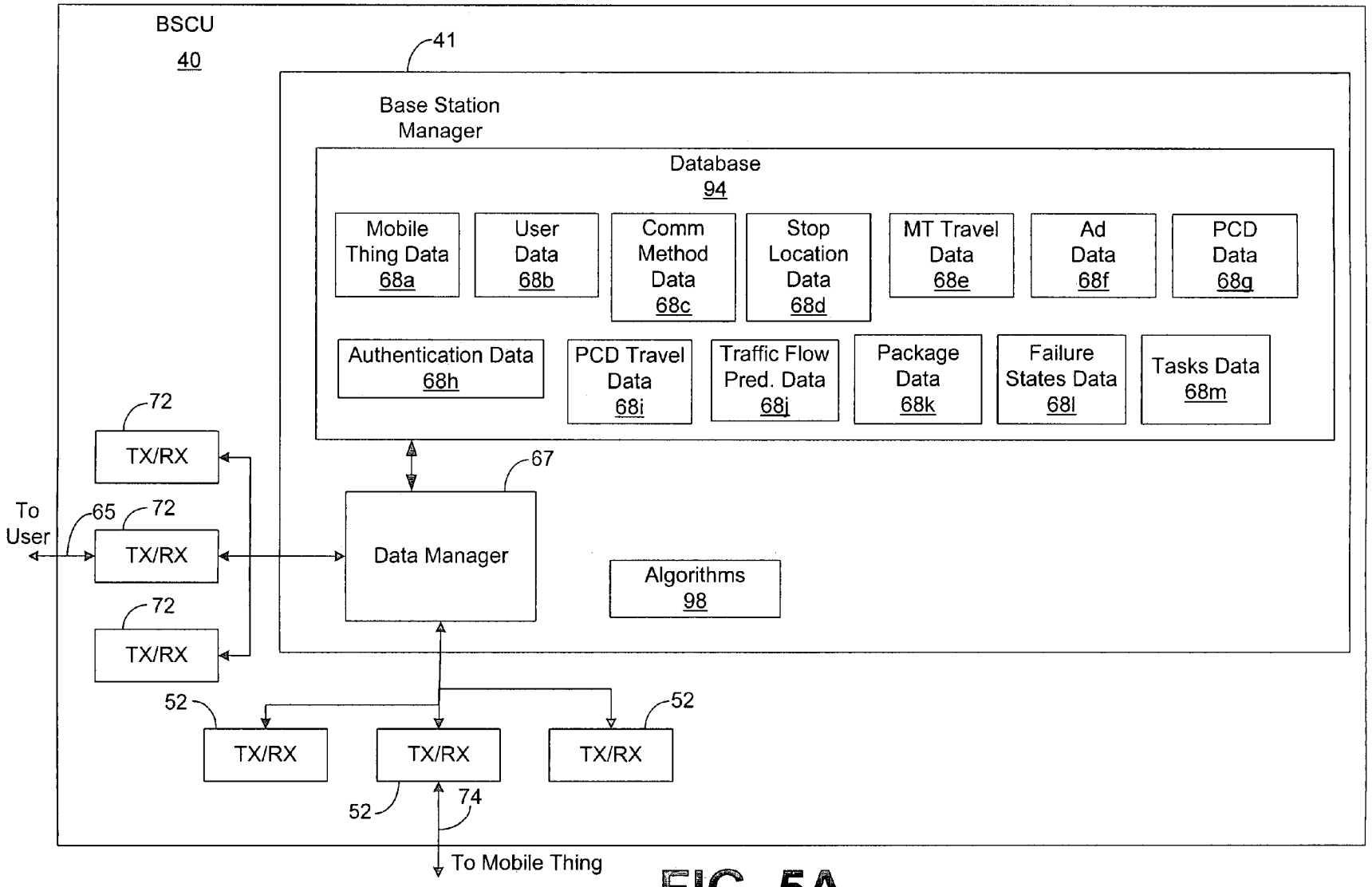
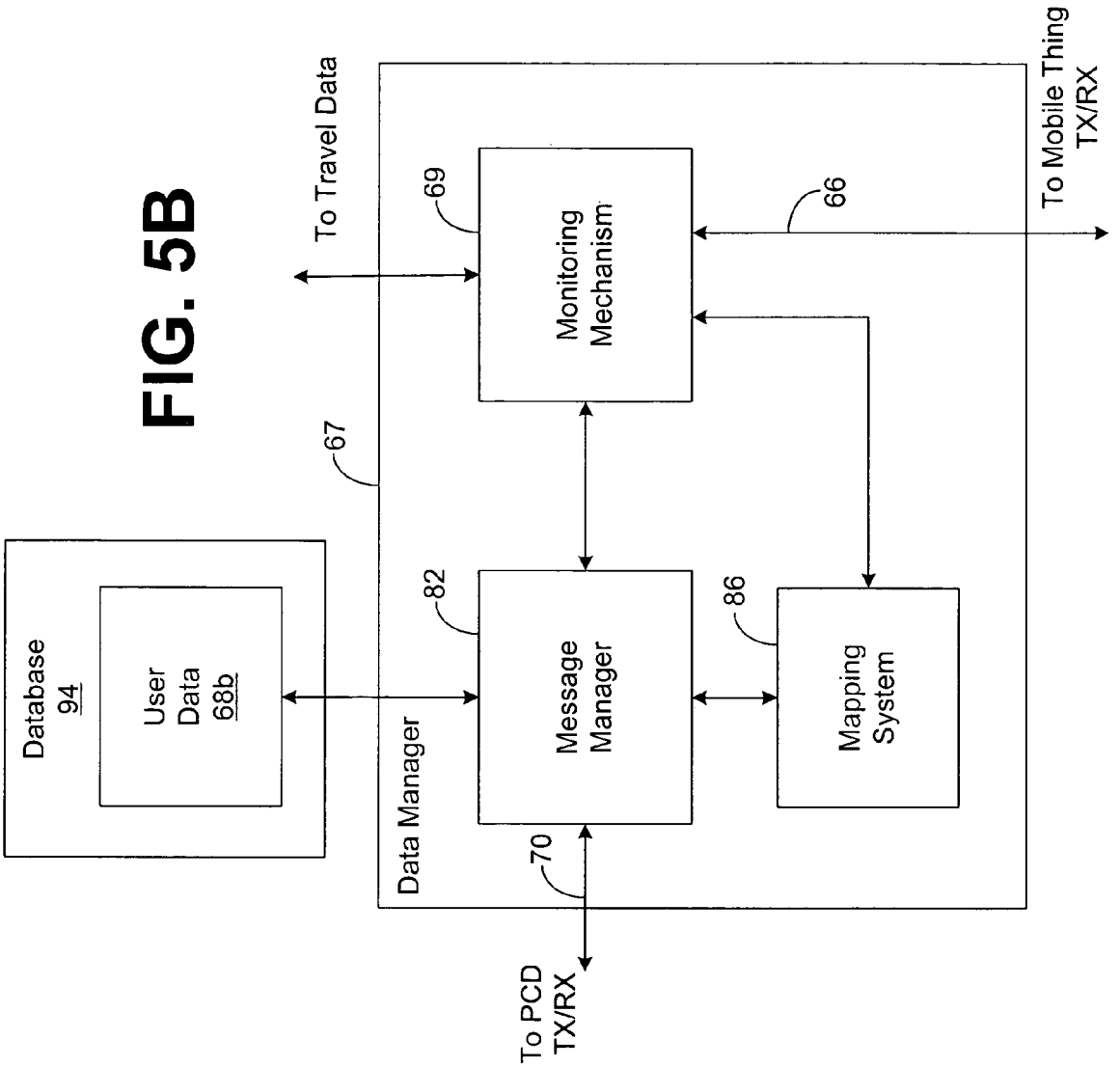

BSCU
40
41
Base Station Manager
Database
94
Mobile Thing Data 68a
User Data 68b
Comm Method Data 68c
Stop Location Data 68d
MT Travel Data 68e
Ad Data 68f
PCD Data 68g
Authentication Data 68h
PCD Travel Data 68i
Traffic Flow Pred. Data 68j
Package Data 68k
Failure States Data 68l
Tasks Data 68m
72
TX/RX
67
To User
65
Data Manager
Algorithms 98
52
74
To Mobile Thing

FIG. 5A

FIG. 5B


To Travel Data
To Mobile Thing TX/RX
69
66
Monitoring Mechanism
67
Database 94
User Data 68b
82
86
Message Manager
Mapping System
Data Manager
70
To PCD TX/RX

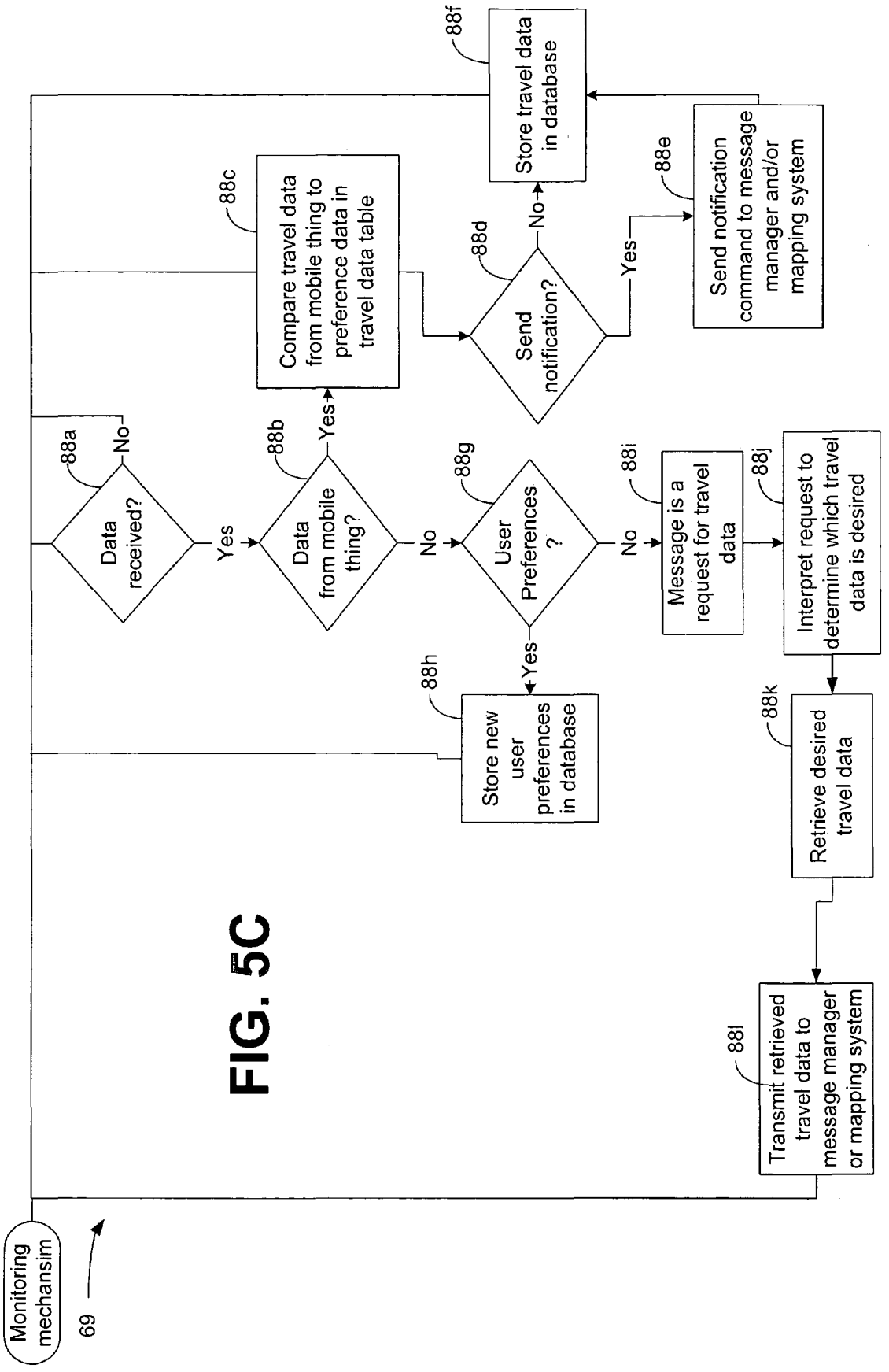

Monitoring mechansim
69
88a
Data received?
No
Yes
88b
Data from mobile thing?
Yes
No
88c
Compare travel data from mobile thing to preference data in travel data table
88d
Send notification?
No
Yes
88e
Send notification command to message manager and/or mapping system
88f
Store travel data in database
88g
User Preferences ?
Yes
No
88h
Store new user preferences in database
88i
Message is a request for travel data
88j
Interpret request to determine which travel data is desired
88k
Retrieve desired travel data
88l
Transmit retrieved travel data to message manager or mapping system

FIG. 5C

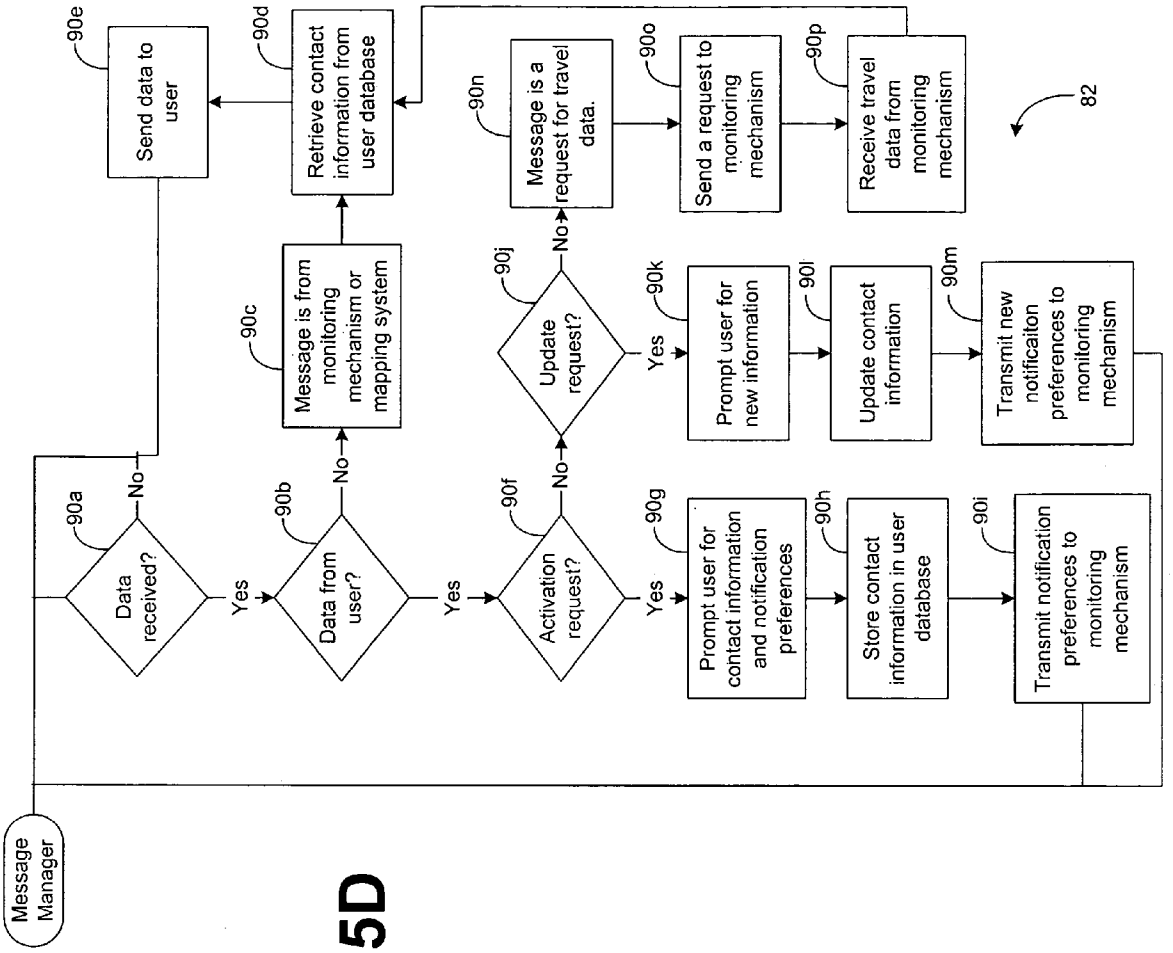

Message Manager
Data received?
90a
No
Yes
Send data to user
90e
Data from user?
90b
No
Yes
Message is from monitoring mechanism or mapping system
90c
Retrieve contact information from user database
90d
Activation request?
90f
No
Yes
Prompt user for contact information and notification preferences
90g
Store contact information in user database
90h
Transmit notification preferences to monitoring mechanism
90i
Update request?
90j
No
Yes
Prompt user for new information
90k
Update contact information
90l
Transmit new notificaiton preferences to monitoring mechanism
90m
Message is a request for travel data.
90n
Send a request to monitoring mechanism
90o
Receive travel data from monitoring mechanism
90p
82

FIG. 5D

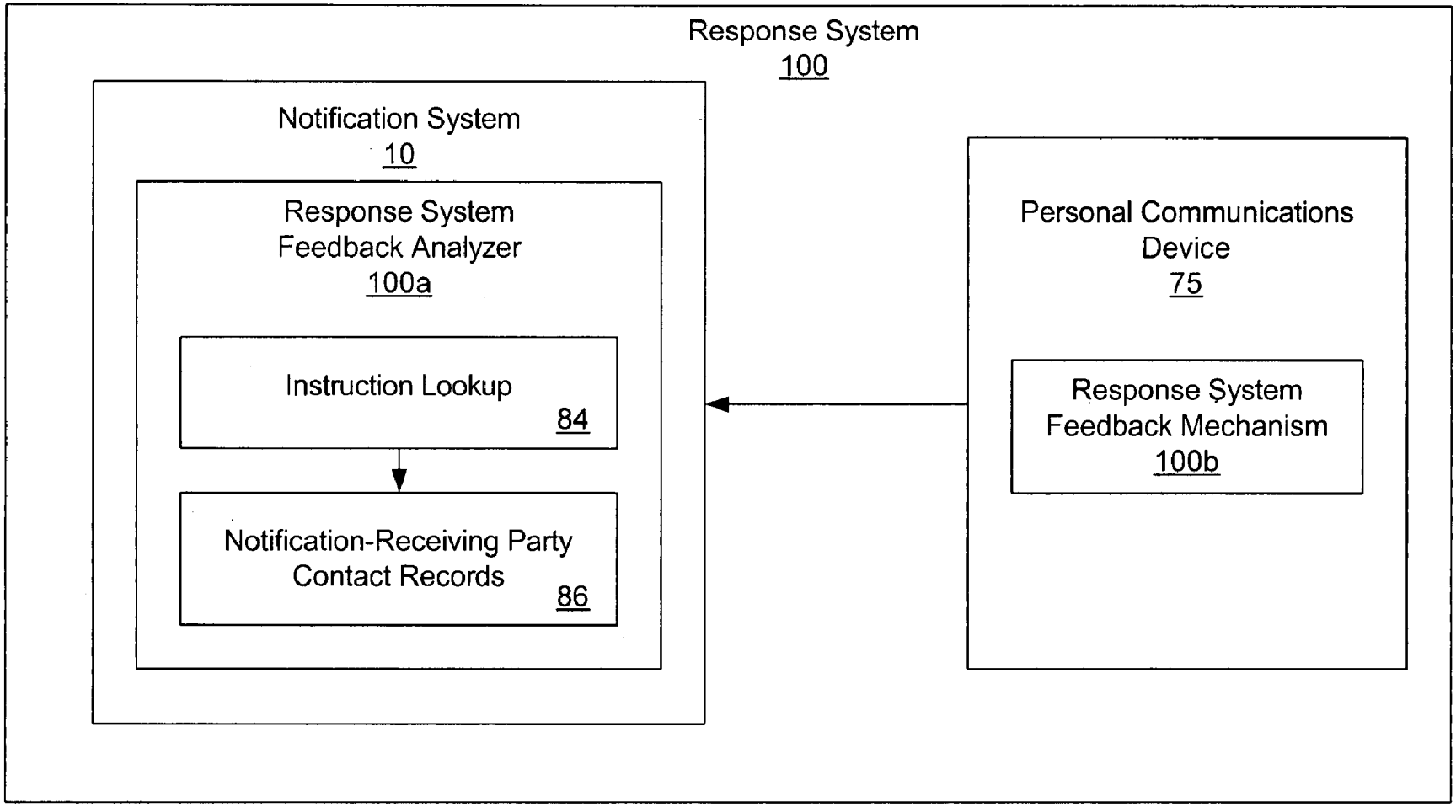

Response System
100
Notification System
10
Response System
Feedback Analyzer
100a
Instruction Lookup
84
Notification-Receiving Party
Contact Records
86
Personal Communications
Device
75
Response System
Feedback Mechanism
100b

FIG. 6

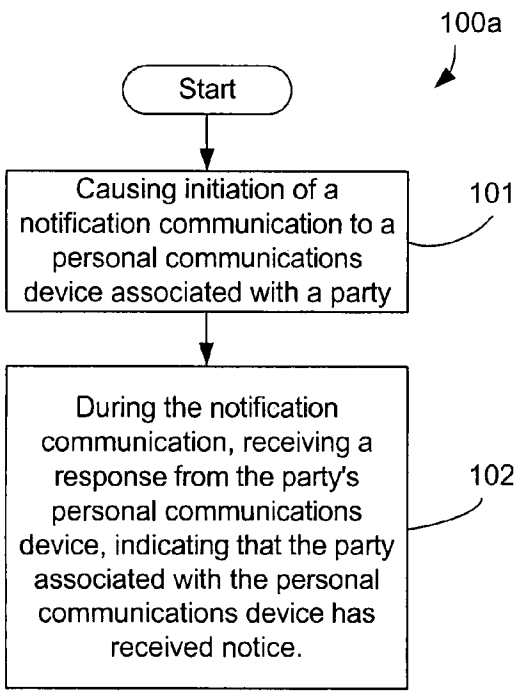


FIG. 7A

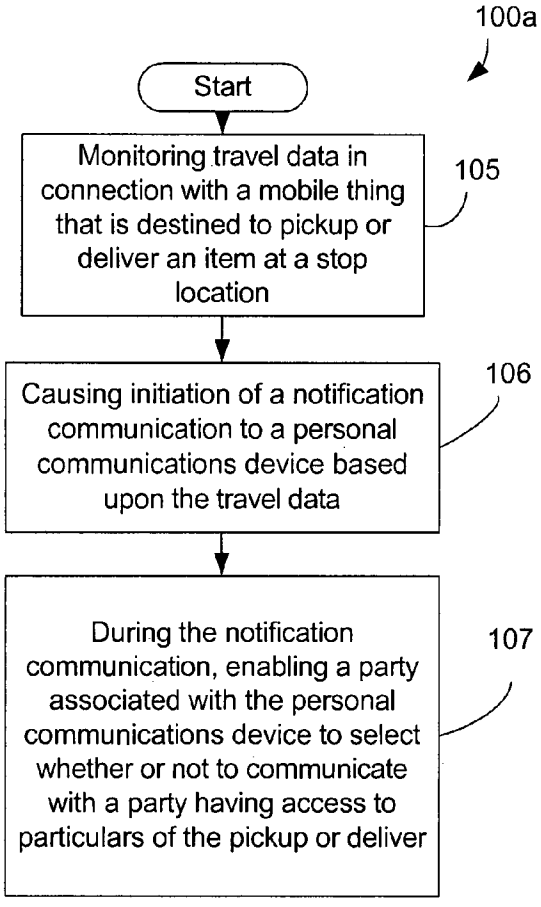


FIG. 7B

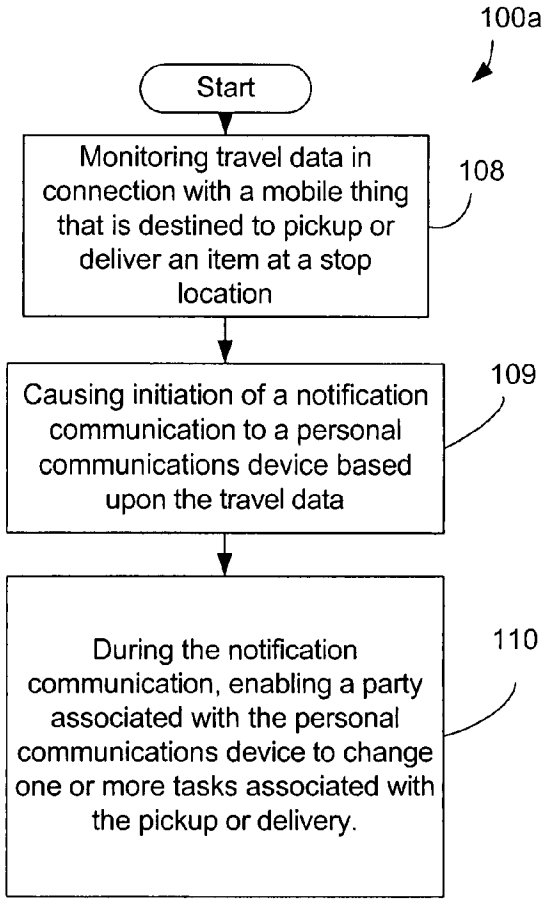


FIG. 7C

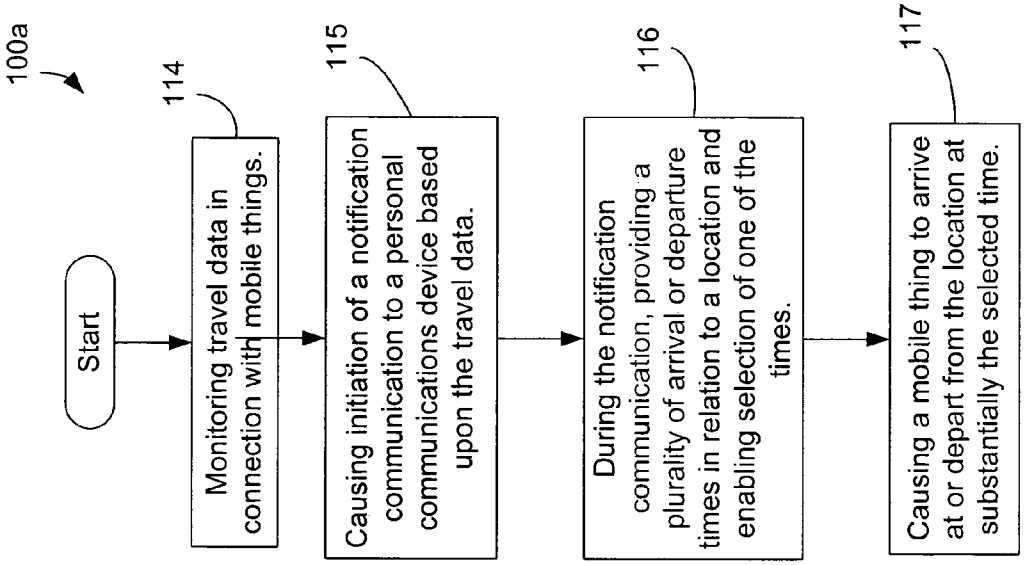

100a
Start
114
Monitoring travel data in connection with mobile things.
115
Causing initiation of a notification communication to a personal communications device based upon the travel data.
116
During the notification communication, providing a plurality of arrival or departure times in relation to a location and enabling selection of one of the times.
117
Causing a mobile thing to arrive at or depart from the location at substantially the selected time.

FIG. 7D

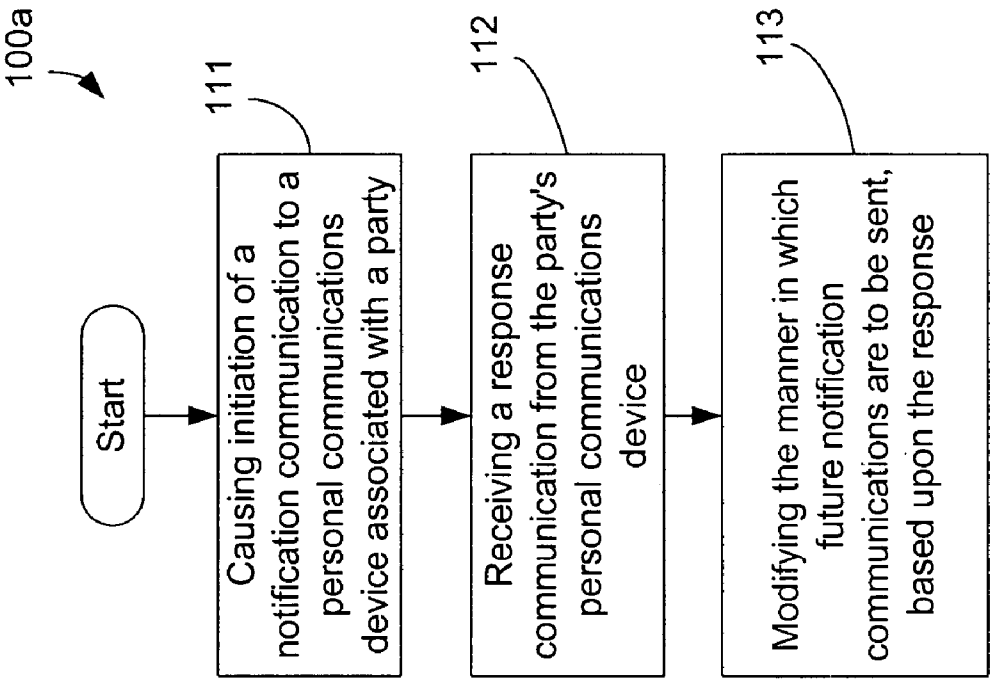

100a
Start
111
Causing initiation of a notification communication to a personal communications device associated with a party
112
Receiving a response communication from the party's personal communications device
113
Modifying the manner in which future notification communications are to be sent, based upon the response

FIG. 8

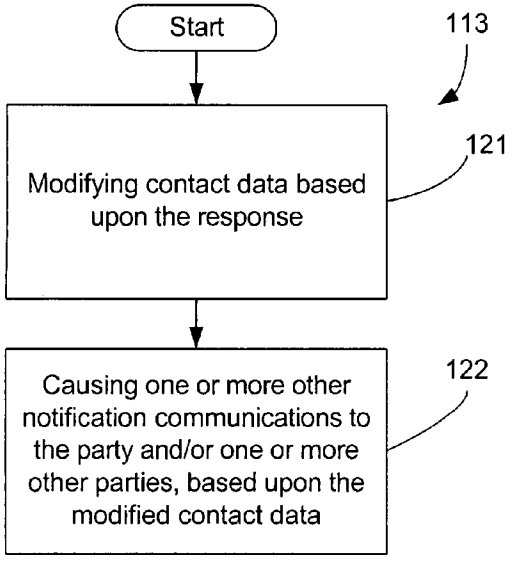


FIG. 9A

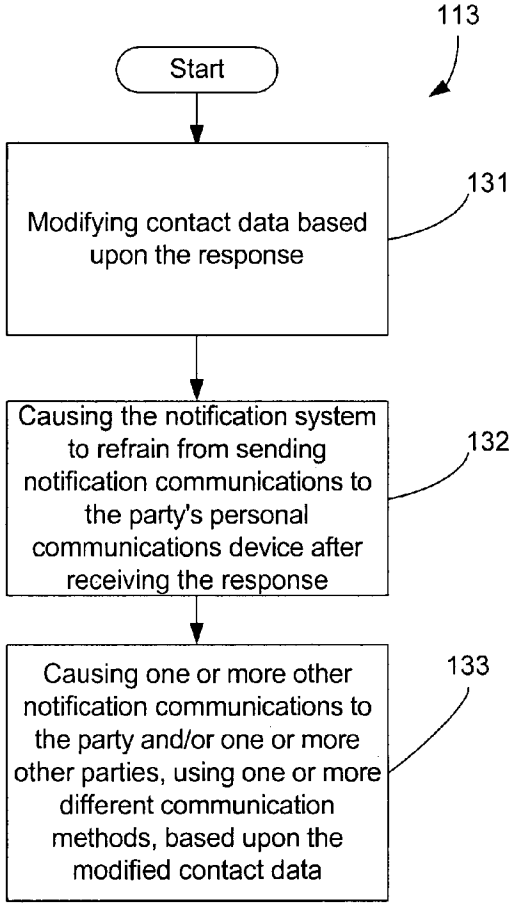


FIG. 9B

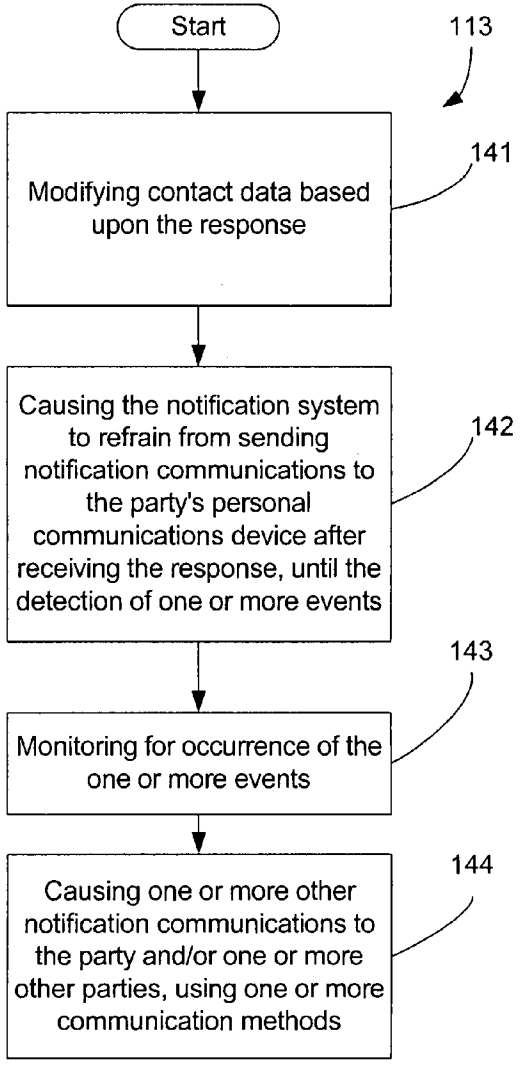


FIG. 9C

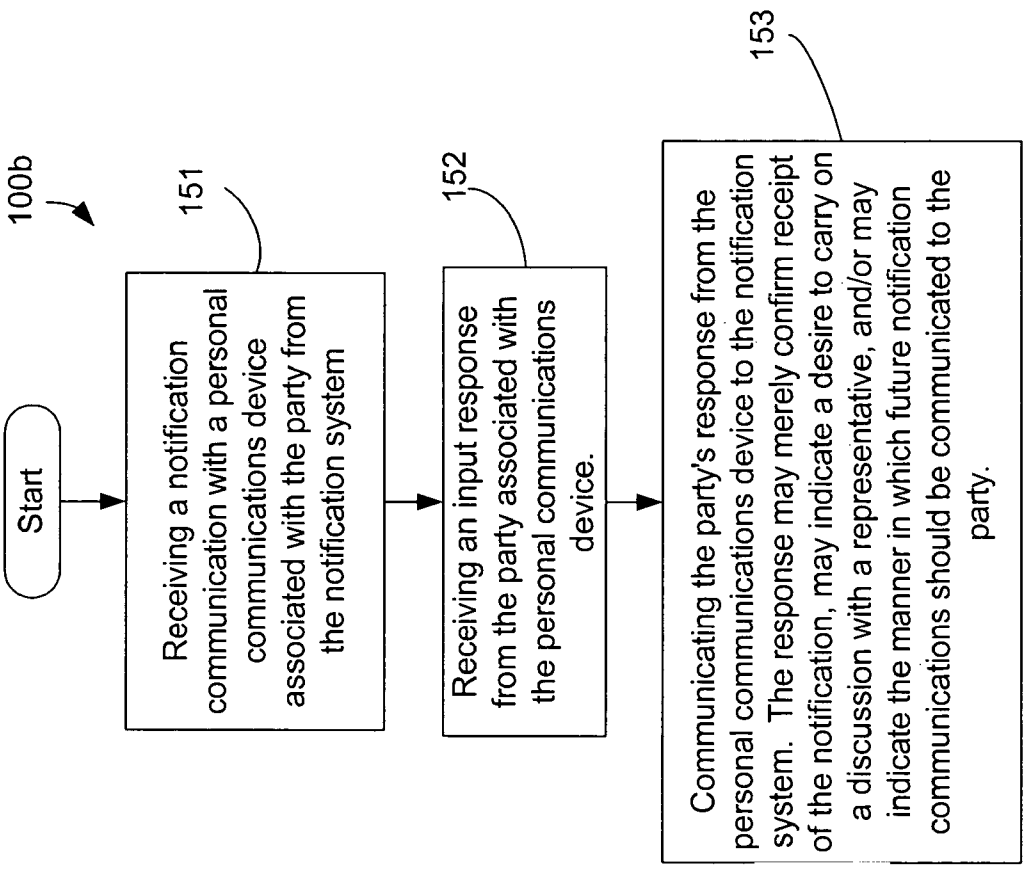

100b
Start
151
Receiving a notification communication with a personal communications device associated with the party from the notification system
152
Receiving an input response from the party associated with the personal communications device.
153
Communicating the party's response from the personal communications device to the notification system. The response may merely confirm receipt of the notification, may indicate a desire to carry on a discussion with a representative, and/or may indicate the manner in which future notification communications should be communicated to the party.

FIG. 10

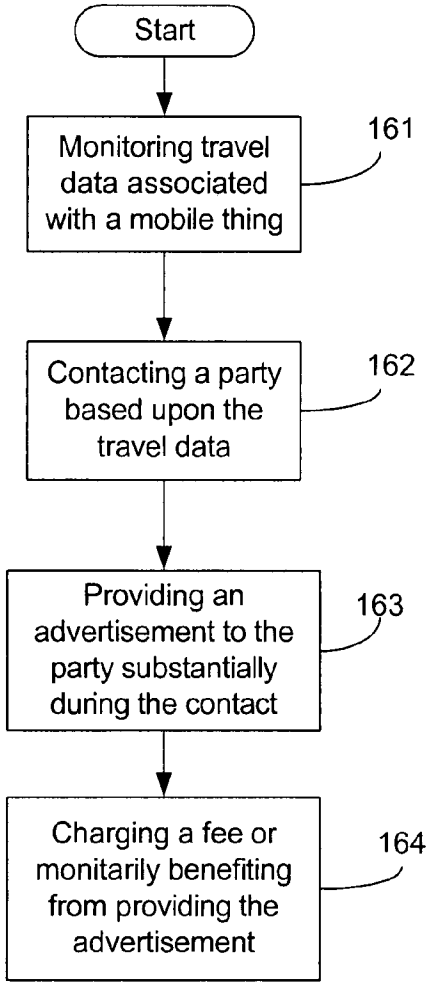

Start
Monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing
161
Contacting a party based upon the travel data
162
Providing an advertisement to the party substantially during the contact
163
Charging a fee or monitarily benefiting from providing the advertisement
164

FIG. 11

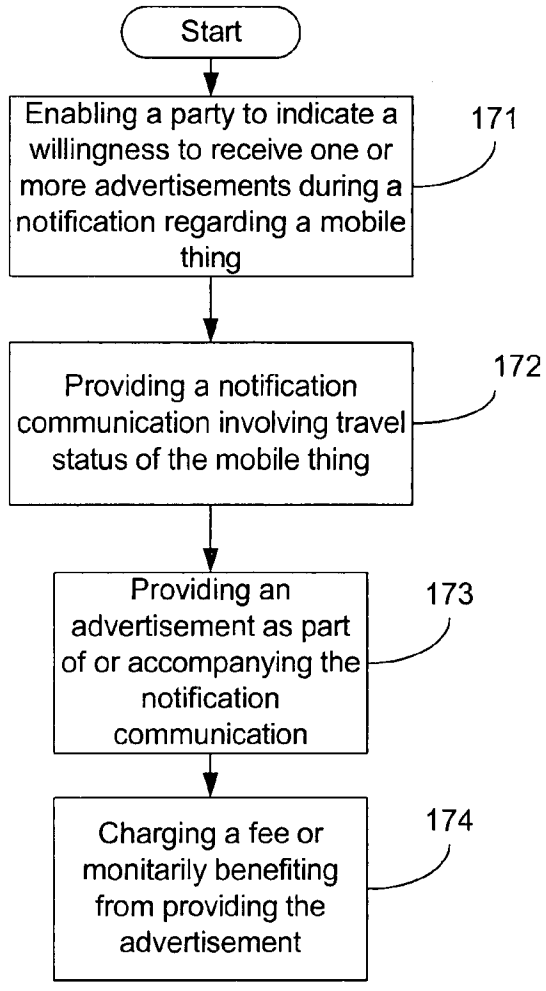

Start
Enabling a party to indicate a willingness to receive one or more advertisements during a notification regarding a mobile thing
171
Providing a notification communication involving travel status of the mobile thing
172
Providing an advertisement as part of or accompanying the notification communication
173
Charging a fee or monitarily benefiting from providing the advertisement
174

FIG. 12

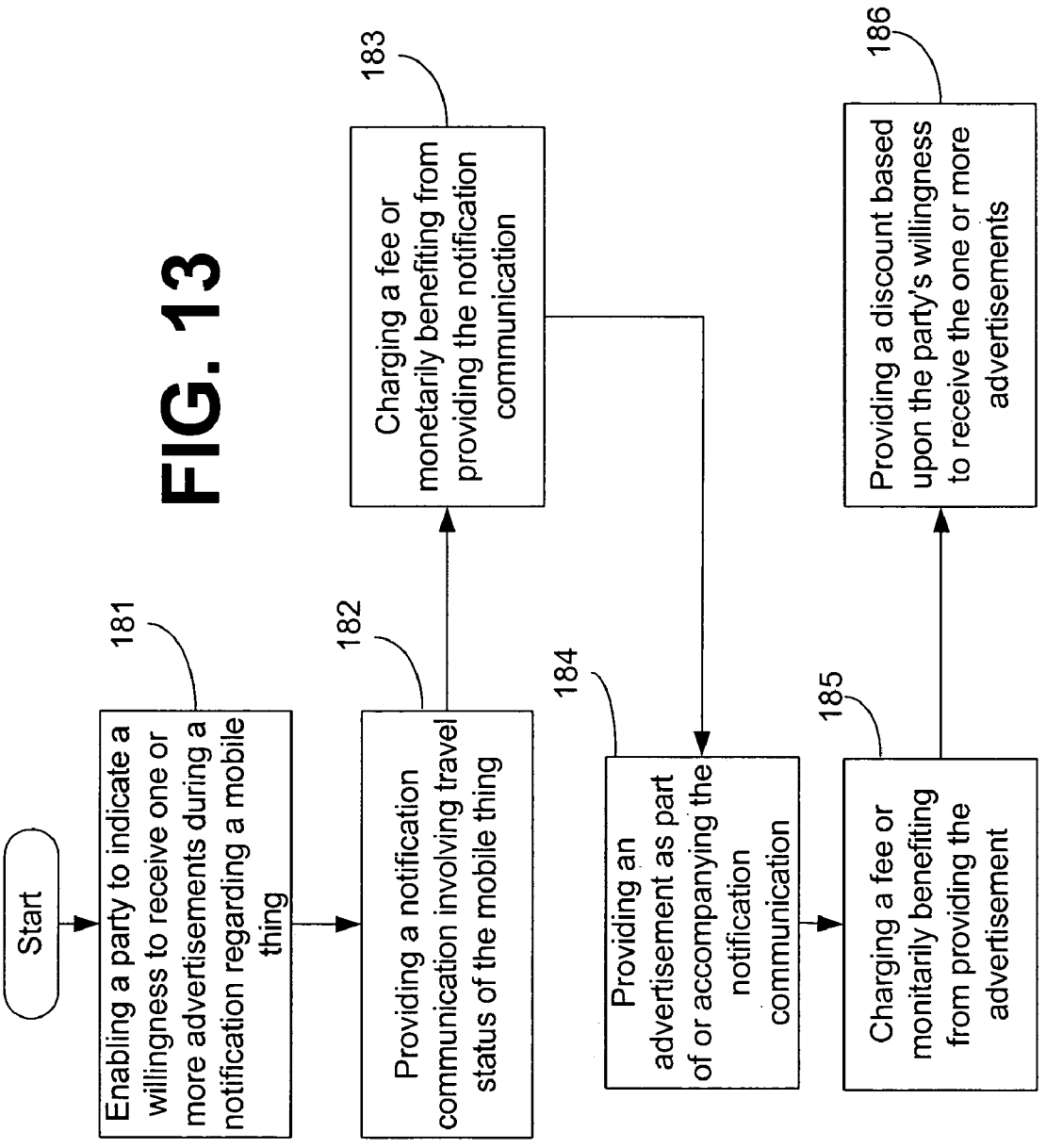

Start
Enabling a party to indicate a willingness to receive one or more advertisements during a notification regarding a mobile thing
181
Providing a notification communication involving travel status of the mobile thing
182
Charging a fee or monetarily benefiting from providing the notification communication
183
Providing an advertisement as part of or accompanying the notification communication
184
Charging a fee or monitarily benefiting from providing the advertisement
185
Providing a discount based upon the party's willingness to receive the one or more advertisements
186

FIG. 13

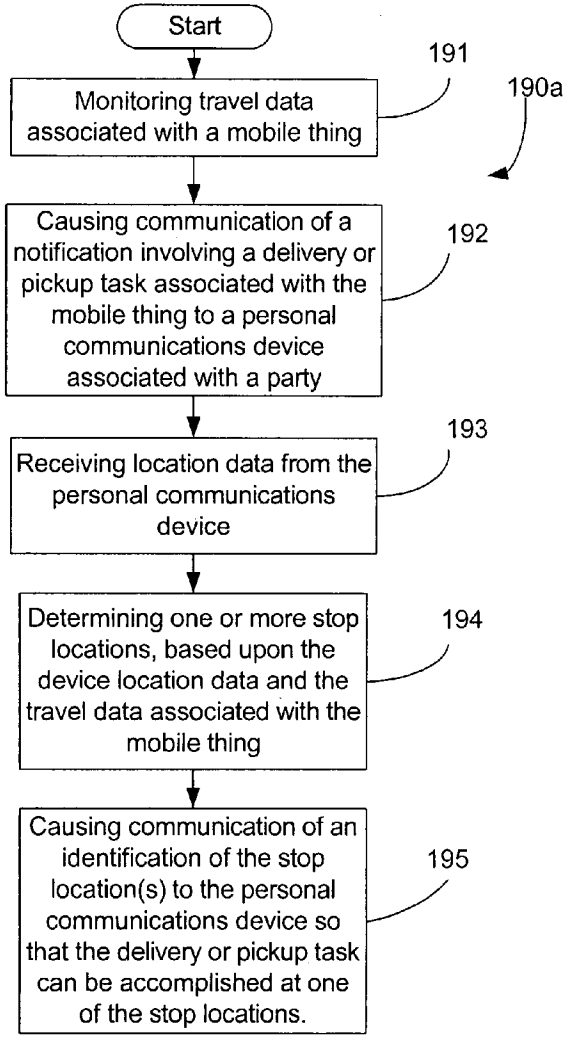


FIG. 14A

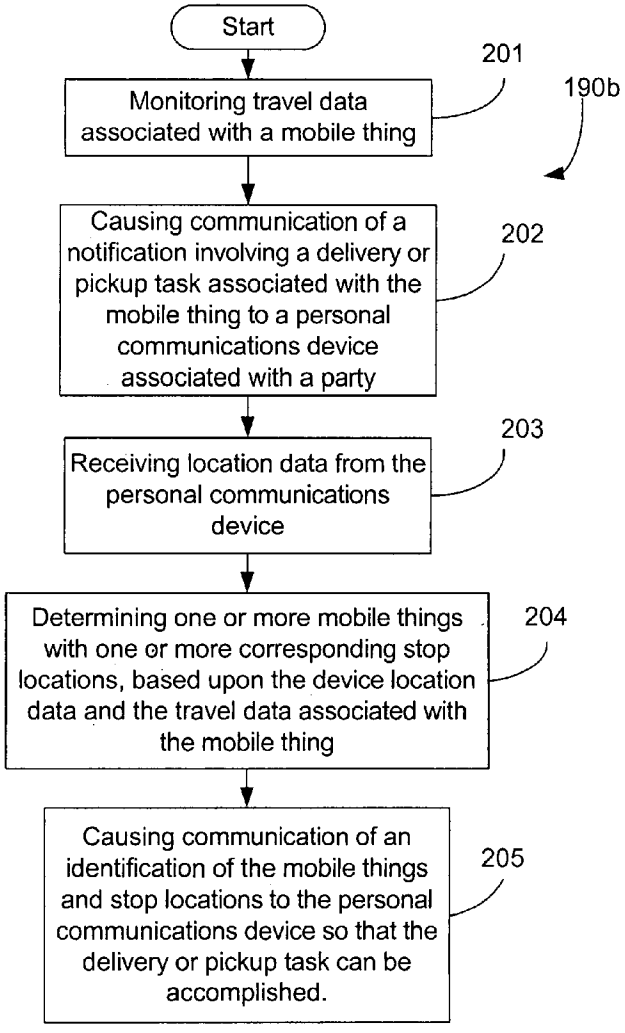


FIG. 14B

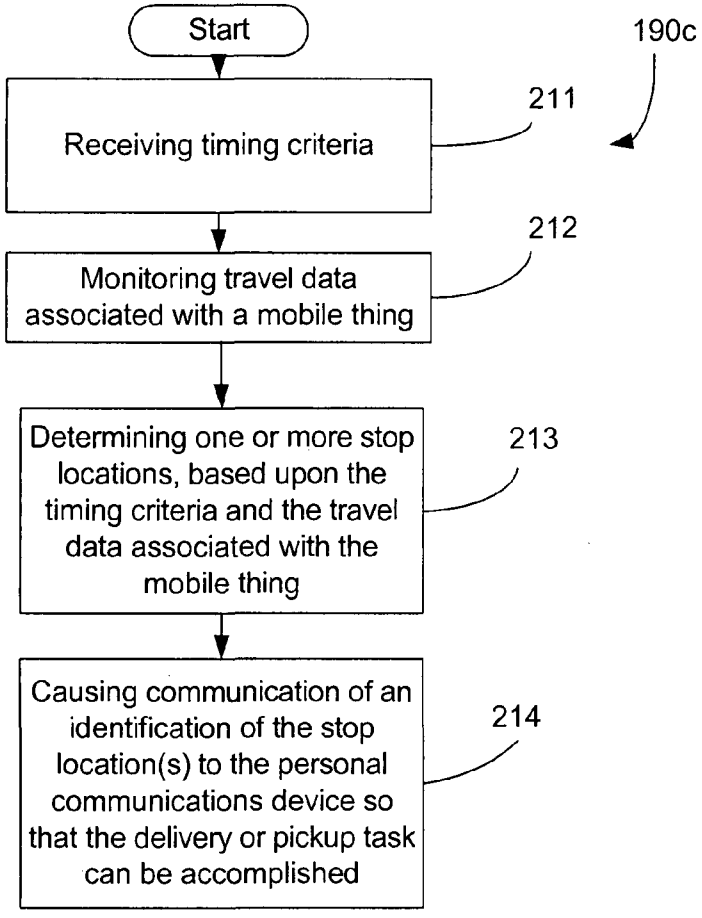


FIG. 15A

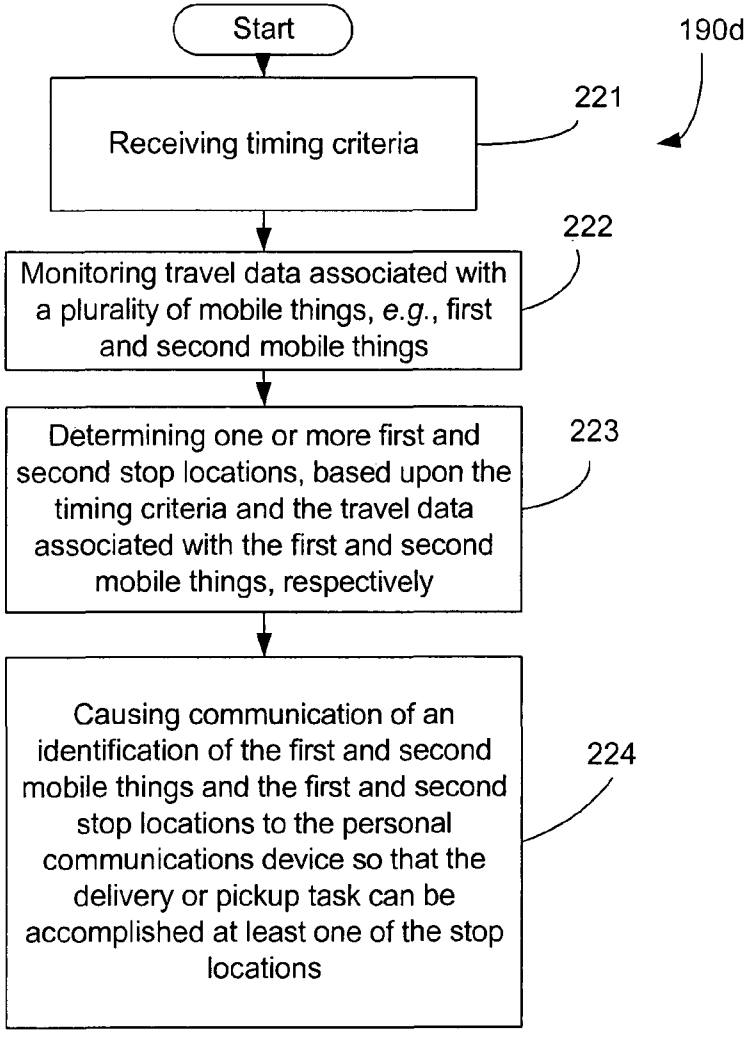


FIG. 15B

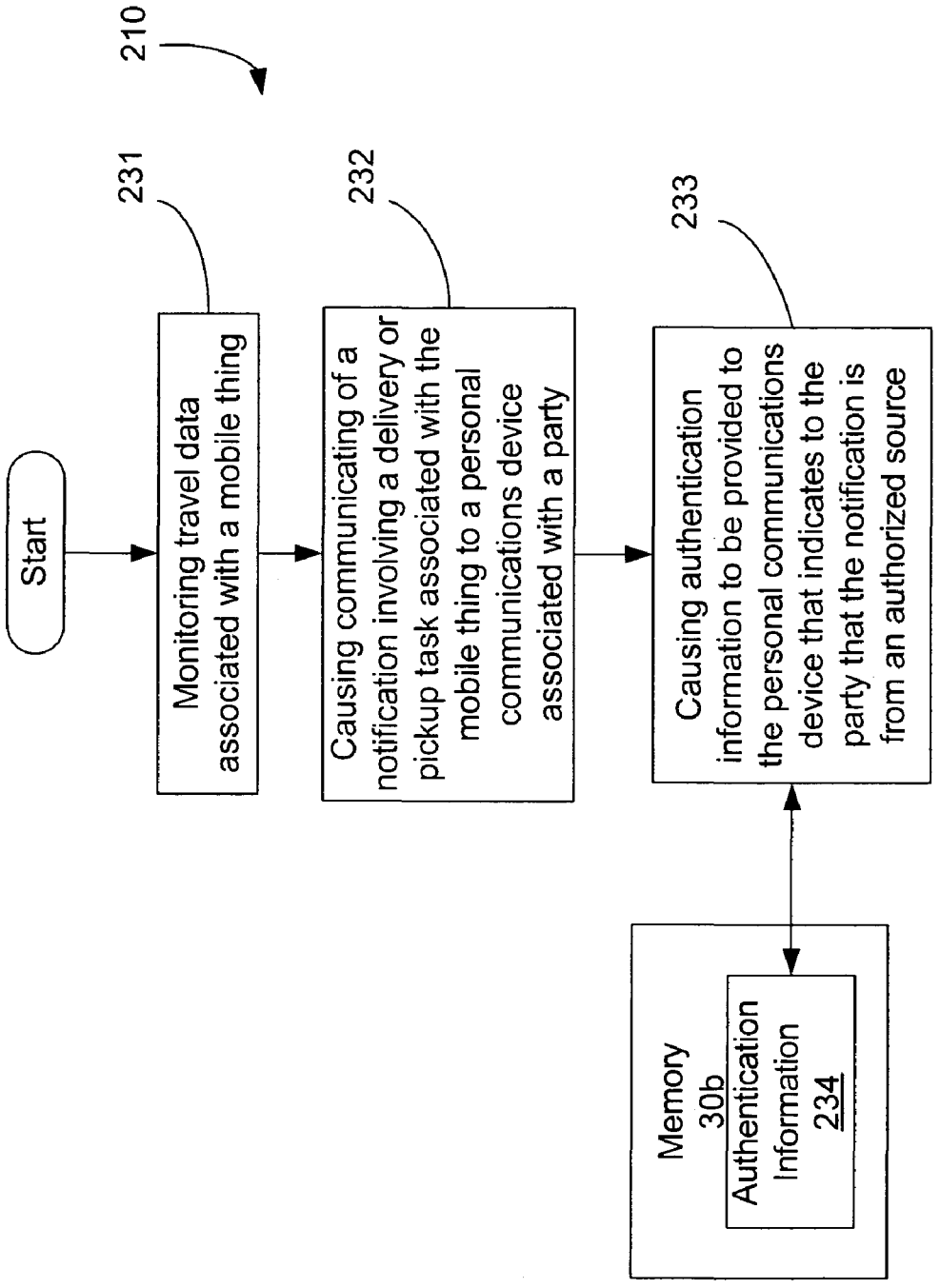

210
231
232
233
Start
Monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing
Causing communicating of a notification involving a delivery or pickup task associated with the mobile thing to a personal communications device associated with a party
Causing authentication information to be provided to the personal communications device that indicates to the party that the notification is from an authorized source
Memory 30b
Authentication Information 234

FIG. 16

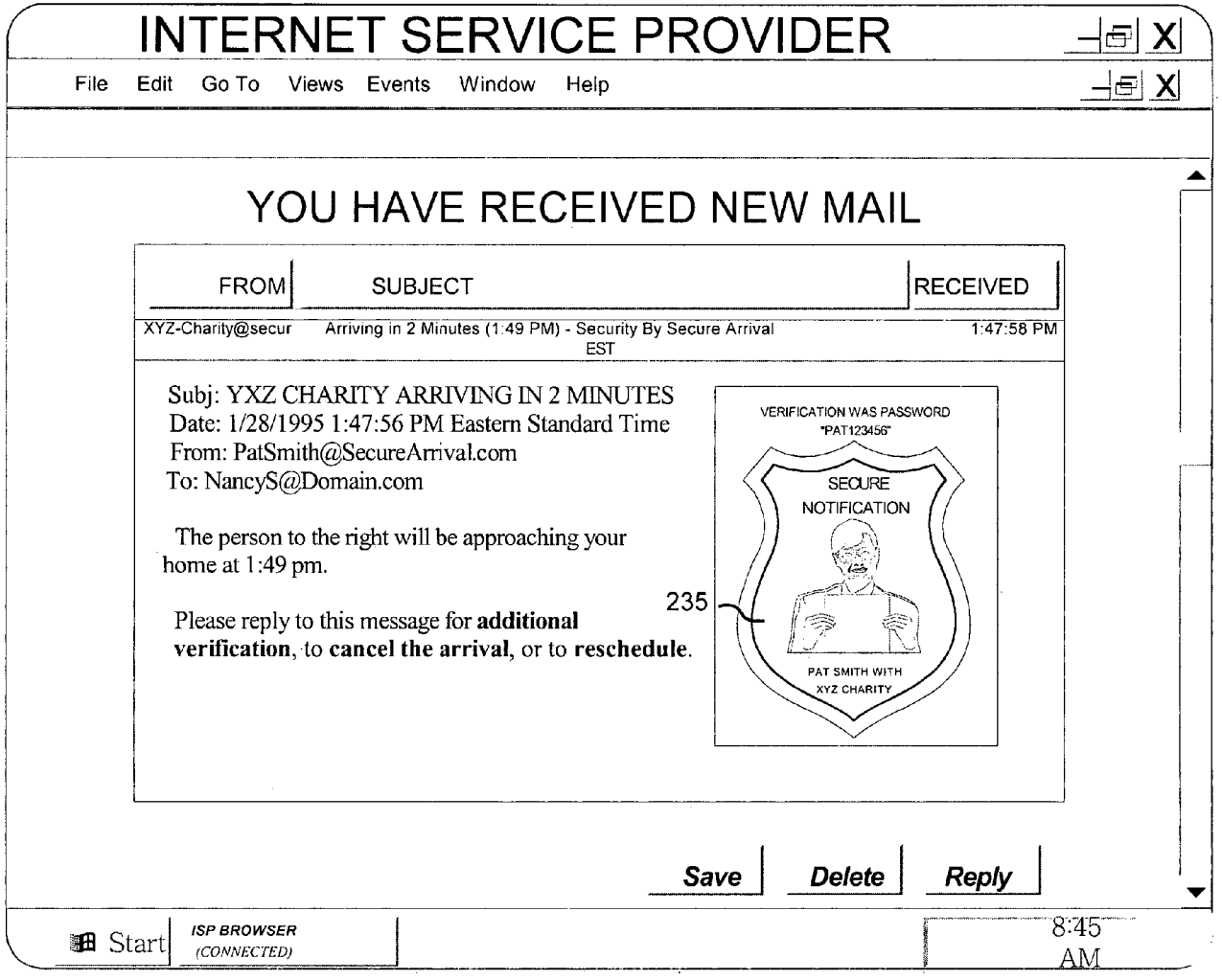

INTERNET SERVICE PROVIDER
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
YOU HAVE RECEIVED NEW MAIL
FROM
SUBJECT
RECEIVED
XYZ-Charity@secur
Arriving in 2 Minutes (1:49 PM) - Security By Secure Arrival
EST
1:47:58 PM
Subj: YXZ CHARITY ARRIVING IN 2 MINUTES
Date: 1/28/1995 1:47:56 PM Eastern Standard Time
From: PatSmith@SecureArrival.com
To: NancyS@Domain.com
The person to the right will be approaching your home at 1:49 pm.
Please reply to this message for additional verification, to cancel the arrival, or to reschedule.
235
VERIFICATION WAS PASSWORD "PAT123456"
SECURE NOTIFICATION
PAT SMITH WITH XYZ CHARITY
Save
Delete
Reply
Start
ISP BROWSER (CONNECTED)
8:45 AM

FIG 16A

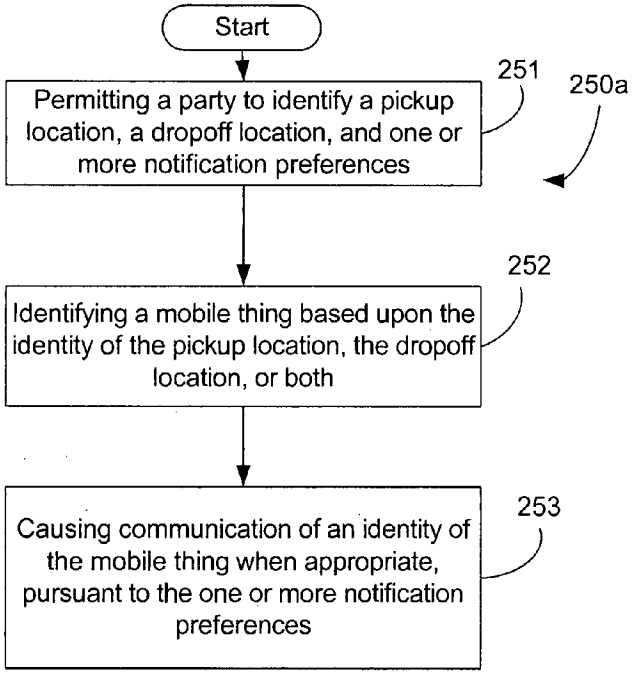


FIG. 17A

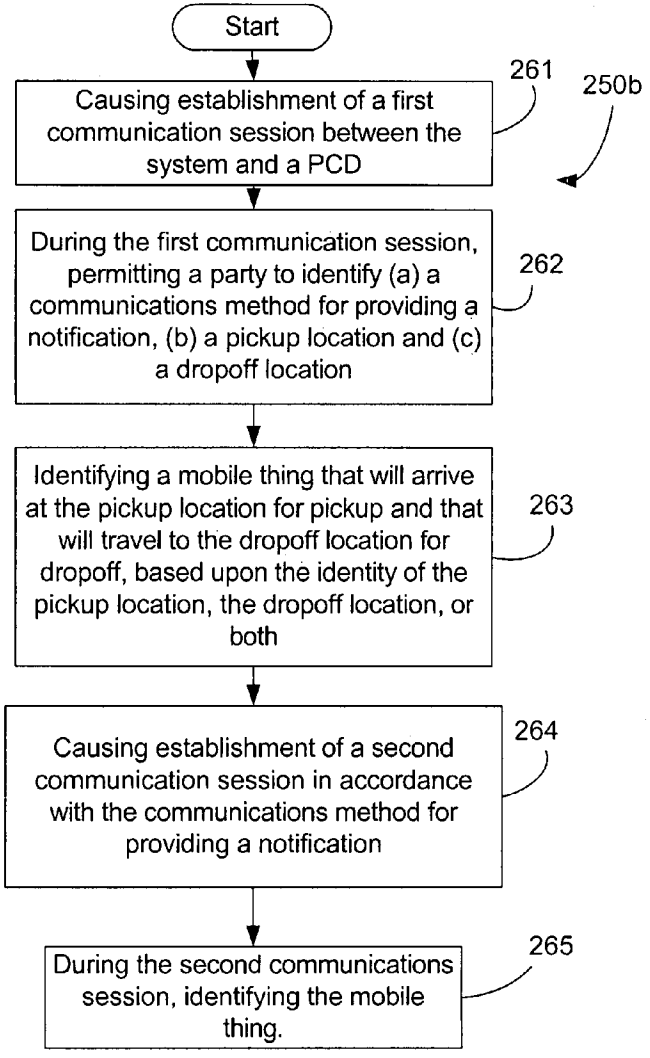


FIG. 17B

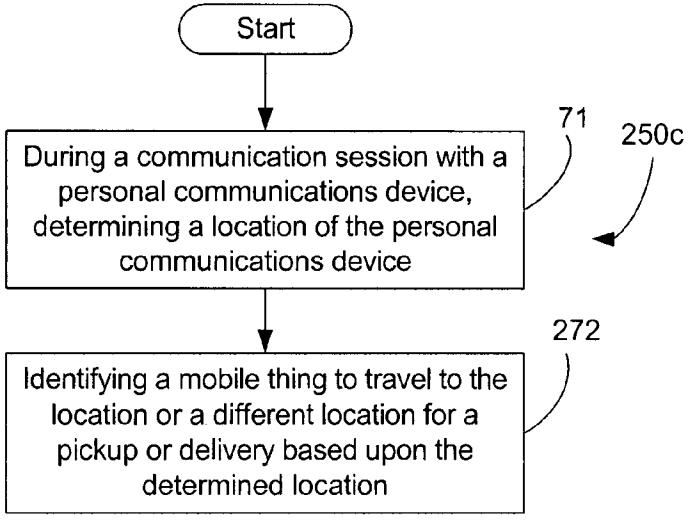


FIG. 17C

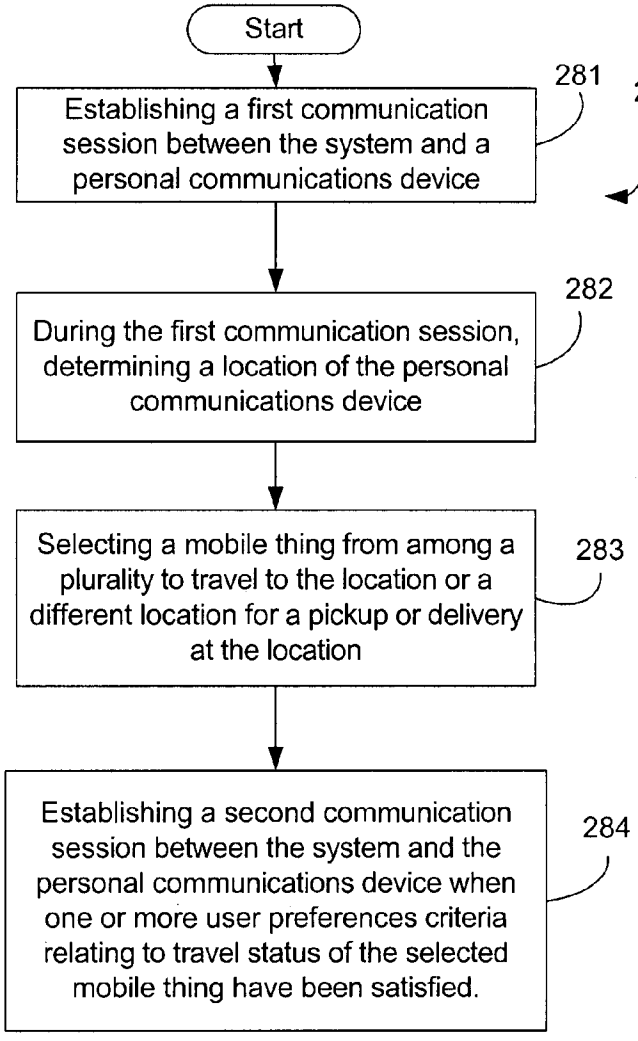


FIG. 17D

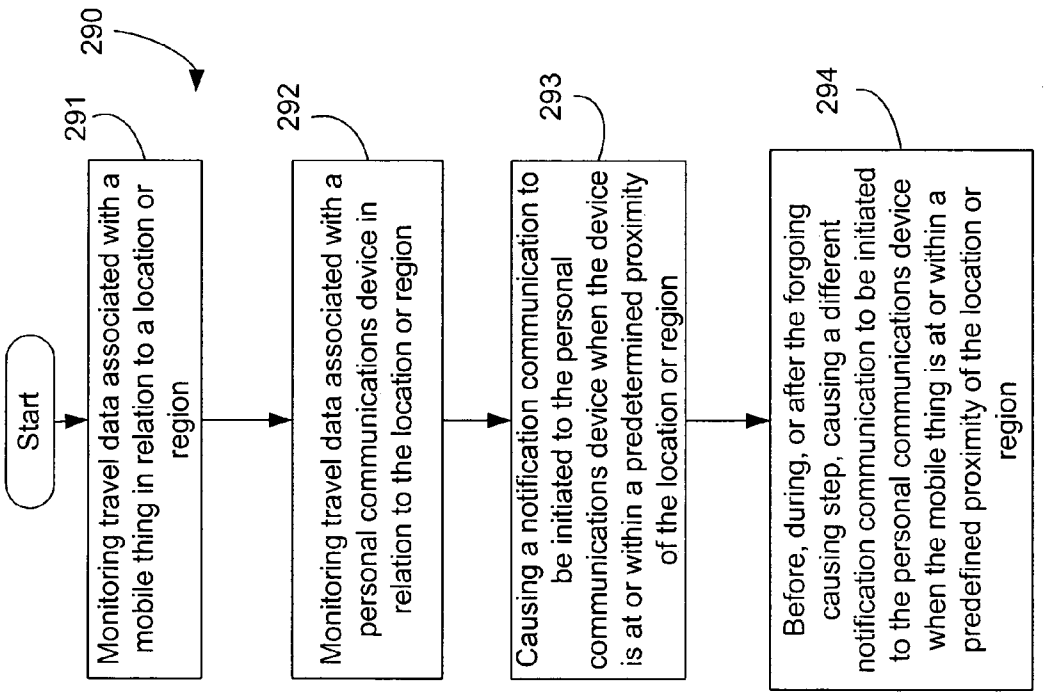

290
Start
291
Monitoring travel data associated with a mobile thing in relation to a location or region
292
Monitoring travel data associated with a personal communications device in relation to the location or region
293
Causing a notification communication to be initiated to the personal communications device when the device is at or within a predetermined proximity of the location or region
294
Before, during, or after the forgoing causing step, causing a different notification communication to be initiated to the personal communications device when the mobile thing is at or within a predefined proximity of the location or region

FIG. 18

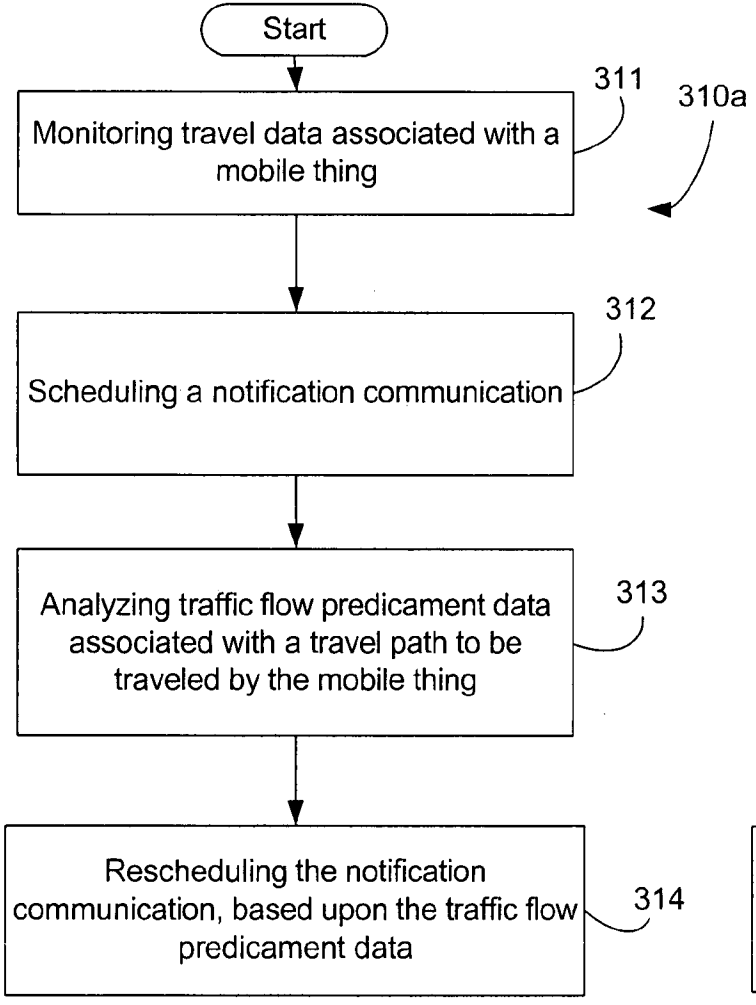


FIG. 19A

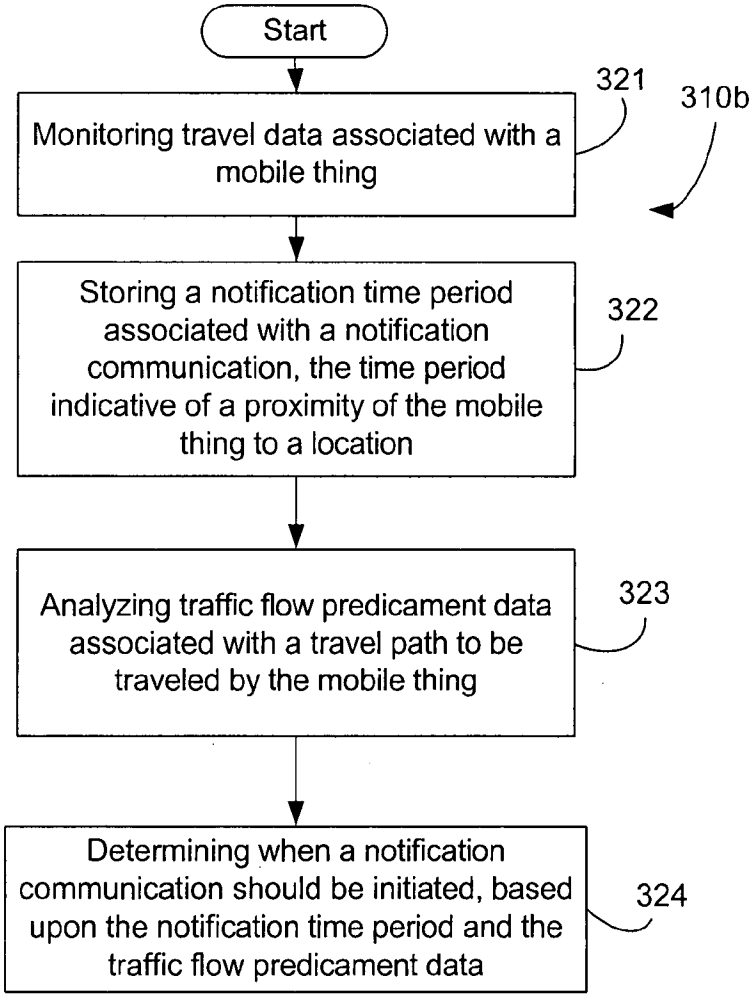


FIG. 19B

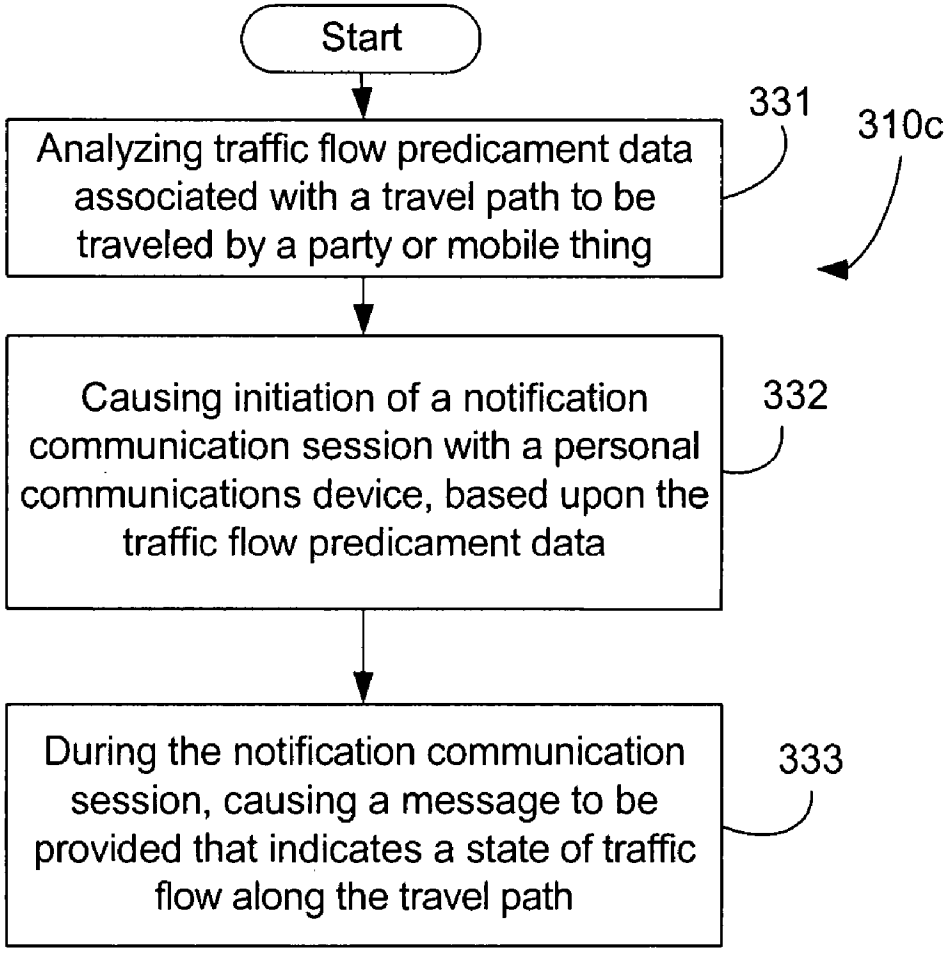

Start
Analyzing traffic flow predicament data associated with a travel path to be traveled by a party or mobile thing
331
310c
Causing initiation of a notification communication session with a personal communications device, based upon the traffic flow predicament data
332
During the notification communication session, causing a message to be provided that indicates a state of traffic flow along the travel path
333

FIG. 19C

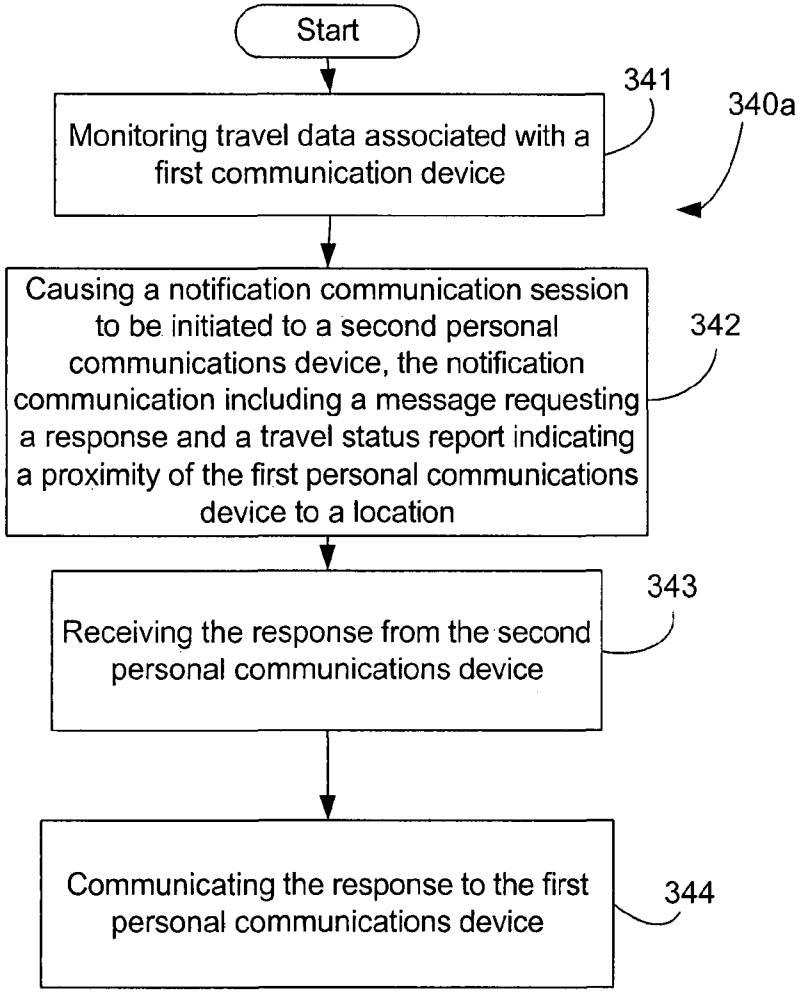


FIG. 20A

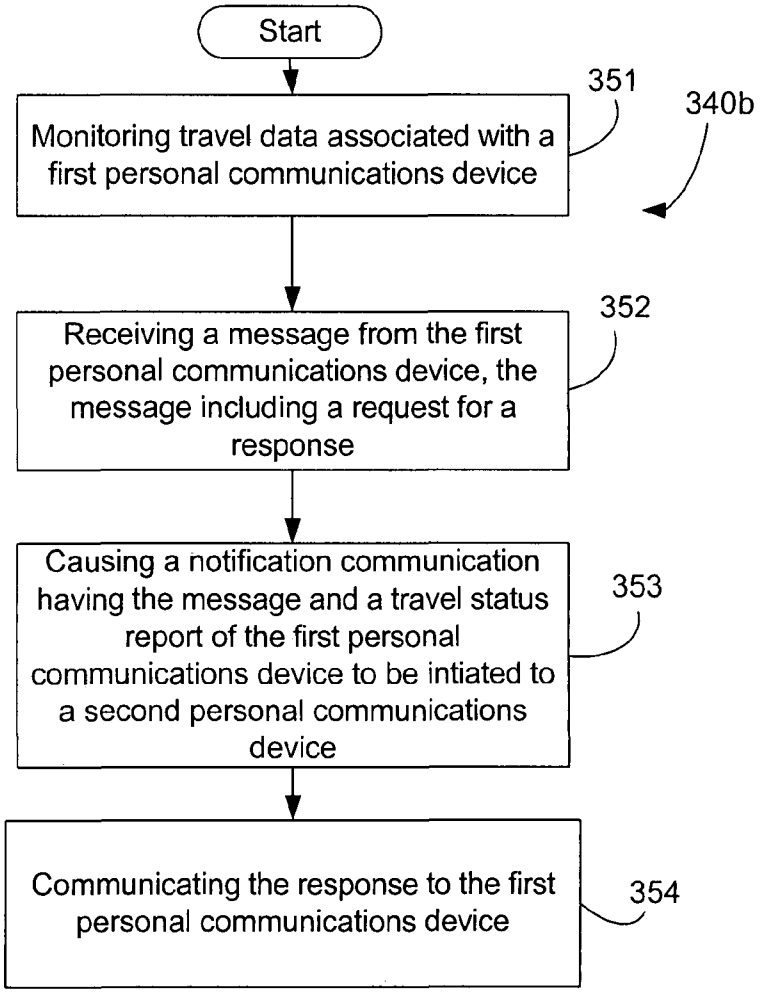


FIG. 20B

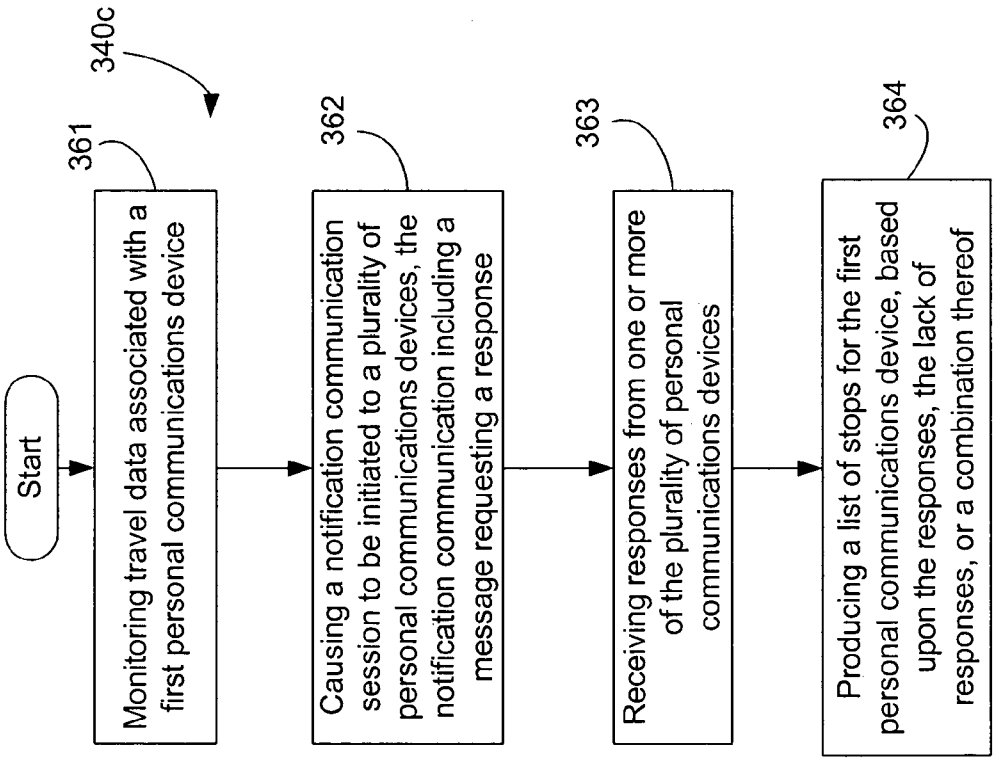

340c
361
362
363
364
Start
Monitoring travel data associated with a first personal communications device
Causing a notification communication session to be initiated to a plurality of personal communications devices, the notification communication including a message requesting a response
Receiving responses from one or more of the plurality of personal communications devices
Producing a list of stops for the first personal communications device, based upon the responses, the lack of responses, or a combination thereof

FIG. 20C

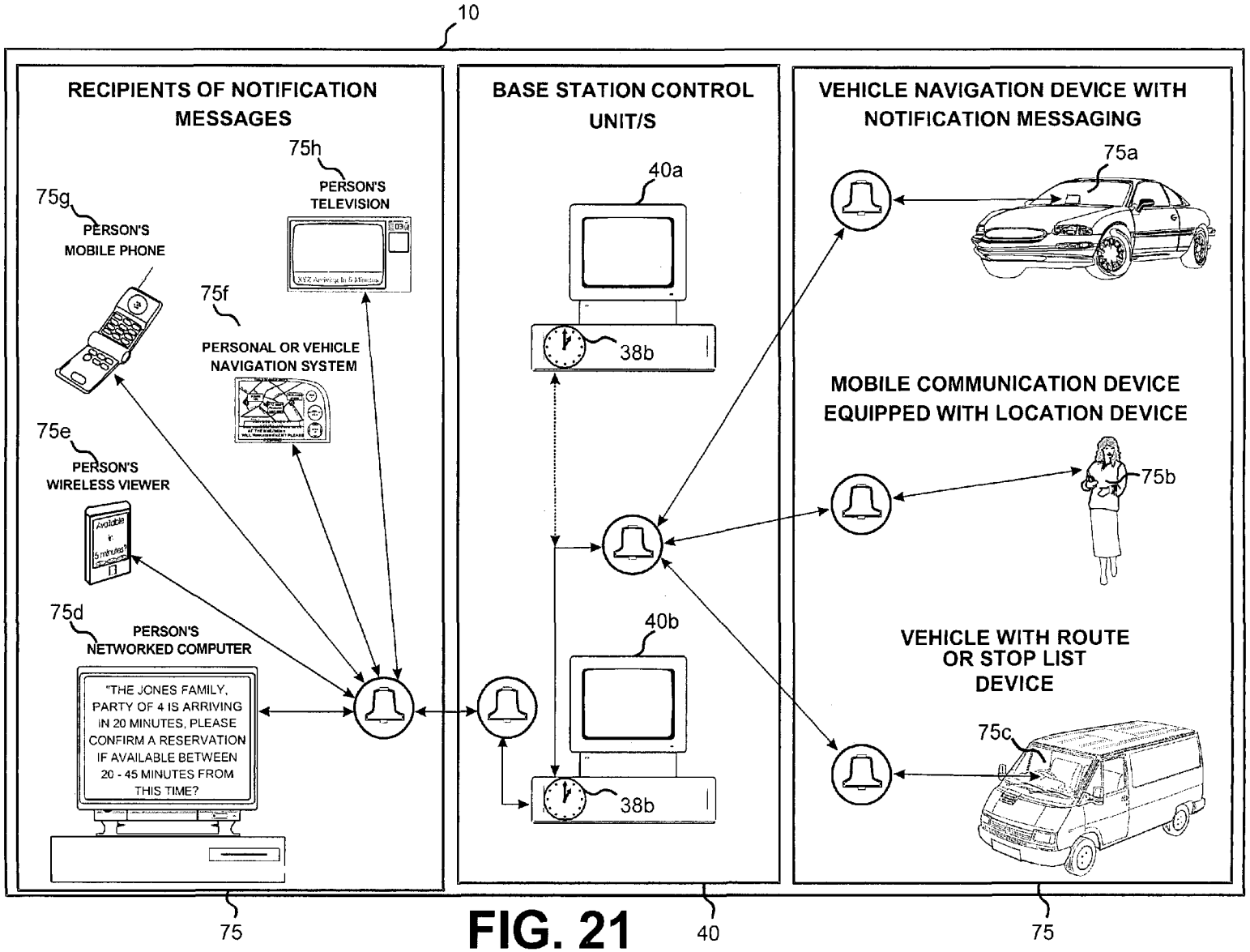

10
RECIPIENTS OF NOTIFICATION MESSAGES
75h
PERSON'S TELEVISION
75g
PERSON'S MOBILE PHONE
75f
PERSONAL OR VEHICLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
75e
PERSON'S WIRELESS VIEWER
75d
PERSON'S NETWORKED COMPUTER
"THE JONES FAMILY, PARTY OF 4 IS ARRIVING IN 20 MINUTES, PLEASE CONFIRM A RESERVATION IF AVAILABLE BETWEEN 20 - 45 MINUTES FROM THIS TIME?
75
BASE STATION CONTROL UNIT/S
40a
38b
40b
38b
40
VEHICLE NAVIGATION DEVICE WITH NOTIFICATION MESSAGING
75a
MOBILE COMMUNICATION DEVICE EQUIPPED WITH LOCATION DEVICE
75b
VEHICLE WITH ROUTE OR STOP LIST DEVICE
75c
75

FIG. 21

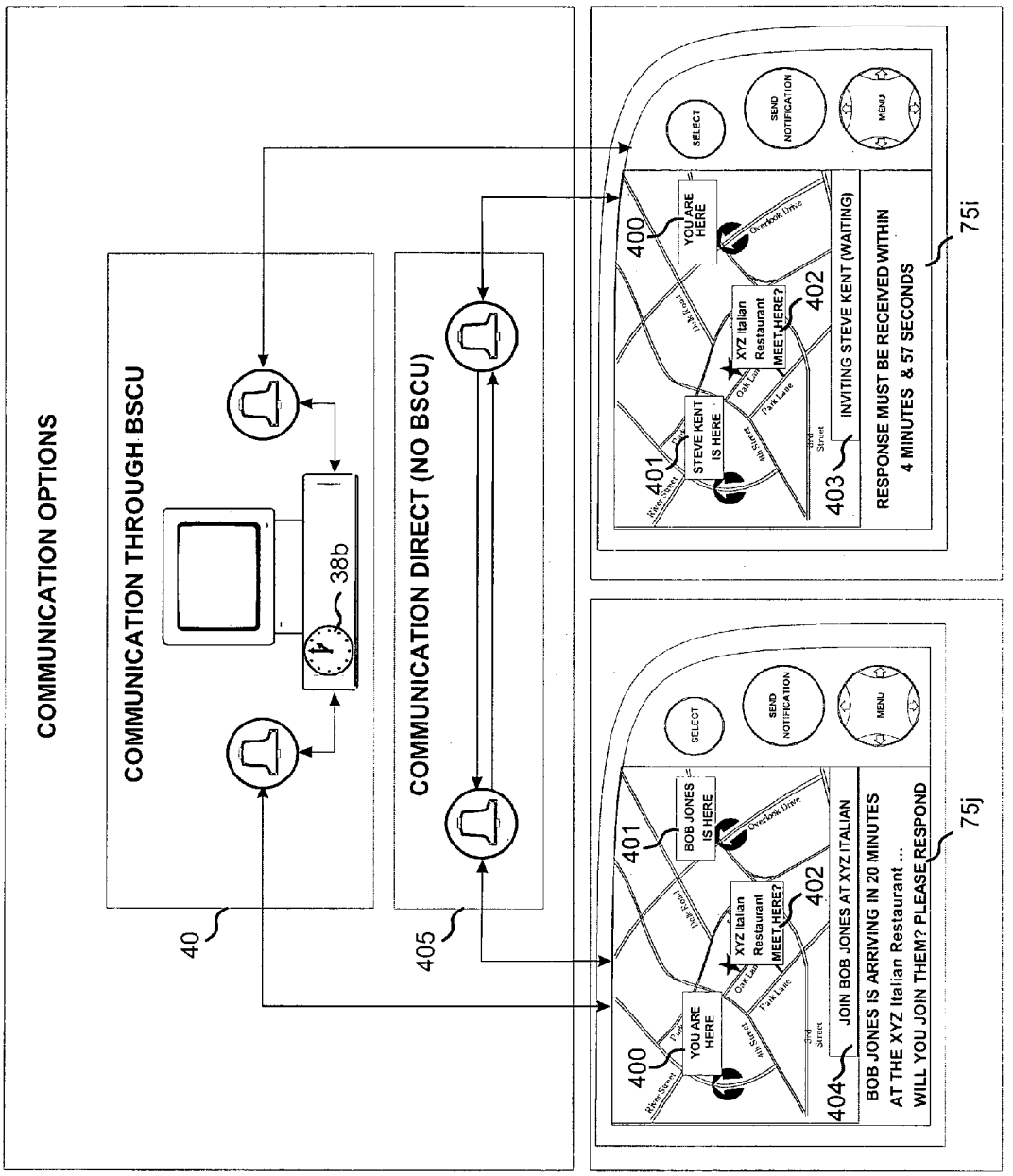

COMMUNICATION OPTIONS
COMMUNICATION THROUGH BSCU
38b
40
COMMUNICATION DIRECT (NO BSCU)
405
400
YOU ARE HERE
401
BOB JONES IS HERE
402
XYZ Italian Restaurant
MEET HERE?
403
INVITING STEVE KENT (WAITING)
RESPONSE MUST BE RECEIVED WITHIN 4 MINUTES & 57 SECONDS
75i
404
JOIN BOB JONES AT XYZ ITALIAN
BOB JONES IS ARRIVING IN 20 MINUTES AT THE XYZ Italian Restaurant ...
WILL YOU JOIN THEM? PLEASE RESPOND
75j
SELECT
SEND NOTIFICATION
MENU

FIG. 22

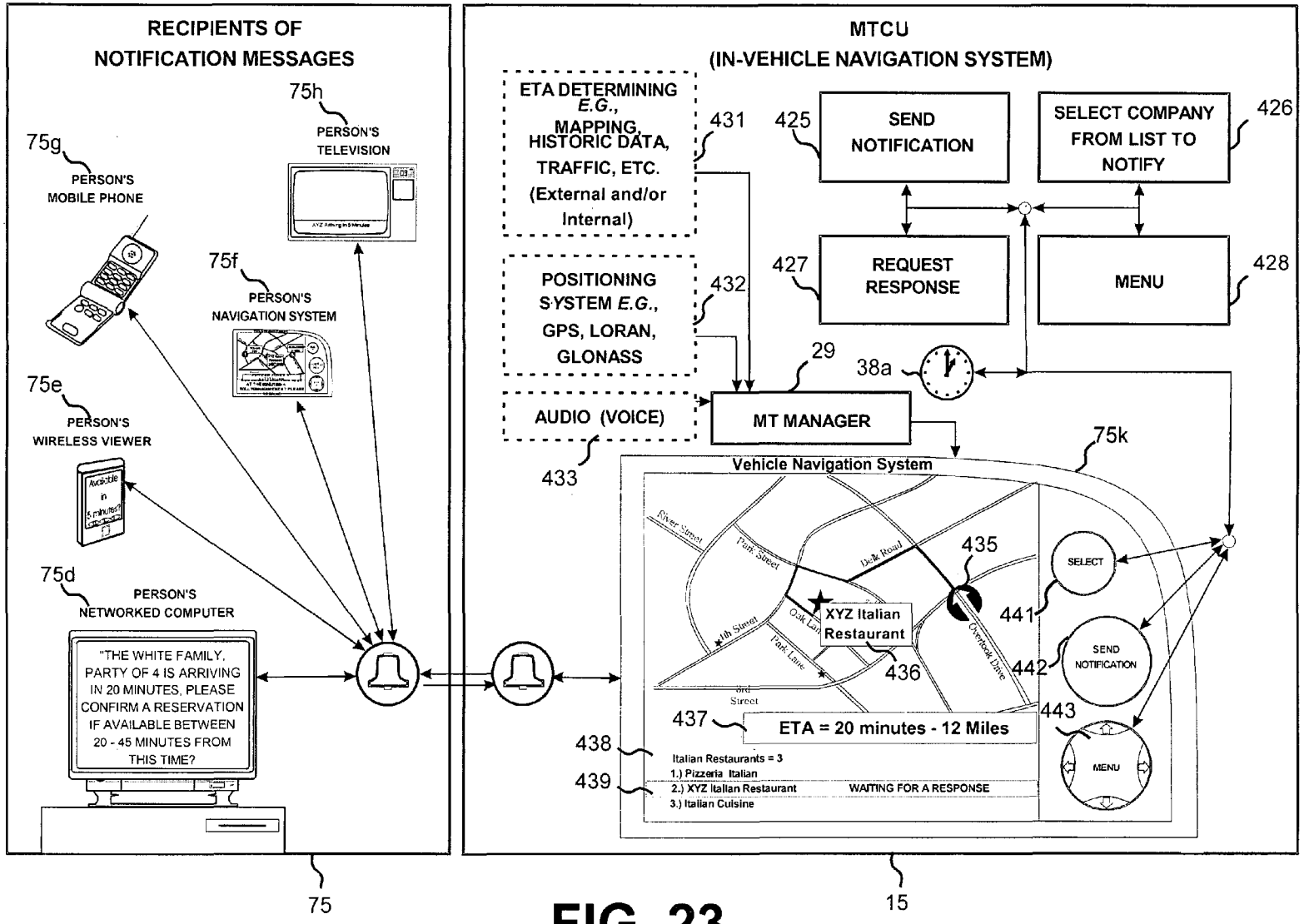

RECIPIENTS OF NOTIFICATION MESSAGES
75h
PERSON'S TELEVISION
75g
PERSON'S MOBILE PHONE
75f
PERSON'S NAVIGATION SYSTEM
75e
PERSON'S WIRELESS VIEWER
75d
PERSON'S NETWORKED COMPUTER
"THE WHITE FAMILY, PARTY OF 4 IS ARRIVING IN 20 MINUTES, PLEASE CONFIRM A RESERVATION IF AVAILABLE BETWEEN 20 - 45 MINUTES FROM THIS TIME?
75
MTCU
(IN-VEHICLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM)
ETA DETERMINING E.G., MAPPING, HISTORIC DATA, TRAFFIC, ETC. (External and/or Internal)
431
425
SEND NOTIFICATION
SELECT COMPANY FROM LIST TO NOTIFY
426
427
REQUEST RESPONSE
MENU
428
POSITIONING SYSTEM E.G., GPS, LORAN, GLONASS
432
29
38a
AUDIO (VOICE)
MT MANAGER
433
75k
Vehicle Navigation System
435
SELECT
441
XYZ Italian Restaurant
436
SEND NOTIFICATION
442
443
MENU
437
ETA = 20 minutes - 12 Miles
438
Italian Restaurants = 3
1.) Pizzeria Italian
439
2.) XYZ Italian Restaurant
WAITING FOR A RESPONSE
3.) Italian Cuisine
15

FIG. 23

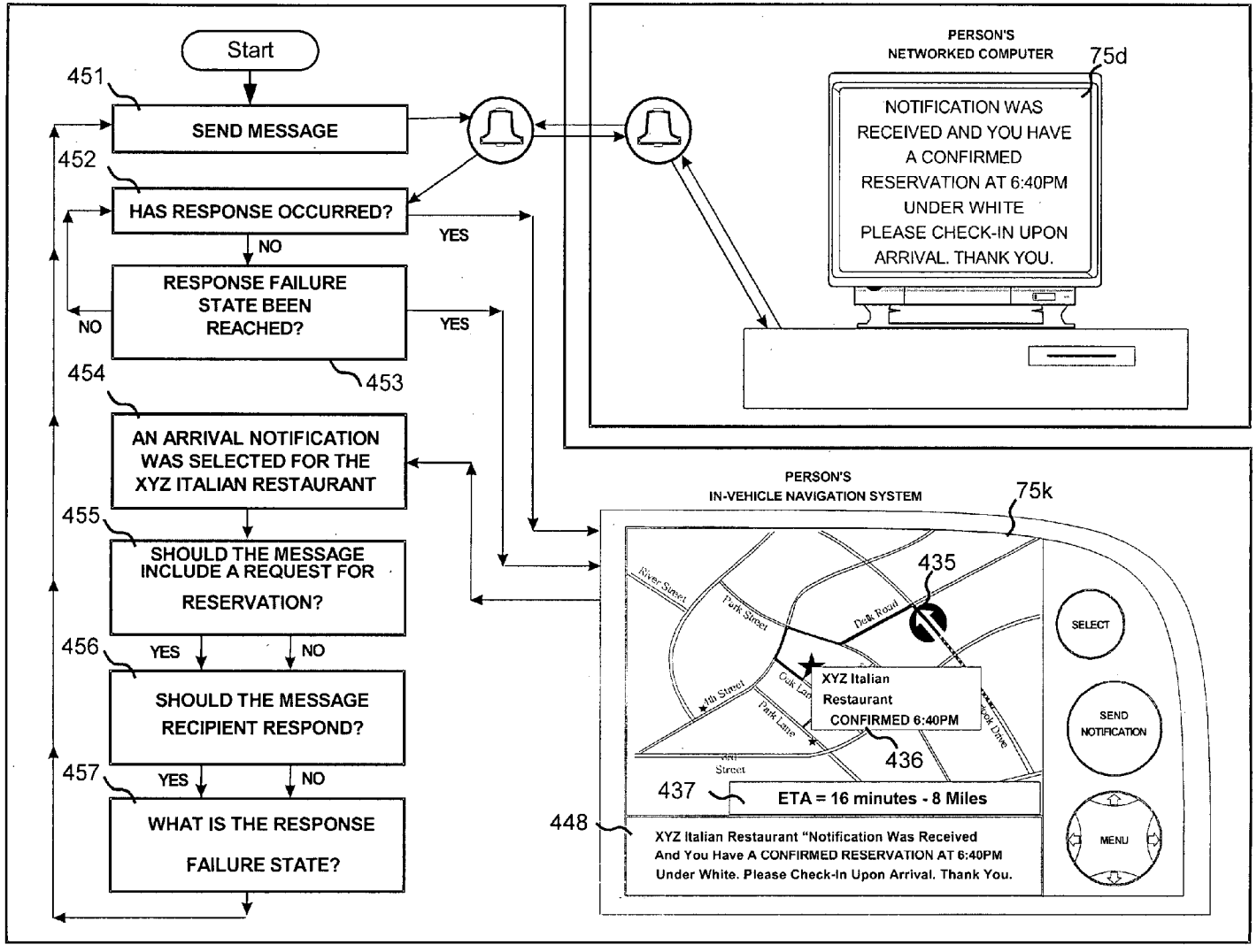

Start
451
SEND MESSAGE
452
HAS RESPONSE OCCURRED?
YES
NO
RESPONSE FAILURE STATE BEEN REACHED?
NO
YES
453
454
AN ARRIVAL NOTIFICATION WAS SELECTED FOR THE XYZ ITALIAN RESTAURANT
455
SHOULD THE MESSAGE INCLUDE A REQUEST FOR RESERVATION?
456
YES
NO
SHOULD THE MESSAGE RECIPIENT RESPOND?
457
YES
NO
WHAT IS THE RESPONSE FAILURE STATE?
PERSON'S NETWORKED COMPUTER
75d
NOTIFICATION WAS RECEIVED AND YOU HAVE A CONFIRMED RESERVATION AT 6:40PM UNDER WHITE PLEASE CHECK-IN UPON ARRIVAL. THANK YOU.
PERSON'S IN-VEHICLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
75k
435
River Street
Park Street
Dek Road
4th Street
Park Lane
XYZ Italian Restaurant CONFIRMED 6:40PM
436
437
ETA = 16 minutes - 8 Miles
448
XYZ Italian Restaurant "Notification Was Received And You Have A CONFIRMED RESERVATION AT 6:40PM Under White. Please Check-In Upon Arrival. Thank You.
SELECT
SEND NOTIFICATION
MENU

FIG. 24

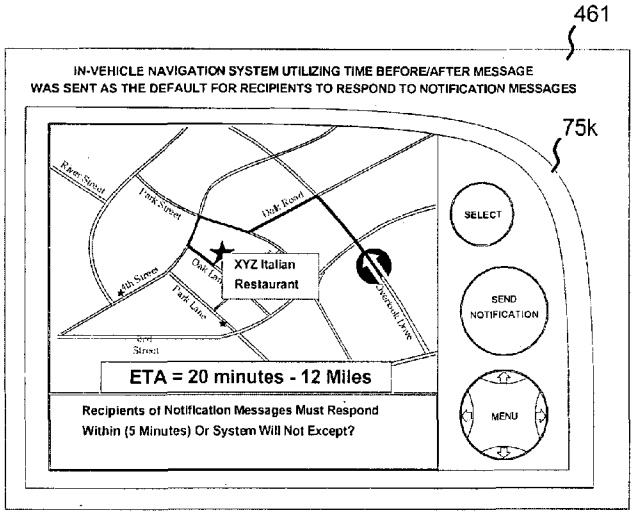


FIG. 25A

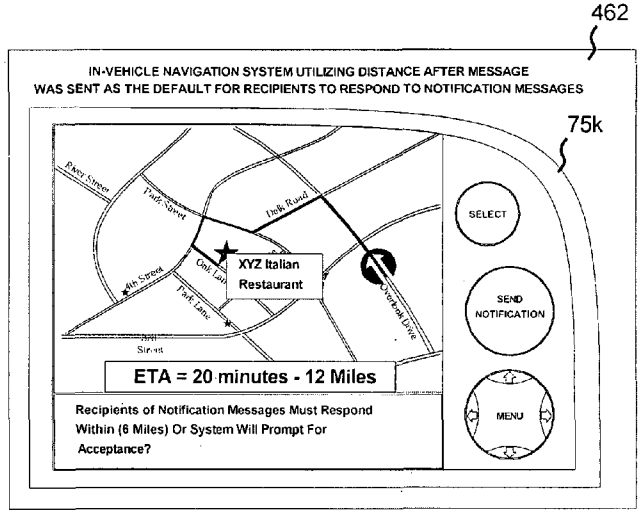


FIG. 25B

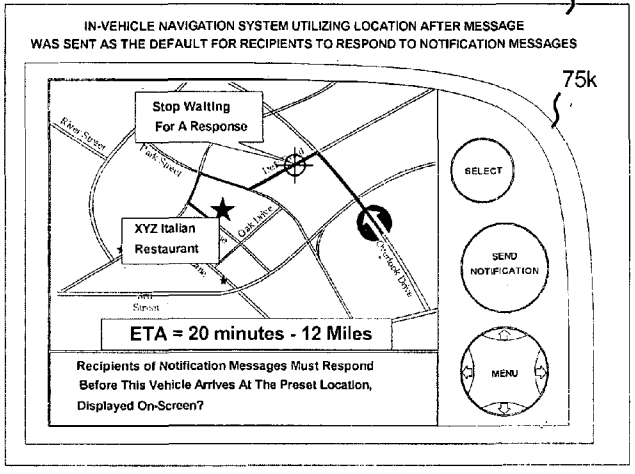


FIG. 25C

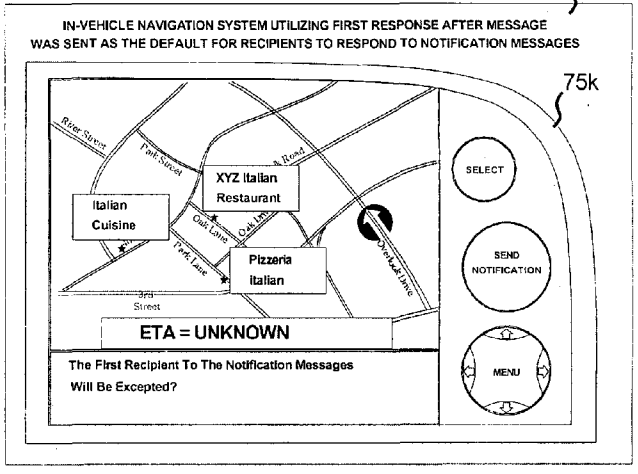


FIG. 25D

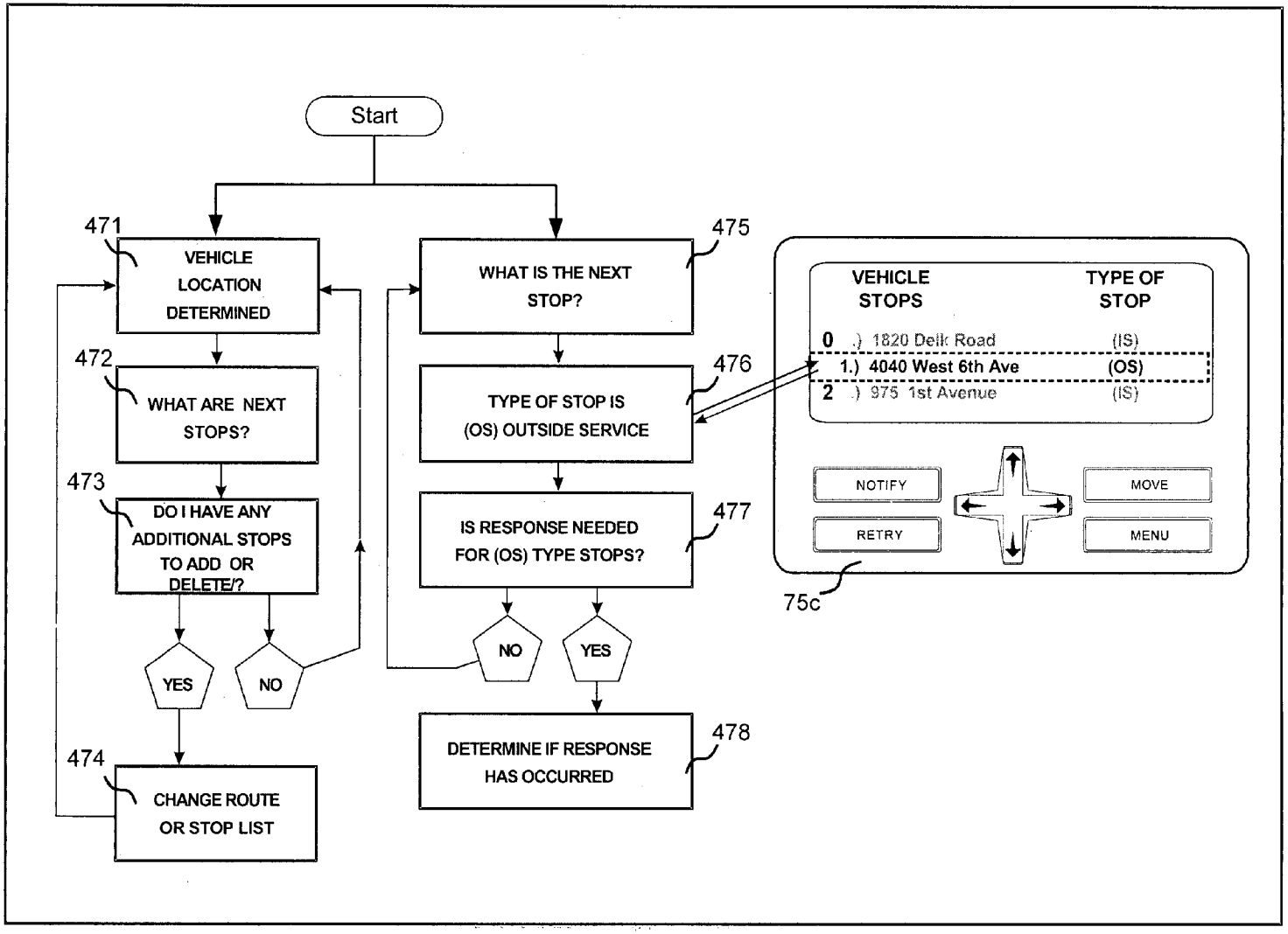

Start
471
VEHICLE LOCATION DETERMINED
472
WHAT ARE NEXT STOPS?
473
DO I HAVE ANY ADDITIONAL STOPS TO ADD OR DELETE/?
YES
NO
474
CHANGE ROUTE OR STOP LIST
475
WHAT IS THE NEXT STOP?
476
TYPE OF STOP IS (OS) OUTSIDE SERVICE
477
IS RESPONSE NEEDED FOR (OS) TYPE STOPS?
NO
YES
478
DETERMINE IF RESPONSE HAS OCCURRED
VEHICLE STOPS
TYPE OF STOP
0 .) 1820 Delk Road (IS)
1.) 4040 West 6th Ave (OS)
2 .) 975 1st Avenue (IS)
NOTIFY
MOVE
RETRY
MENU
75c

FIG. 26

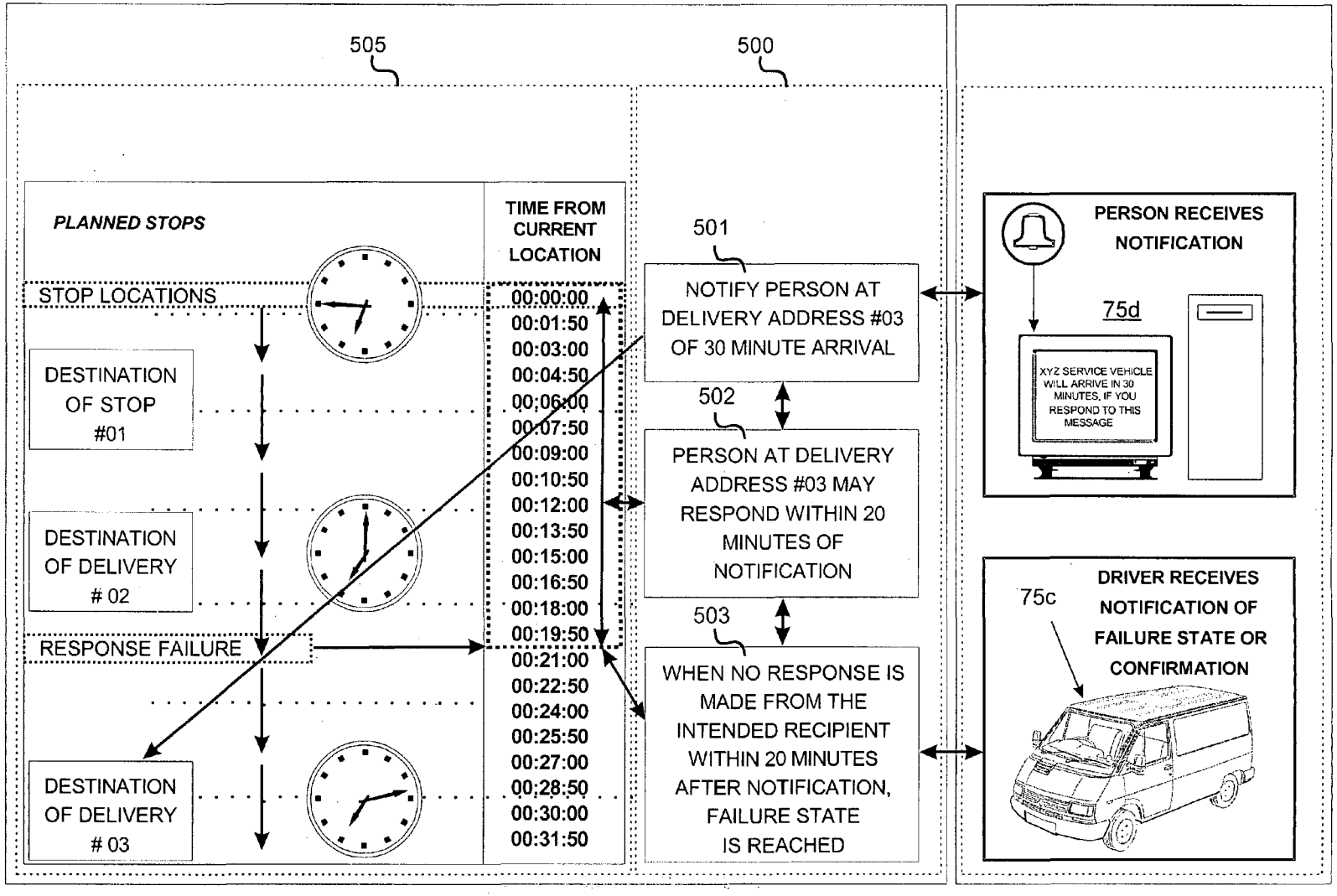

505
500
PLANNED STOPS
TIME FROM CURRENT LOCATION
STOP LOCATIONS
00:00:00
00:01:50
00:03:00
00:04:50
00:06:00
00:07:50
00:09:00
00:10:50
00:12:00
00:13:50
00:15:00
00:16:50
00:18:00
00:19:50
00:21:00
00:22:50
00:24:00
00:25:50
00:27:00
00:28:50
00:30:00
00:31:50
DESTINATION OF STOP #01
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 02
RESPONSE FAILURE
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 03
501
NOTIFY PERSON AT DELIVERY ADDRESS #03 OF 30 MINUTE ARRIVAL
502
PERSON AT DELIVERY ADDRESS #03 MAY RESPOND WITHIN 20 MINUTES OF NOTIFICATION
503
WHEN NO RESPONSE IS MADE FROM THE INTENDED RECIPIENT WITHIN 20 MINUTES AFTER NOTIFICATION, FAILURE STATE IS REACHED
PERSON RECEIVES NOTIFICATION
75d
XYZ SERVICE VEHICLE WILL ARRIVE IN 30 MINUTES, IF YOU RESPOND TO THIS MESSAGE
DRIVER RECEIVES NOTIFICATION OF FAILURE STATE OR CONFIRMATION
75c

FIG. 27

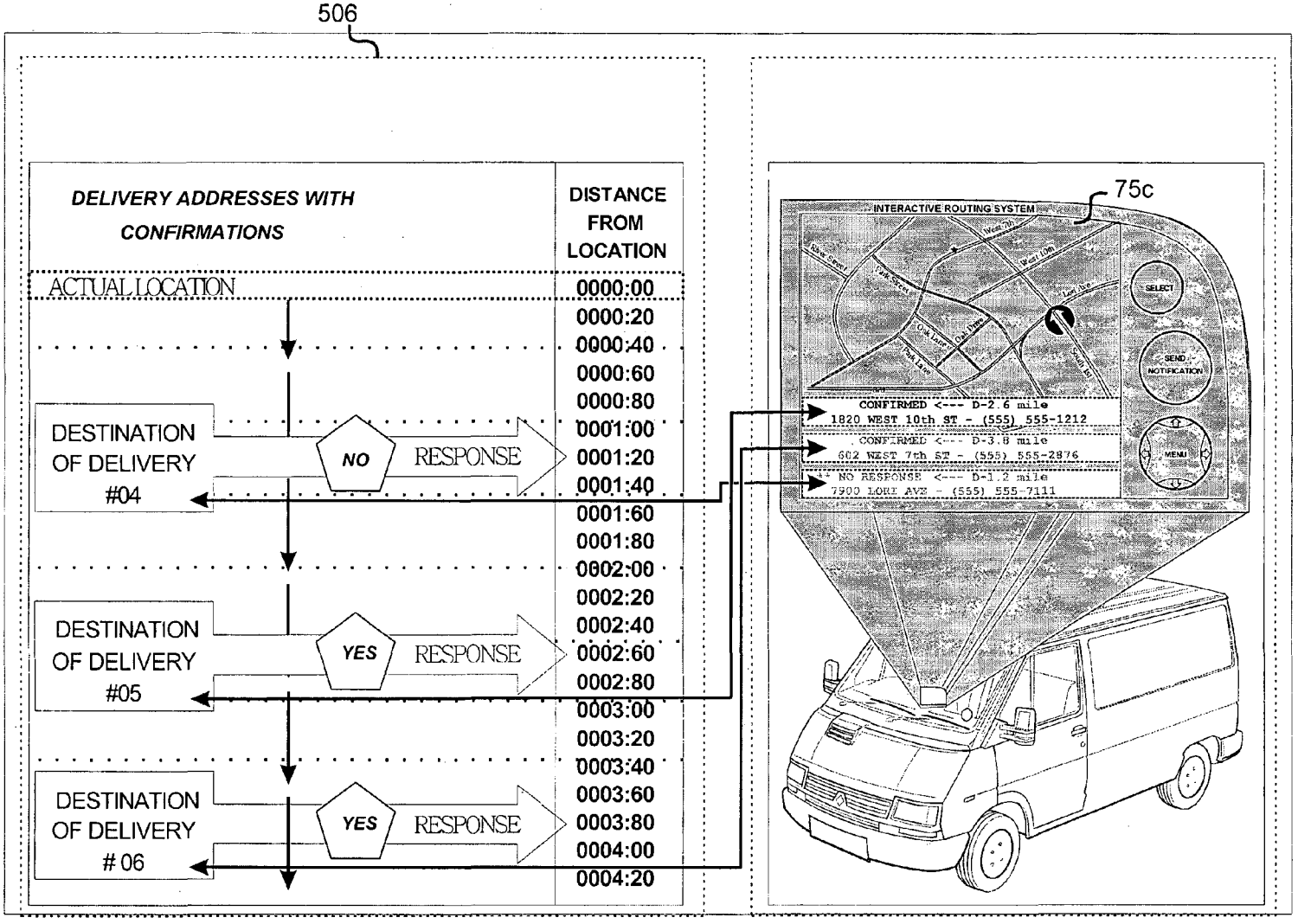

506
DELIVERY ADDRESSES WITH CONFIRMATIONS
DISTANCE FROM LOCATION
ACTUAL LOCATION
0000:00
0000:20
0000:40
0000:60
0000:80
0001:00
0001:20
0001:40
0001:60
0001:80
0002:00
0002:20
0002:40
0002:60
0002:80
0003:00
0003:20
0003:40
0003:60
0003:80
0004:00
0004:20
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY #04
NO
RESPONSE
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY #05
YES
RESPONSE
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 06
YES
RESPONSE
75c
INTERACTIVE ROUTING SYSTEM
SELECT
SEND NOTIFICATION
MENU
CONFIRMED <--- D-2.6 mile
1820 WEST 10th ST - (555) 555-1212
CONFIRMED <--- D-3.8 mile
602 WEST 7th ST - (555) 555-2876
** NO RESPONSE <--- D-1.2 mile
7900 LORI AVE - (555) 555-7111

FIG. 28

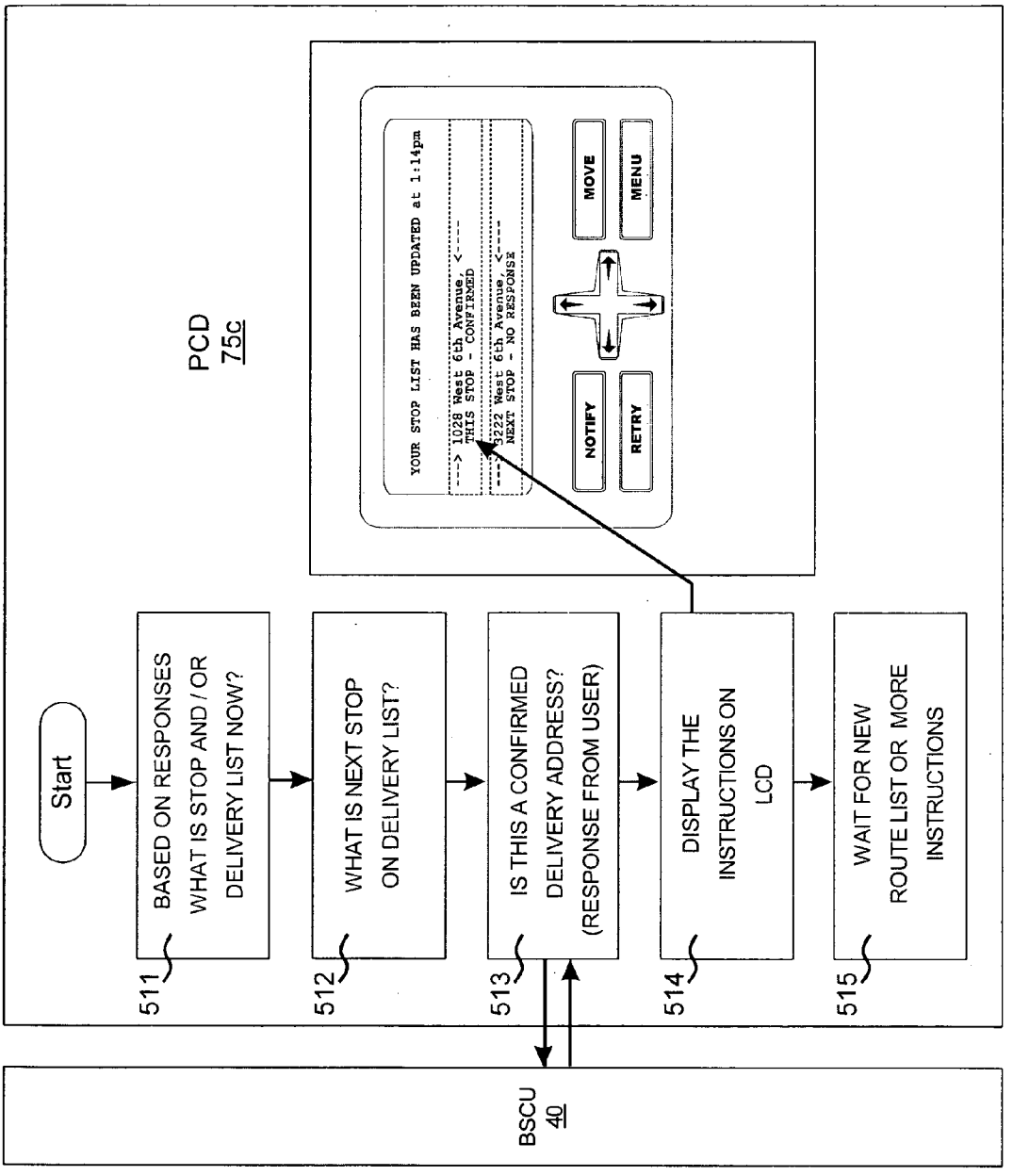

Start
BASED ON RESPONSES WHAT IS STOP AND / OR DELIVERY LIST NOW?
511
WHAT IS NEXT STOP ON DELIVERY LIST?
512
IS THIS A CONFIRMED DELIVERY ADDRESS? (RESPONSE FROM USER)
513
DISPLAY THE INSTRUCTIONS ON LCD
514
WAIT FOR NEW ROUTE LIST OR MORE INSTRUCTIONS
515
PCD
75c
YOUR STOP LIST HAS BEEN UPDATED at 1:14pm
---> 1028 West 6th Avenue, <----
THIS STOP - CONFIRMED
---> 3222 West 6th Avenue, <----
NEXT STOP - NO RESPONSE
NOTIFY
RETRY
MOVE
MENU
BSCU
40

FIG. 29

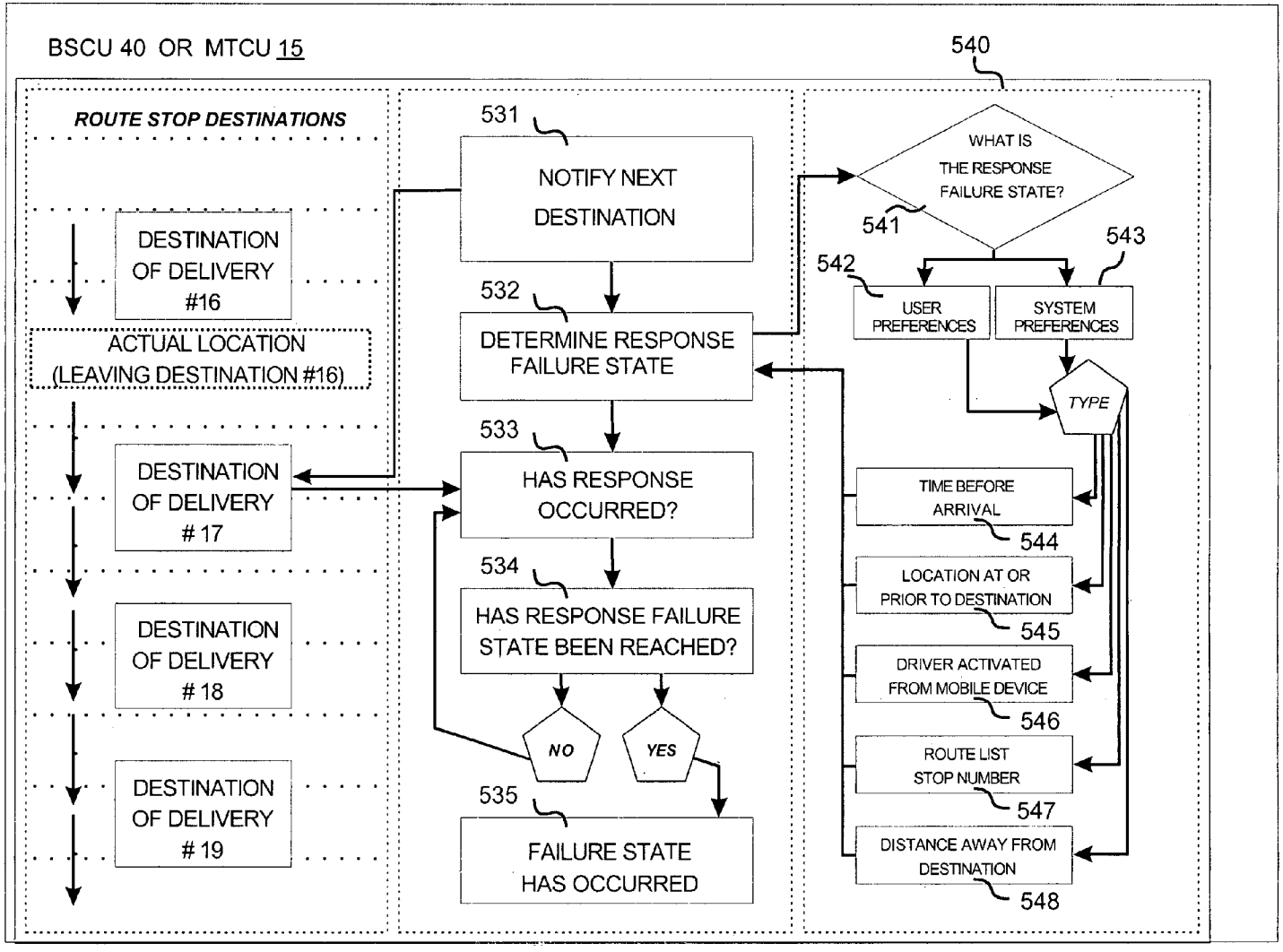

BSCU 40 OR MTCU 15
ROUTE STOP DESTINATIONS
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY #16
ACTUAL LOCATION (LEAVING DESTINATION #16)
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 17
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 18
DESTINATION OF DELIVERY # 19
531
NOTIFY NEXT DESTINATION
532
DETERMINE RESPONSE FAILURE STATE
533
HAS RESPONSE OCCURRED?
534
HAS RESPONSE FAILURE STATE BEEN REACHED?
NO
YES
535
FAILURE STATE HAS OCCURRED
540
WHAT IS THE RESPONSE FAILURE STATE?
541
542
543
USER PREFERENCES
SYSTEM PREFERENCES
TYPE
TIME BEFORE ARRIVAL
544
LOCATION AT OR PRIOR TO DESTINATION
545
DRIVER ACTIVATED FROM MOBILE DEVICE
546
ROUTE LIST STOP NUMBER
547
DISTANCE AWAY FROM DESTINATION
548

FIG. 30

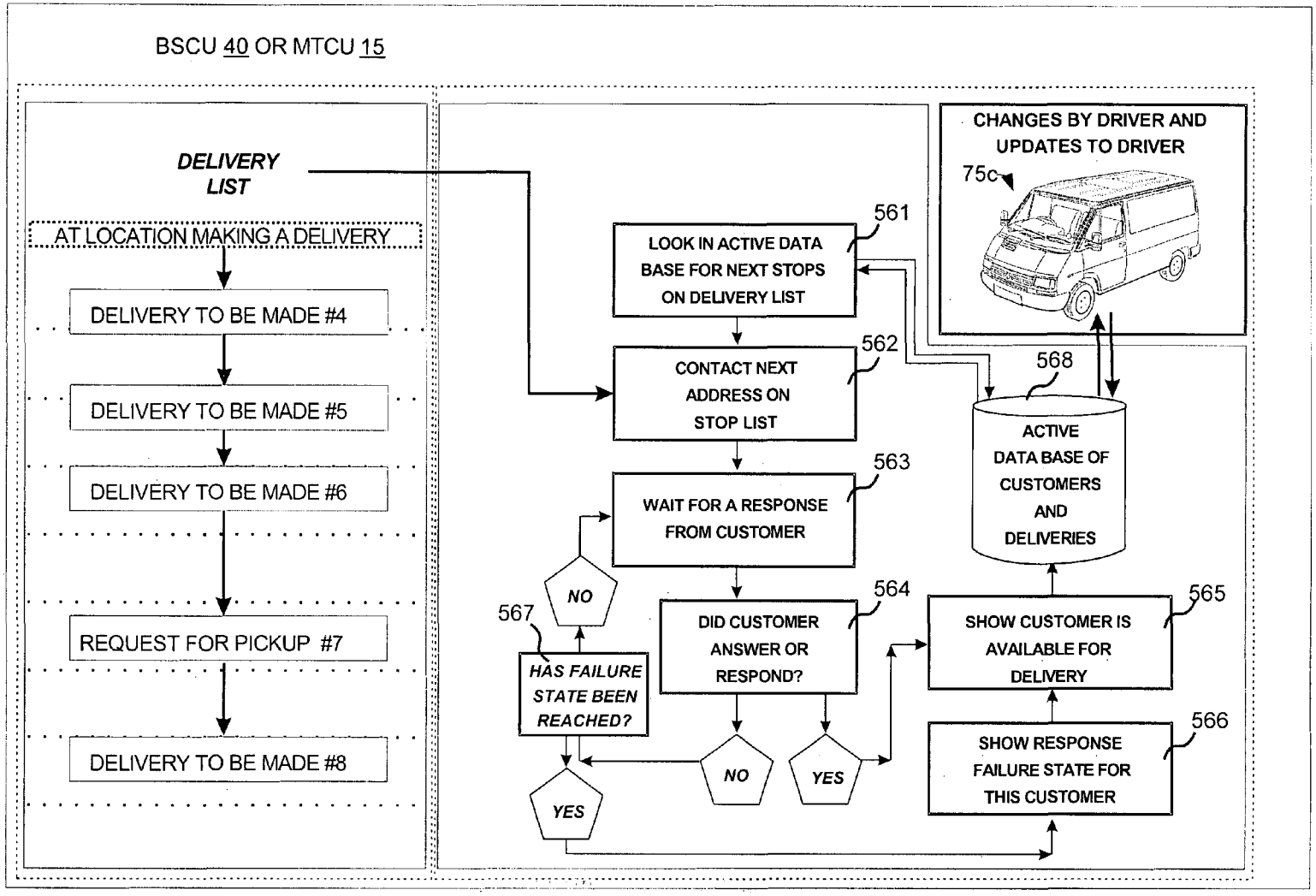
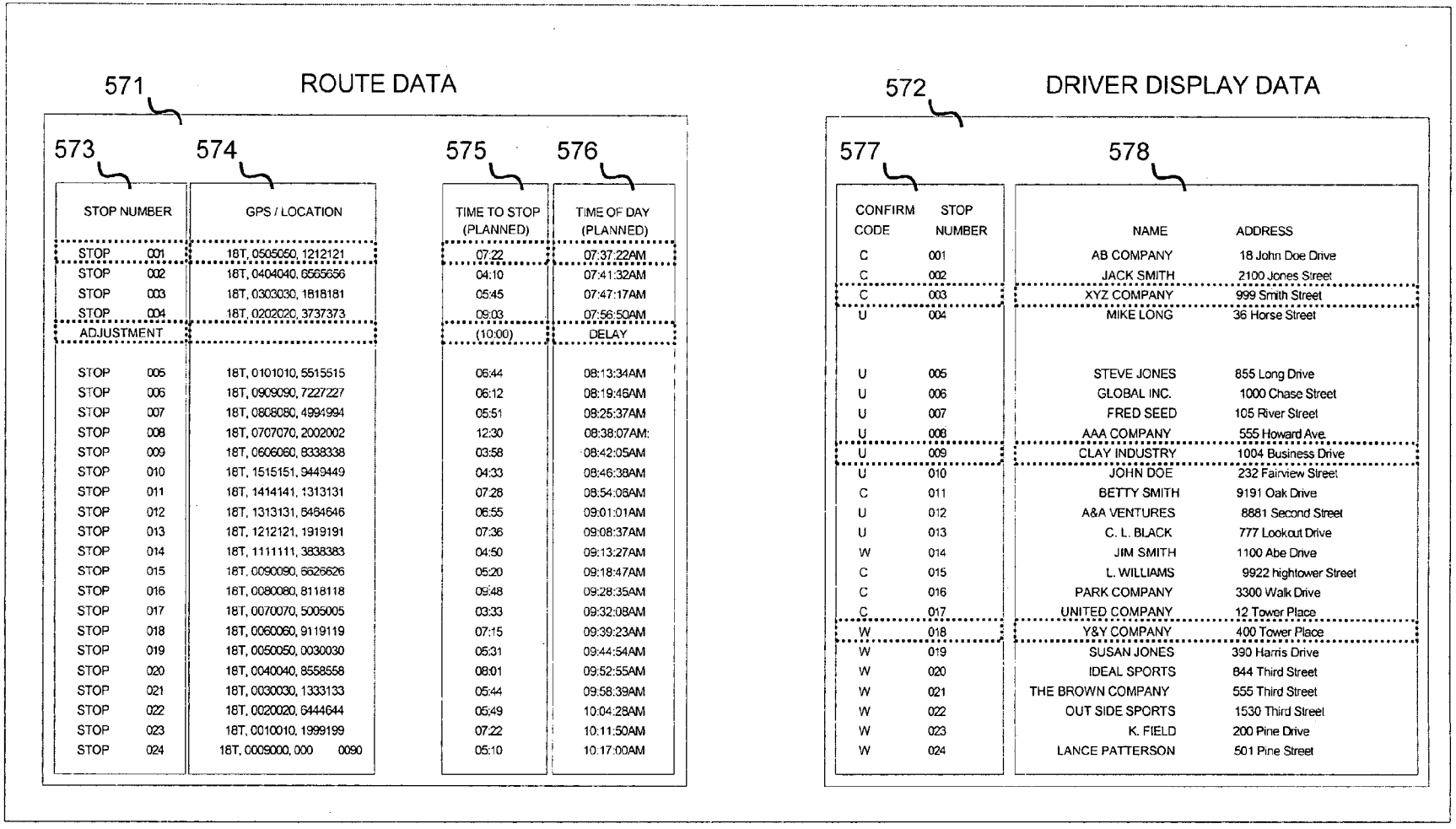

BSCU 40 OR MTCU 15
DELIVERY LIST
AT LOCATION MAKING A DELIVERY
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #4
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #5
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #6
REQUEST FOR PICKUP #7
DELIVERY TO BE MADE #8
CHANGES BY DRIVER AND UPDATES TO DRIVER
75c
561
LOOK IN ACTIVE DATA BASE FOR NEXT STOPS ON DELIVERY LIST
562
CONTACT NEXT ADDRESS ON STOP LIST
563
WAIT FOR A RESPONSE FROM CUSTOMER
564
DID CUSTOMER ANSWER OR RESPOND?
NO
YES
567
HAS FAILURE STATE BEEN REACHED?
NO
YES
568
ACTIVE DATA BASE OF CUSTOMERS AND DELIVERIES
565
SHOW CUSTOMER IS AVAILABLE FOR DELIVERY
566
SHOW RESPONSE FAILURE STATE FOR THIS CUSTOMER

FIG. 31



STOP NUMBER	GPS / LOCATION	TIME TO STOP (PLANNED)	TIME OF DAY (PLANNED)
STOP 001	18T, 0505050, 1212121	07:22	07:37:22AM
STOP 002	18T, 0404040, 6565656	04:10	07:41:32AM
STOP 003	18T, 0303030, 1818181	05:45	07:47:17AM
STOP 004	18T, 0202020, 3737373	09:03	07:56:50AM
ADJUSTMENT		(10:00)	DELAY
STOP 005	18T, 0101010, 5515515	06:44	08:13:34AM
STOP 006	18T, 0909090, 7227227	06:12	08:19:46AM
STOP 007	18T, 0808080, 4994994	05:51	08:25:37AM
STOP 008	18T, 0707070, 2002002	12:30	08:38:07AM:
STOP 009	18T, 0606060, 8338338	03:58	08:42:05AM
STOP 010	18T, 1515151, 9449449	04:33	08:46:38AM
STOP 011	18T, 1414141, 1313131	07:28	08:54:08AM
STOP 012	18T, 1313131, 6464646	06:55	09:01:01AM
STOP 013	18T, 1212121, 1919191	07:36	09:08:37AM
STOP 014	18T, 1111111, 3838383	04:50	09:13:27AM
STOP 015	18T, 0090090, 6626626	05:20	09:18:47AM
STOP 016	18T, 0080080, 8118118	09:48	09:28:35AM
STOP 017	18T, 0070070, 5005005	03:33	09:32:08AM
STOP 018	18T, 0060060, 9119119	07:15	09:39:23AM
STOP 019	18T, 0050050, 0030030	05:31	09:44:54AM
STOP 020	18T, 0040040, 8558558	08:01	09:52:55AM
STOP 021	18T, 0030030, 1333133	05:44	09:58:39AM
STOP 022	18T, 0020020, 6444644	05:49	10:04:28AM
STOP 023	18T, 0010010, 1999199	07:22	10:11:50AM
STOP 024	18T, 0009000, 000 0090	05:10	10:17:00AM

CONFIRM CODE	STOP NUMBER	NAME	ADDRESS
C	001	AB COMPANY	18 John Doe Drive
C	002	JACK SMITH	2100 Jones Street
C	003	XYZ COMPANY	999 Smith Street
U	004	MIKE LONG	36 Horse Street
U	005	STEVE JONES	855 Long Drive
U	006	GLOBAL INC.	1000 Chase Street
U	007	FRED SEED	105 River Street
U	008	AAA COMPANY	555 Howard Ave.
U	009	CLAY INDUSTRY	1004 Business Drive
U	010	JOHN DOE	232 Fairview Street
C	011	BETTY SMITH	9191 Oak Drive
U	012	A&A VENTURES	8881 Second Street
U	013	C. L. BLACK	777 Lookout Drive
W	014	JIM SMITH	1100 Abe Drive
C	015	L. WILLIAMS	9922 hightower Street
C	016	PARK COMPANY	3300 Walk Drive
C	017	UNITED COMPANY	12 Tower Place
W	018	Y&Y COMPANY	400 Tower Place
W	019	SUSAN JONES	390 Harris Drive
W	020	IDEAL SPORTS	844 Third Street
W	021	THE BROWN COMPANY	555 Third Street
W	022	OUT SIDE SPORTS	1530 Third Street
W	023	K. FIELD	200 Pine Drive
W	024	LANCE PATTERSON	501 Pine Street

FIG.32

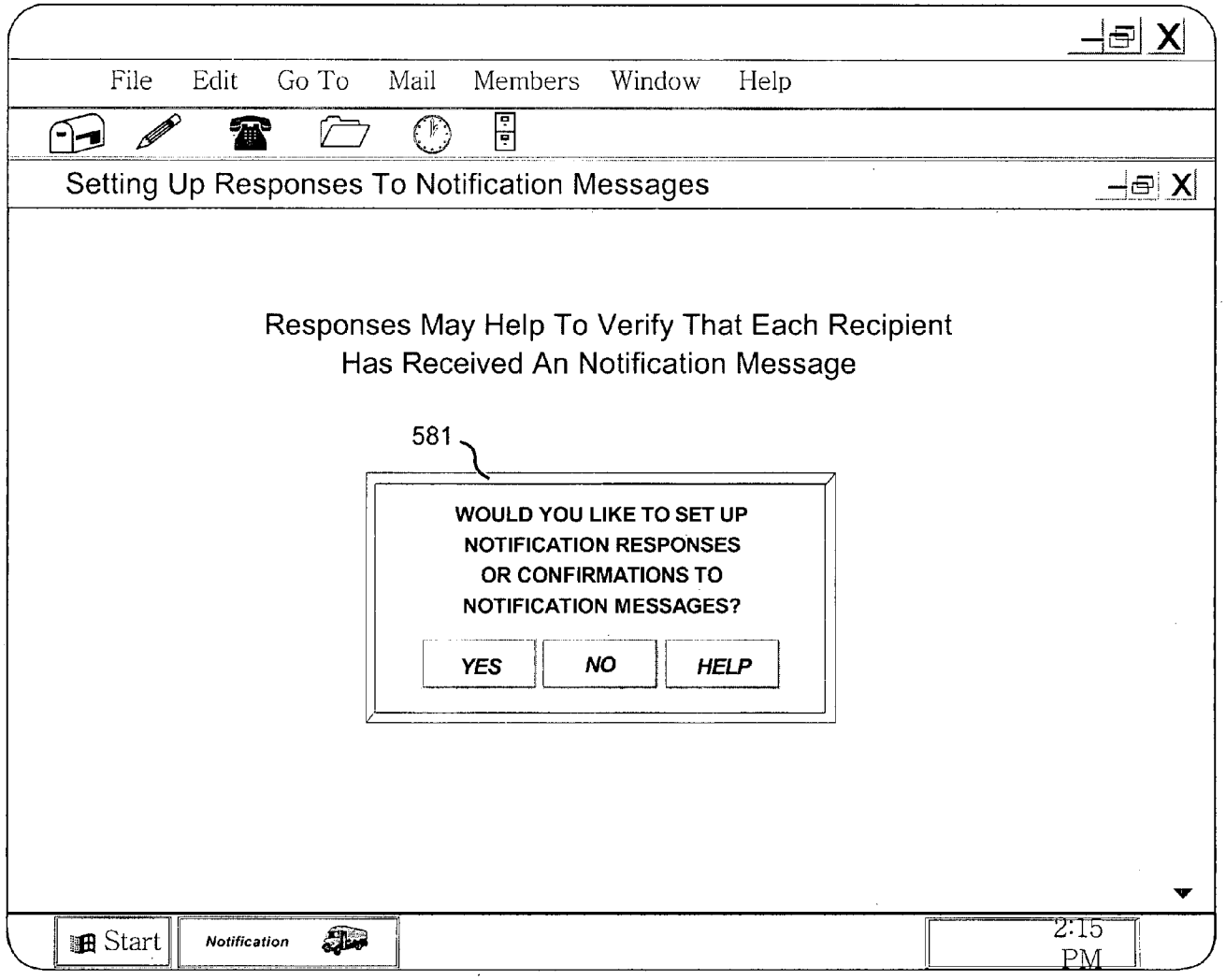

File Edit Go To Mail Members Window Help
Setting Up Responses To Notification Messages
Responses May Help To Verify That Each Recipient
Has Received An Notification Message
581
WOULD YOU LIKE TO SET UP
NOTIFICATION RESPONSES
OR CONFIRMATIONS TO
NOTIFICATION MESSAGES?
YES
NO
HELP
Start
Notification
2:15
PM

FIG. 33

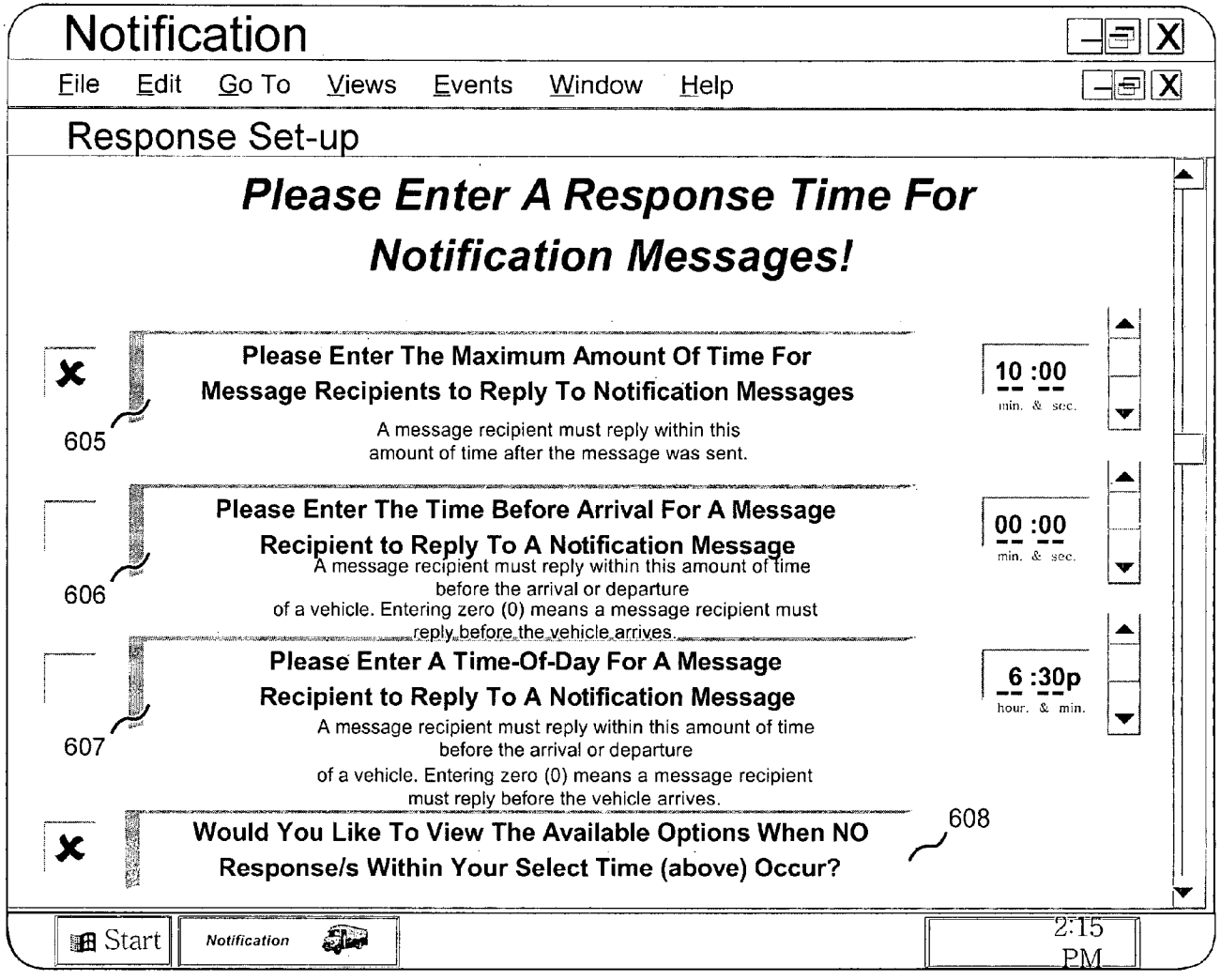

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Response Set-up
Please Enter A Response Time For Notification Messages!
605
Please Enter The Maximum Amount Of Time For Message Recipients to Reply To Notification Messages
A message recipient must reply within this amount of time after the message was sent.
10 :00
min. & sec.
606
Please Enter The Time Before Arrival For A Message Recipient to Reply To A Notification Message
A message recipient must reply within this amount of time before the arrival or departure of a vehicle. Entering zero (0) means a message recipient must reply before the vehicle arrives.
00 :00
min. & sec.
607
Please Enter A Time-Of-Day For A Message Recipient to Reply To A Notification Message
A message recipient must reply within this amount of time before the arrival or departure of a vehicle. Entering zero (0) means a message recipient must reply before the vehicle arrives.
6 :30p
hour. & min.
608
Would You Like To View The Available Options When NO Response/s Within Your Select Time (above) Occur?
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 34

Notification
File Edit Go To Views Events Window Help
Response Set-up
Please Enter A Prior Stop Number Before The Arrival, That A User Must Respond To A Notification Message!
Please Enter The Number Of Stops Before The Destination
03
Stops before arrival
608
A message recipient must reply before the number of stops before arrival is reached.
WOULD YOU LIKE THIS STOP TO BE THE ARRIVAL OR DEPARTURE?
Arrival
Departure
HELP
609
Would You Like To View The Available Options When NO Response/s Within Your Select Stops (above) Occur?
Start
Notification
2:15 PM

FIG. 35